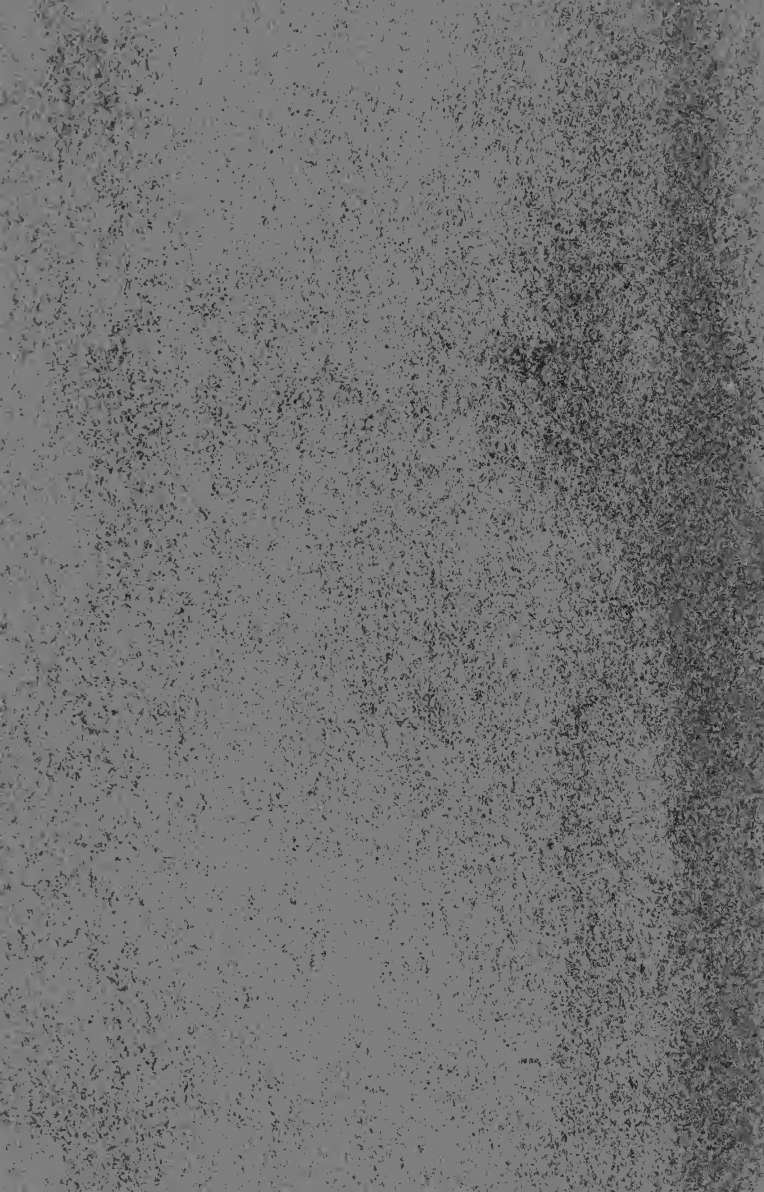
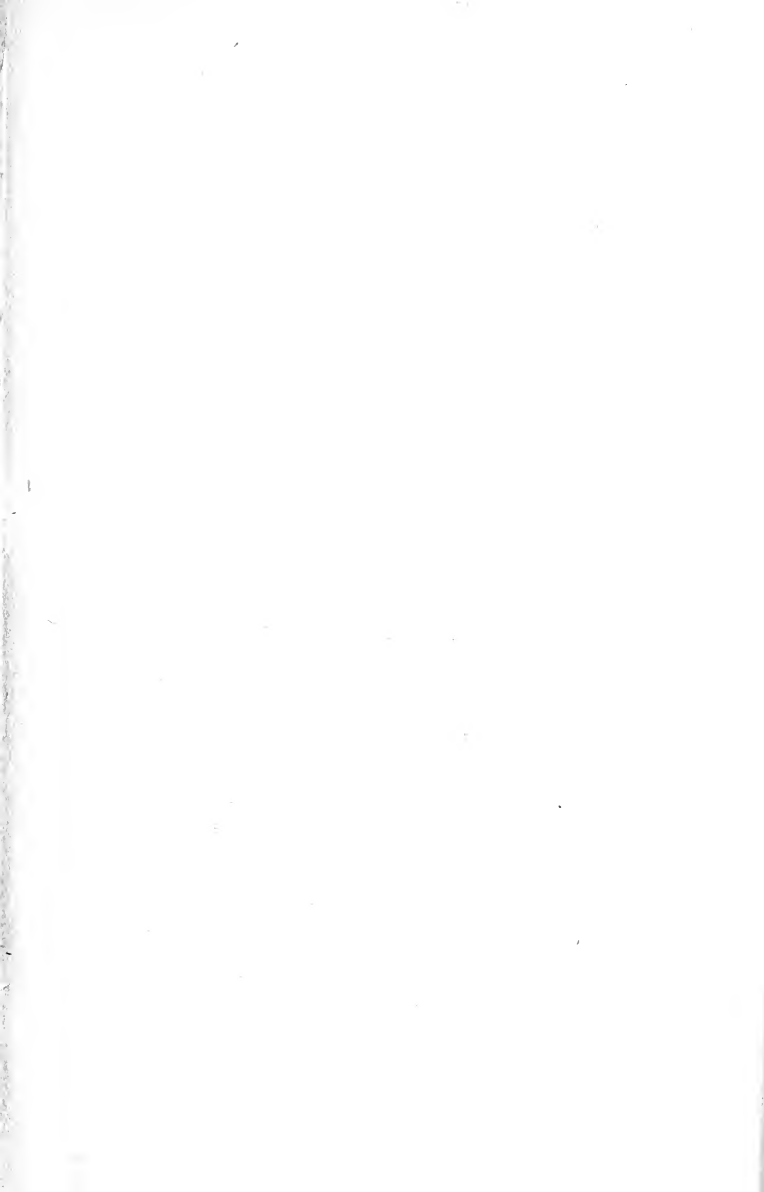


EX LIBRIS







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

AHN'S
LATIN GRAMMAR.

WITH
REFERENCES TO THE EXERCISES
IN THE

FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD LATIN BOOKS.

BY
Dr. P. HENN.

NEW YORK:

E. STEIGER & CO.

1881.

760
A296
la

REQUEST.

The undersigned, in their efforts to secure the greatest possible correctness in their educational publications, will feel obliged for the suggestion of improvements.

E. Steiger & Co., Publishers.

Copyright, 1881, by E. STEIGER & Co.

IN MEMORIAM

Prof. J. Henry Senger

P R E F A C E.

AHN'S Latin Grammar forms part of a series which has been undertaken with the design to facilitate the study of Latin for beginners. The author desires to state at the outset that this volume is in no respect a condensation of the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books*. It is constructed on a plan of its own, and with a twofold object in view: first, to provide a complete grammatical course for those teachers who prefer the synthetic method to the exclusion of the analytic, and secondly, to supply for reference in study a really compendious grammar, which may answer the needs of young scholars, while it is sufficiently comprehensive and full for more advanced students — in a word, the first and also the last grammar in the student's hands.

In pursuance of this plan, the *Grammar* retains from the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books* the general statement of grammatical facts in the exact form and language of those books, but, of course, in the traditional presentation of synthetic grammar. In the treatment of **Etymology** the following have been the leading features. While scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Of the stem theory especially the author has meant to place before the learner just so much as may be used to explain difficulties — not to multiply them. The pupil's attention should be directed first to what most needs to be learned, viz.: **the etymological forms themselves**. With this in view, the *Grammar* embraces all the important features of the series which are of practical assistance to the learner, particularly during the first year. The sharp distinction, for instance, of inflectional endings by **bold-faced** type is a matter of no small importance if we wish to make the pupil from the very outset so familiar with all the inflections that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur.

Of course, a *real* understanding he will obtain only by learning *how those inflections arose*, and here again the brief, clear and practical rules on the subject will be found to simplify a very complex matter, and to remove perhaps the greatest difficulty in the study of Latin grammar. As complementary to the etymological part the careful classification and definition of derivative endings cannot fail to be valuable for constant reference, if not for class study.

In the treatment of **Syntax** the points which have received particular attention are: to set forth the facts of classical Latin (represented by Caesar and Cicero) just as they are in themselves; to describe as fairly and briefly as possible the actual uses of syntactical forms, to illustrate them by carefully selected examples, and, withal, to bear constantly in mind that this Course is meant to lead at the earliest possible moment to the reading of the classical authors. It will be for professional teachers to say whether the endeavor to reach this practical end has been successful.

To furnish to teachers who may so desire, the opportunity of drilling their pupils in the more important rules and principles while they are learning them, references to the corresponding exercises in the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books* are inserted throughout this *Grammar*. The detailed **Index of Subjects** will be found to contain every topic in the text.

To summarize: the design of this Latin Series is to enable pupils to gain a thorough knowledge of Latin — not without honest exertions, yet with the greatest possible ease.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

General Division of the Subject.

Page 1

PART I. — PHONOLOGY.

<i>Alphabet; Classification</i>	1
<i>Pronunciation</i>	3
<i>Roman Method</i>	3
<i>Continental Method</i>	4
<i>English Method</i>	5
<i>Syllables</i>	6
<i>Quantity</i>	6
<i>Accent</i>	7

PART II. — ETYMOLOGY.

<i>The Parts of Speech</i>	7
SUBSTANTIVES	8-48
<i>Gender</i>	8
<i>Number and Case</i>	10
<i>Declensions</i>	10
<i>General Rules</i>	11
<i>First Declension</i>	12
<i>Second Declension</i>	13
<i>Adjectives</i>	16
<i>Third Declension</i>	20
<i>Formation of the Genitive</i>	20
<i>Adjectives</i>	33
<i>Remarks on Certain Cases</i>	35
<i>Greek Nouns</i>	38
<i>Gender in Third Declension</i>	38
<i>Fourth Declension</i>	42
<i>Fifth Declension</i>	43
<i>Irregular Nouns</i>	44
<i>Proper Names</i>	47
ADJECTIVES	48-53
<i>Declension</i>	48
<i>Comparison</i>	50
NUMERALS	54-59
<i>Numeral Adjectives</i>	54
<i>Numeral Adverbs</i>	58

PRONOUNS	Page 59-65
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	59
<i>Pronouns of the Third Person</i>	61
<i>Demonstrative</i>	61
<i>Determinative</i>	62
<i>Relative</i>	63
<i>Interrogative</i>	64
<i>Indefinite</i>	64
<i>Pronominal Adjectives</i>	65
VERBS	66-145
<i>Voices</i>	66
<i>Tenses</i>	67
<i>Moods</i>	67
<i>Verbal Nouns and Adjectives</i>	68
<i>Numbers and Persons</i>	69
<i>The Four Conjugations</i>	69
<i>Simple Forms</i>	70
<i>Compound Forms</i>	72
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i>	75
<i>First Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	77
<i>Second Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	80
<i>Third Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	84
<i>Fourth Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	88
<i>Deponent Verbs (Paradigms)</i>	92
<i>Appendix to Third Conjugation (Verbs in iō)</i>	100
<i>Special Forms in Conjugation</i>	103
<i>Formation of the Principal Parts</i>	105
<i>in the First Conjugation</i>	106
<i>in the Second Conjugation</i>	108
<i>in the Third Conjugation</i>	112
<i>Stems in u, v</i>	113
<i>Verbs in iō</i>	114
<i>Stems in d, t</i>	115
<i>Stems in b, p</i>	118
<i>Stems in c, g, q, h, ct</i>	119
<i>Stems in l, m, n, r</i>	121
<i>Stems in s, x</i>	124
<i>Stems in sc (Inceptives)</i>	124
<i>in the Fourth Conjugation</i>	129
<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	130
<i>Defective Verbs</i>	141
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i>	144

ADVERBS.....	Page 145-151
<i>Primitive and Derivative</i>	145
<i>Comparison</i>	150
PREPOSITIONS.....	151
CONJUNCTIONS.....	152-154
<i>Co-ordinating</i>	152
<i>Subordinating</i>	153
INTERJECTIONS.....	155
WORD-FORMATION.....	155-168
<i>Derivation of Verbs</i>	155
<i>of Substantives</i>	158
<i>of Adjectives</i>	161
<i>Composition of Verbs</i>	164
<i>of Substantives</i>	168
<i>of Adjectives</i>	168

PART III. — SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.....	169
<i>Subject and Predicate</i>	169
<i>Attribute and Apposition</i>	172
<i>Agreement of Pronouns</i>	173
<i>The Order of Words</i>	175
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.....	176-208
<i>Genitive with Substantives</i>	176
<i>with Adjectives</i>	178
<i>with Verbs</i>	179
<i>Accusative, Direct Object</i>	182
<i>two Accusatives</i>	183
<i>with Impersonal Verbs</i>	184
<i>Idiomatic Uses</i>	185
<i>Dative with Verbs</i>	185
<i>with Adjectives</i>	189
<i>Ethical Dative</i>	190
<i>Ablative of Cause</i>	190
<i>of Means and Instrument</i>	191
<i>of Limitation</i>	191
<i>of Comparison</i>	191
<i>of Manner</i>	192
<i>of Quality</i>	193
<i>of Price</i>	193
<i>of Separation, Plenty and Want</i>	194
<i>in Special Constructions</i>	196

<i>Time, Space, Place</i>	Page 197-207
<i>Use of Prepositions</i>	197
<i>Time</i>	204
<i>Space</i>	206
<i>Place</i>	207
SPECIAL USES of <i>Substantives</i>	209
of <i>Adjectives</i>	210
of <i>Pronouns</i>	211
SYNTAX OF THE VERB	214-246
<i>Use of Tenses</i>	214
<i>Sequence of Tenses</i>	217
<i>Use of the Indicative</i>	219
<i>Independent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	220
<i>Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	221
<i>Consecutive and Final Conjunctions</i> ..	221
<i>Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions</i>	225
<i>Temporal Conjunctions</i>	226
<i>Causal Conjunctions</i>	227
<i>Conditional Conjunctions</i>	228
<i>Relative Clauses with Subjunctive</i>	230
<i>Direct Questions</i>	231
<i>Indirect Questions</i>	233
<i>The Imperative</i>	234
<i>The Infinitive</i>	235
<i>Accusative with the Infinitive</i>	236
<i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i>	238
<i>Nominative with the Infinitive</i>	239
<i>Direct Discourse</i>	239
<i>Indirect Discourse</i>	239
<i>Participles</i>	241
<i>Ablative Absolute</i>	242
<i>Gerund</i>	243
<i>Gerundive</i>	243
<i>Supine and its Equivalents</i>	245
CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	246-259
<i>Copulative</i>	246
<i>Disjunctive</i>	247
<i>Adversative</i>	248
<i>Causal</i>	249
<i>Illative</i>	249
<i>Corresponsive</i>	249

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY	Page 250-256
<i>Quantity. General Rules</i>	250
<i>Middle Syllables</i>	251
<i>Final Syllables</i>	253
<i>Monosyllables</i>	254
<i>Compounds</i>	255
<i>Figures of Prosody</i>	255
ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION	257-268
<i>Feet. Rhythm</i>	257
<i>Dactylic Hexameter</i>	260
<i>Elegiac Pentameter</i>	261
<i>Iambic Trimeter</i>	261
<i>Compound Verses</i>	261
<i>Metres of Horace</i>	263
<i>Index of the Metres of Horace</i>	267

MISCELLANEOUS.

<i>The Roman Calendar</i>	269
<i>Roman Money, Weights, and Measures</i>	272
<i>Abbreviations</i>	273
<i>Principal Latin Authors</i>	274
INDEX OF VERBS	277
INDEX OF SUBJECTS	288



LATIN GRAMMAR.

GENERAL DIVISION OF THE SUBJECT.

1. **Latin Grammar** is a description of the usages of the Latin language according to the different ways in which words (*vocabŭla*) are put together to form speech (*oratiō*). It is divided into three parts:

I. Phonology which deals with the elementary sounds in the Latin language.

II. Etymology which treats of the forms of single words—**Inflection**—and of derivation and composition—**Word-formation**.

III. Syntax which treats of the arrangement and combination of words in sentences.

PART FIRST.

PHONOLOGY.

2. Nearly all words are composed of articulate sounds. These are represented to the eye by the letters of the **Alphabet** which is the same as the English, except that it has no **w**.

The **Latin Alphabet** consists, strictly, of but twenty-three letters, **i** and **j** being anciently but one character, as likewise **u** and **v**. During the classical age, **y** and **z** were recognized as *Greek* letters, and **x** was the twenty-first and *last* letter of the Latin alphabet (see **4.** below).

3. The **Alphabetical Names** still most generally used in English schools, are the English. Yet, it is more probable that in the ancient spelling of Latin the letters were named in the following manner:

a	A	ah	m	M	em
b	B	bay	n	N	en
c	C	katy	o	O	o
d	D	day	p	P	pay
e	E	ay	q	Q	koo
f	F	eff	r	R	er
g	G	gay	s	S	ess
h	H	hah	t	T	tay
i	I	ee (<i>vowel</i>)	u	U	oo (<i>vowel</i>)
j	J	ee (<i>consonant</i>)	v	V	oo (<i>consonant</i>)
k	K	kah	x	X	ix
l	L	el	y	Y	ipseelon
			z	Z	tsaytah

The Latin uses capital initial letters at the beginning of sentences; also for all proper names, and for substantives and adjectives derived from proper names.

4. The **Vowels** are: **a, e, i, o, u, y**. All other letters, except the aspirate **h**, are consonants. Originally, **i** and **u** were used both as vowels and as consonants, and supplied the place of **j** and **v**. **y** and **z** occur in Greek words only.

5. The **Diphthongs** are: **ae, oe, au, eu**.

6. **Consonants** are classified according to the principal *organs* by which they are produced, as:

Labials (*lip-sounds*): **b, p, f, v, m**;

Dentals (*tooth-sounds*): **d, t, n, s**;

Linguals (*tongue-sounds*): **l, r**;

Gutturals (*throat-sounds*): **c, g, k, q**;

and according to the *mode of utterance*, as:

Liquids which can be uttered without a vowel:

l, m, n, r, s;

Mutes which cannot be perfectly sounded without a vowel:

b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t.

7. **Double Consonants** are:

z = dz in *adze*; **x = cs (gs)**.

PRONUNCIATION.

8. The **Pronunciation** of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States, general usage is now strongly in favor of either the **Roman** or the **Continental Method**, the difference between these two not being very considerable. Many persons, however, prefer to retain the **English Method**, which has been the prevailing system of pronunciation among English-speaking scholars for the last two or three centuries.*

Roman Method.

9. By the **Roman, or Phonetic Method**, *every letter has always the same sound.*

Sounds of the Vowels.

10. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long or short. Vowels marked thus: **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** are long; marked thus: **ǎ ě ĭ ǒ ũ ŷ̄** are short.

ā = *a* in *father*

ē = *e* in *prey*

ī = *i* in *machine*

ō = *o* in *bone*

ū = *oo* in *boot*

ŷ = *i* in *machine*

ǎ = *a* in *idea*

ě = *e* in *met*

ĭ = *i* in *holiest*

ǒ = *o* in *obey*

ũ = *u* in *full*

ŷ̄ = *i* in *holiest*

Sounds of the Diphthongs.

11. **Diphthongs** are pronounced by the rapid successive utterance of the elements forming them.

ae = *ay* in *aye*

oe = *o* in *world*

au = *ou* in *house*

eu = *oy* in *boy* (nearly)

The sound of **eu** is much disputed; many scholars contend for **eu** as English *ew*, in *few*.

12. All diphthongs are long, as: **fōēdŷs**, *a treaty*.

13. To denote that two successive vowels which might otherwise be taken for a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, the **Diæresis** (¨) is placed over the second vowel, as: **pōĕtā**, *a poet*.

* For class-instruction in Latin pronunciation and current reading **AHN-HENN'S Latin Reading Charts** will be found valuable.

Sounds of the Consonants.

14. The **Consonants** are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

c is hard and sounds in all situations like **k**, as: **Cičěřō** = **Kikěro**.

ch in Latin words is a **k**; in Greek words a **k** with the subaddition of **h**, commonly pronounced as **ch** in German. The latter sound can only be acquired through means of oral instruction.

g is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

j has the sound of **y** in *you*.

qu = **kw** (nearly). **gū** and **sū** before another vowel when both vowels belong to the same syllable = **gw, sw**, as: *lingŭă, lingwa; sŭētŭs, swetus*.

rh is pronounced like **r** simply.

s and **x** are always hard, as in *kiss, axe*.

t has the same sound as **t** in English, but is never aspirated; **th** is pronounced like **t** simply.

v = **w** in *we*.

Continental Method.

15. In the pronunciation of the vowels, the **Continental Method** is identical with the Roman. As to the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English Method, the following letters deserve special notice.

t before **ī** (short **i**) with another vowel, has the sharp sound of **th** in *thin*; when preceded by another **t, s, or x**, or when **i** is long (**ī**), and in Greek words, **t** retains its original sound, as: *mix' tī ō, a mixture*.

c before **e, i, y, æ, œ, eu**, is pronounced like **ts** in *nets*; in every other position it is hard like the English **k**. **cī** before a vowel has nearly the same sound as **tī** in the same position, and they are sometimes interchangeable.

ch = **k** with the subaddition of **h**, has a hard guttural sound like the German **ch**. **sch** is pronounced by the successive utterance of **s** and **ch**. Neither of these sounds (**ch** and **sch**) has an equivalent in English, and they must be learned from the lips of a teacher.

English Method.

16. As a general rule, those who prefer to retain the **English Method**, should read a Latin sentence *just as if the words were English*, carefully observing the directions which follow, especially the Rules of Accent (**29–31.**), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.

Sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs.

17. Vowels have their long English sounds, as in *fate, me, pine, no, tube, type*, in the following situations:

at the end of a word, as: *dōm' ī nī, masters; cor' nū, a horn; lē' ō, a lion;*

before another vowel or diphthong, as: *Dē' ūs, God; vī' ā, a way; jā' nū ā, a door;*

when ending an accented syllable; as: *pā' tēr, a father; dē' dīt, he gave; vī' vūs, living; sō' lūs, alone; lŷ' rā, a lyre.*

EXCEPTIONS: **a** unaccented has the sound of final *a* in *America*; as: *men' sā, a table.* In *tībī, to thee*, and *sībī, to one's self*, final **i** has its short sound.

18. Vowels have their short English sounds, as in *fat, met, pin, not, tub, symbol*, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, as: *mag' nūs, great; fin' gō, I fashion; cor' pūs, a body; mens, the mind.*

EXCEPTIONS: *pōst, after*, is pronounced as the same word in English; the termination **ēs** like the English word *ease*, and the termination **ōs** like *ose* in *morose*, as: *ā' vēs, birds; pū' ě rōs, boys.*

19. The Diphthongs ae and oe are pronounced as *e* would be in the same place; **au** like *aw*, and **eu** like *ew*, as: *poe' nā, punishment; au' rŭm, gold; Eu rō' pā, Europe; Cae' sār, Cæsar.*

Sounds of the Consonants.

20. The Consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English. The following, however, require special notice:

c and **g** are soft (like **s** and **j**) before **e, i, y, ae**, and **oe**, and hard in other situations, as: *cen' tŭm, a hundred; cī' vīs, a citizen; cā' dō, I fall; gē' nŭ, the knee; grā' nŭm, a grain.*

ch is hard like **k**, as: **ch**ŏ' rŭs, *a choir*.

The consonants **c**, **s**, **t**, immediately preceded by the accent, and standing before **i**, followed by another vowel, are aspirated, **c**, **s**, and **t** taking the sound of **sh**, **x** that of **ksh**, as: sŏ' cĭ ũs (so'-she us), *a companion*; Hel vĕ' tĭ ě (Hel ve' shi a), *Switzerland*. — **c** following an accented syllable has also the same sound before **eu** and **yo**, as: cĕ dŭ' cĕ ũs (ca du' she us), *a herald's staff*. — **t** preceded by another **t**, **s**, or **x**, has its hard sound, as: o' stĭ ũm, *a door*; mix' tĭ ŏ, *a mixture*.

Syllables.

21. A **Syllable** is one or more sounds pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

22. A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter, as: sĭ' tĭs, *thirst*.

23. Of several consonants coming together between two vowels, those which can be used to begin a Latin word, belong to the next syllable, as: men'sĕ, *a table*; tem'plŭm, *a temple*; ca'strĕ, *a military camp*.

24. Compound words must be divided into the words which compose them, as: post'ĕĕ, *afterward*. But if the former part has dropped its termination, the compound word is to be divided like a simple word, as: tĕ met' sĭ (contracted from tĕ'mĕn et'sĭ), *although*.

25. The last syllable of the word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

Quantity.

The following are general Rules of **Quantity**:

26. A syllable is long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as: sŏl, *the sun*; aurum, *gold*; *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or by **j**, **x**, **z**; as: aptus, *fit*; collis, *hill*; saxum, *rock*.

27. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common (anceps), that is, it may be long or short in verse, as in tenĕbrae, *darkness*; in prose it is invariably short.

28. A vowel before another vowel is short, no account being taken of **h**, as: Dĕŭs, *God*; trĕhŏ, *I draw*.

Accent.

The following are Rules of **Accent**:

29. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as: *lā'nā, wool.*

30. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *penult*, if that is long, as: *man dā'tā, orders*; if it is short, then on the *antepenult*, as: *ā'dā mās, the diamond.*

31. When **-quē, -ně, -vě** are joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before these words, whether it be short or long, as: *terrā'quē, and the earth.*

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

32. The classes into which words are divided, according to their uses, are called **Parts of Speech**; namely,

the **Substantive**, which is the name of a person, thing, or idea; as: *vir, a man; dōmūs, a house; diēs irae, the day of wrath*;

the **Adjective**, which is used to qualify a noun, as: *rārā āvis, a rare bird*;

the **Pronoun**, which points out some person or thing, as: *tū, thou; hōc, that*;

the **Verb**, which is used to assert or declare something, as: *dūm spīrō, spērō, while I breathe, I hope*;

the **Adverb**, which is used to qualify a verb or an adjective, as: *nōtā bēnē, mark well*;

the **Preposition**, which joins a word to some other word to show the relation between them, as: *lūpūs in fābūlā, the wolf in the fable*;

the **Conjunction**, which connects sentences together, or words used in the same sentence, as: *ōrā ēt lābōrā, pray and work*;

the **Interjection**, which is an exclamation, expressive of feeling; as: *O cūrās hōmīnūm! O the cares of men!*

33. The word **Noun** is used as a name for both Nouns and Adjectives, the former being distinguished as **nouns substantive**, or **Substantives**, and the latter as **nouns adjective**, or **Adjectives**.

34. Inflection is a change made chiefly in the end of a word, to show its grammatical relation.

35. Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns have inflections of Declension, to denote number, gender, and case. *Verbs* have inflections of Conjugation, to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

36. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called **Particles**; these are *Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

SUBSTANTIVES.

37. The **Substantive** is the name of a *Person* or *Thing* (**Concrete**), or of a *Quality* (**Abstract**).

38. Concrete Substantives are either:

Proper, *i. e.* peculiar to *certain* persons or things, as: Hōmērūs, *Homer*; Tībērīs, *Tiber*; or

Common to a *whole class*, as: arbōr, *a tree*; or

Collective, denoting in the singular *more than one*, as: exercītūs, *an army*. To this class belong also the names of **Materials**, as: lignūm, *wood*.

Gender.

39. There are, as in English, **three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.** The gender of Latin nouns, in many instances, is to be determined by their *signification*, according to the following

General Rules.

40. Masculine are the names of males, rivers, winds, and months, as: nautā, *a sailor*; Rhēnūs, *the Rhine*; nōtūs, *the south-wind*; Aprīlīs, *April*.

41. EXCEPTIONS: In the following words, Gender is determined by the *termination*, and not by the *distinction of sex*:

cōpīae, *troops*

custōdīae, *guards*

ōpērae, *laborers*

vīgīlīae, *watchmen*

excūbīae, *sentinels*

mancīpiūm, *a slave*

auxīliā, *auxiliary troops.*

42. Feminine are: the names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees, as: virgō, *a maid*; Aegyptūs, *Egypt*; Nĕápōlis, *Naples*; Rhōdūs, *Rhodes*; pírūs, *a pear-tree*.

43. The numerous **EXCEPTIONS** are chiefly names of towns, which, as to gender, follow the *termination*, instead of the *signification*, as:

Masculine: Argī, *Argos*; **Neuter:** Sāguntūm, *Saguntum*.

44. Neuter are: all **Indeclinable Nouns**, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as: nihil, *nothing*; scīrĕ tūm, *thy knowledge*; hōc dīu, *this (word) diu*.

45. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of **Common Gender**:

artifex, <i>an artist</i>	dux, <i>a leader</i>	testīs, <i>a witness</i>
cīvīs, <i>a citizen</i>	hērēs, <i>an heir</i>	jūdex, <i>a judge</i>
cōmĕs, <i>a companion</i>	pārens, <i>a parent</i>	pātrūĕlīs, <i>a cousin</i>
custōs, <i>a keeper</i>	jūvĕnīs, <i>a youth</i>	vātĕs, <i>a prophet</i> .

46. Names of **Persons** with different terminations to distinguish masculines and feminines, are called **substantīva mobilia**; as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgīstĕr	māgīstrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rĕgīnā	<i>a king, queen.</i>

47. Names of **Animals** deserve special notice. With some of them gender is expressed by *difference of termination*, as:

lĕō, <i>a lion</i>	lĕaenā, <i>a lioness</i>
cervūs, <i>a stag</i>	cervā, <i>a hind</i> ;

others are of the *common gender*, as:

hīc bōs, <i>this ox</i>	haec bōs, <i>this cow</i> ;
-------------------------	-----------------------------

others have for *both sexes* one grammatical gender; these are called **epicoena**. Thus lĕpūs, *a hare*, is always masculine, and vulpĕs, *fox*, always feminine. If necessary, the sexes are distinguished by mās, *male*, and fĕmīnā, *female*, as:

vulpĕs mās, <i>a male fox</i>	lĕpūs fĕmīnā, <i>a female hare.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

48. The gender of **Substantives** not determined by their signification, is to be ascertained by their termination, according to the **Special Rules** of Gender under the several declensions. **Adjectives** distinguish gender by *different forms* in the *same words*, and agree in gender with their **Substantives**.

Number and Case.

49. The Latin, like the English, has **two Numbers**; the **Singular** Number denotes one, the **Plural**, more than one. There are **six Cases** in Latin: the **Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.**

The **Nominative** is the case of the subject of the sentence, and answers the question *Who?* or *What?*

The **Genitive** may be translated by the English Possessive or with the preposition *of*; it answers the question *Whose?* or *Whereof?*

The **Dative** may usually be translated by the preposition *to* or *for*, answering the question *To whom?* or *For whom?* Sometimes it corresponds to the English Objective.

The **Accusative** nearly corresponds to the English Objective; it answers the question *Whom?* or *What?*

The **Vocative** is the case of direct address.

The **Ablative** may usually be translated by the prepositions *from, by, with*; it answers the questions *Where? Whence?* or *Wherewith?*

50. According to their relations, the cases are divided into **cāsūs rectī**, *Independent Cases*, and **cāsūs obliquī**, *Dependent Cases*. **Nominative** and **Vocative** are **cāsūs rectī**; **Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative**, **cāsūs obliquī**.

Declensions.

51. The formation of the several cases is called **Declension**. There are **five Declensions** in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the **Genitive Singular**.

First Declension.	Genitive Singular	ae
Second Declension.	“	ī
Third Declension.	“	īs
Fourth Declension.	“	ūs
Fifth Declension.	“	ēī

52. The **Stem** is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Inflections; its last letter is called the **Characteristic**.

53. The stem may be found from the **Genitive Plural**, in the *First, Second and Fifth Declensions* by cutting off **rūm**; in the *Third and Fourth* by cutting off **ūm**.

54. CASE-ENDINGS of the Five Declensions.*

FIRST DECLENSION.		SECOND DECLENSION.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ā (ē, ās, ēs)	ae	ūs, ěr, ĭr, ūr, ūm	ī, Neut. ā
Gen. ae (ēs)	ārŭm	ī	ōrŭm
Dat. ae	īs (ābŭs)	ō	īs
Acc. ām (ēn)	ās	ŭm	ōs, Neut. ā
Voc. ā (ā, ē)	ae	ĕ, ěr, ĭr, ūr, ūm	ī, Neut. ā
Abl. ā (ē)	īs (ābŭs)	ō	īs

THIRD DECLENSION.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. ā, ĕ, ĭ, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, x		ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Gen. īs		ŭm (īŭm)
Dat. ī		ībŭs
Acc. ēm (im)	Neut. like Nom.	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Voc. like Nom.		ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Abl. ĕ (ī)		ībŭs

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Gen. ūs	ŭŭm
Dat. ŭī, ū	ībŭs (ŭbŭs)
Acc. ŭm, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Voc. ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Abl. ū	ībŭs (ŭbŭs)

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Singular.	Plural.
ēs	ēs
ēī, ēī	ērŭm
ēī, ēī	ēbŭs
ēm	ēs
ēs	ēs
ō	ēbŭs

55. The following are **General Rules** applying to all Declensions:

1. In both numbers the **Vocative** is the same as the **Nominative**, except in the singular of nouns in **ūs** of the *Second Declension*.
2. Neuters have the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative** alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, always end in **ā**.
3. The **Dative** and **Ablative plural** are always alike.

* This *Synopsis* of Case-endings is embodied in AHN-HENN'S *Latin Paradigm Charts*, printed in large type and intended for permanent display on the wall.

First Declension.

56. Latin nouns which have **ae** in the Genitive Singular, are of the **First Declension**: They have the Nominative *like the stem*, ending in **ă**.

Singular.

Nom. men' **să**, *a table*
 Gen. men' **sae**, *of a table*
 Dat. men' **sae**, *to a table*
 Acc. men' **săm**, *a table*
 Voc. men' **să**, *O table*
 Abl. men' **să**, *with a table*

Plural.

men' **sae**, *tables*
 men **să' rūm**, *of tables*
 men' **sīs**, *to tables*
 men' **sās**, *tables*
 men' **sae**, *O tables*
 men' **sīs**, *with tables*

57. The Latin has no Article; therefore *mensă* may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, or *table*, according to the connection.

Examples for Practice:

<i>lună</i> , -ae, <i>the moon</i>	<i>rână</i> , -ae, <i>a frog</i>
<i>stellă</i> , -ae, <i>a star</i>	<i>terră</i> , -ae, <i>the earth, land</i>
<i>vă</i> , -ae, <i>a way, road</i>	<i>ălaudă</i> , -ae, <i>a lark</i>
<i>insulă</i> , -ae, <i>an island</i>	<i>rösă</i> , -ae, <i>a rose</i>
<i>naută</i> , -ae, <i>a sailor</i>	<i>vîolă</i> , -ae, <i>a violet</i> [15-18] *

58. In composition with *pătër*, *mătër*, *filiūs*, *filiă*, the word *fămîliă* has in the Genitive Singular *fămîliăs*, *e. g.*, *pătërfămîliăs*, *the father of a family*.

59. The Dative and Ablative Plural of *děă*, *a goddess*, and *filiă*, *a daughter*, end in *ăbūs*, *viz.*: *děăbūs*, *filiăbūs*, to distinguish them from the same cases of *děūs*, *a god*, and *filiūs*, *a son*.

Greek Nouns.

60. To the **First Declension** belong also some Greek Nouns, ending in **ē**, **ās**, **ēs**. The declension of these nouns in the plural differs in no respect from that of Latin nouns of the First Declension.

Singular.

Nom.	ě pī' tō mē , <i>epitome</i>	bō' rě ās , <i>north-wind</i>	pŷ rī' tēs , <i>flint</i>
Gen.	ě pī' tō mēs	bō' rě ae	pŷ rī' tae
Dat.	ě pī' tō mae	bō' rě ae	pŷ rī' tae
Acc.	ě pī' tō mēn	bō' rě ăm (ān)	pŷ rī' tēn
Voc.	ě pī' tō mē	bō' rě ā	pŷ rī' tē
Abl.	ě pī' tō mē	bō' rě ā	pŷ rī' tē

* These figures refer to the Exercises for translation in the *First*, *Second* and *Third Latin Books*.

Examples for Practice:

grammătîcē, -ēs, <i>grammar</i>	Messîās, -ae, <i>the Messiah</i>
ălōē, -ēs, <i>the aloe</i>	Lūcās, -ae, <i>Luke</i>
mūsîcē, -ēs, <i>music</i>	cōmētēs, -ae, <i>a comet</i>

Many of them have also regular Latin forms, as: plānētēs and plānētă, *a planet*. [101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

61. Nouns of the First Declension ending in **ă** and **ē** are feminine; those in **ās** and **ēs** are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

62. Nearly all the exceptions are such as are masculine from their signification, according to the **General Rule** above mentioned (**55. 1.**), as: naută, *a sailor*; also Hădriă, *the Adriatic*.

Second Declension.

63. Latin nouns whose genitive is **ī**, are of the **Second Declension**. In the nominative they end in **ūs**, **ēr**, **îr**, **ūr**, **ŭm**. Those ending in **ŭm** are neuter, the rest are masculine.

Singular.

Nom.	flŭ' vî ŭs, <i>a river</i>	tec' tŭm, <i>a roof</i>
Gen.	flŭ' vî î, <i>of a river</i>	tec' tî, <i>of a roof</i>
Dat.	flŭ' vî ō, <i>to a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>to a roof</i>
Acc.	flŭ' vî ŭm, <i>a river</i>	tec' tŭm, <i>a roof</i>
Voc.	flŭ' vî ě, <i>O river</i>	tec' tŭm, <i>O roof</i>
Abl.	flŭ' vî ō, <i>with a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>with a roof</i>

Plural.

Nom.	flŭ' vî î, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Gen.	flŭ' vî ō' rŭm, <i>of rivers</i>	tec' tō' rŭm, <i>of roofs</i>
Dat.	flŭ' vî îs, <i>to rivers</i>	tec' tîs, <i>to roofs</i>
Acc.	flŭ' vî ōs, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Voc.	flŭ' vî î, <i>O rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>O roofs</i>
Abl.	flŭ' vî îs, <i>with rivers</i>	tec' tîs, <i>with roofs</i>

In Nouns of the **Second Declension** the stem ends in **ŏ-**, as: flŭvîŏ-, tectŏ-, pŭĕrŏ-, ăgrŏ-.

In the **Genitive Singular î**, from Substantives in **îŭs**, **îŭm**, is often contracted into **î**, the accent remaining unchanged, as:

Appĭŭs, **Gen.** Appĭ consĭlĭŭm, **Gen.** consĭ'ĭ.

Examples for Practice:

dōmīnūs, -ī, a master, lord	caelūm, -ī, the heaven, sky
mundūs, -ī, the world	aurūm, -ī, gold
annūs, -ī, a year	ferrūm, -ī, iron
morbūs, -ī, a disease	mētallūm, -ī, a metal
ānimūs, -ī, the mind, soul	īnitīūm, -ī, a beginning
discīpūlūs, -ī, a scholar, pupil	signūm, -ī, a sign
ventūs, -ī, the wind	īnsectūm, -ī, an insect
ēquūs, -ī, a horse	prātūm, -ī, a meadow
ōcūlūs, -ī, an eye	mendācīūm, -ī, a lie
hortūs, -ī, a garden	aedīfīcīūm, -ī, a building

[19. 20]

64. Words of the **Second Declension**, ending in the nominative in **ēr** (**īr**, **ūr**) have dropped the original ending **ūs** of the nominative. In most of them the **ě** is only inserted in the **Nominative** and **Vocative**, and disappears in the other cases.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ǎ' gěr, a field	ǎ' grī, fields
Gen.	ǎ' grī, of a field	ǎ' grō' rūm, of fields
Dat.	ǎ' grō, to a field	ǎ' grīs, to fields
Acc.	ǎ' grūm, a field	ǎ' grōs, fields
Voc.	ǎ' gěr, O field	ǎ' grī, O fields
Abl.	ǎ' grō, with a field	ǎ' grīs, with fields

Examples for Practice:

māgīstēr, -rī, a teacher, master	cultēr, -rī, a knife
lībēr, -rī, a book	āpēr, -rī, a wild boar
arbitēr, -rī, a judge	fābēr, -rī, a smith
austēr, -rī, the south wind	mīnistēr, -rī, a servant
cancēr, -rī, a crab	cāpēr, -rī, a goat

65. In other words ending in **ēr**, the **ě** of the **Nominative** belongs to the stem and is retained *through all the cases*, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pū' ěr, a boy	pū' ě rī, boys
Gen.	pū' ě rī, of a boy	pū' ě rō' rūm, of boys
Dat.	pū' ě rō, to a boy	pū' ě rīs, to boys
Acc.	pū' ě rūm, a boy	pū' ě rōs, boys
Voc.	pū' ěr, O boy	pū' ě rī, O boys
Abl.	pū' ě rō, with a boy	pū' ě rīs, with boys

To this class belong:

Substantives: *ădultēr, -ī, an adulterer* *gĕnĕr, -ī, a son-in-law*
pŭĕr, -ī, a boy *sŏcĕr, -ī, a father-in-law*
vespĕr, -ī, evening *Lībĕr, -ī, Bacchus*
libĕrī, -ŏrŭm, children

Adjectives: *aspĕr, aspĕră, aspĕrŭm, rough*
lăcĕr, lăcĕră, lăcĕrŭm, torn
mīsĕr, mīsĕră, mīsĕrŭm, wretched
prospĕr, prospĕră, prospĕrŭm, prosperous
tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm, tender
dextĕr, dext(ĕ)ră, dext(ĕ)rŭm, right.

Words ending in fĕr and gĕr from fĕrŏ, I bear, and gĕrŏ, I carry:

Lŭcĭfĕr, -ī, light-bringer
armĭgĕr, -ī, an armor-bearer
frŭgĭfĕr, frŭgĭfĕră, frŭgĭfĕrŭm, fruit-bearing
lănĭgĕr, lănĭgĕră, lănĭgĕrŭm, wool-bearing.

[23. 24.]

66. The only words in **īr** and **ūr** are: *vĭr, -ī, a man*, with its compounds, as: *lĕvĭr, -ī, a brother-in-law*, and the masculine of the adjective *sătŭr, -ă, -ŭm, sated.*

67. Proper Nouns in **īūs** omit **ĕ** in the **Vocative**, as: *Antŏ-nĭūs, Anthony, Antŏnĭ*; likewise *filĭūs, a son*, and *gĕnĭūs, a guardian angel*, make *filĭ* and *gĕnĭ*. The possessive *mĕūs, my*, (but not *mĕă, mĕŭm*) has *mĭ*, and *Dĕūs, God*, has *Dĕūs*. In the plural **Nominative** and **Vocative**, *dĕūs* has *dĭ* or *dĭ*; **Genitive**: *dĕŏrŭm*; **Dative** and **Ablative**: *dĭs, dĭs*.

68. In the **Genitive** plural of the **Second Declension ūm** is often found for **ŏrŭm**, especially in certain words denoting money, measure, or weight, as: *nummŭm* for *nummŏrŭm, of moneys*; also in a few other words, as: *dĕŭm* for *dĕŏrŭm, libĕrŭm* for *libĕrŏrŭm*.

69. A few **Greek Nouns** of the **Second Declension** end in **ŏs, ŏn**, instead of **ūs, ŭm**. Greek Nouns ending in **ĕūs** (like *Orphĕūs*) are thus declined:

Nom.	Or' phĕūs	Dat.	Or' phĕ ŏ	Voc.	Or' phĕū
Gen.	Or' phĕ ī	Acc.	Or' phĕ ŭm	Abl.	Or' phĕ ŏ

[101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

70. Nouns in **ūs**, **ěr**, **ír** are masculine; in **ům** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

71. Of nouns ending in **ūs** the names of towns, islands, and trees are **Feminine**, as: *Córinthūs*, *Corinth*; *Sámūs*, *Samos*; *pōpŭlūs*, *a poplar*, etc. (**42**); also:

alvūs, **-ī**, *the belly*

hŭmūs, **-ī**, *soil*

cōlūs, **-ī**, *a distaff*

vannūs, **ī**, *a van*

and many Greek words of frequent occurrence, as:

diphthongūs, **-ī**, *a diphthong*

měthōdūs, **-ī**, *a method*

pārāgrāphūs, **-ī**, *a paragraph*

ďialectūs, **-ī**, *a dialect*

The following in **ūs** are **Neuter**:

pělagūs, **-ī**, *the sea*; *vulgūs*, **-ī**, *the rabble*; *virūs*, **-ī**, *poison*;

their accusative, as of all neuters, is the same as the nominative, but they have no plural. [27. 28.]

Adjectives in ŭs, ǎ, ŭm.

72. Adjectives in **ūs**, **ǎ**, **ům** are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine like substantives of the **First**.

bōnūs, *bōnǎ*, *bōnŭm*, *good*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bō' nūs	bō' nǎ	bō' nŭm
Gen.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nī
Dat.	bō' nō	bō' nae	bō' nō
Acc.	bō' nŭm	bō' nǎm	bō' nŭm
Voc.	bō' ně	bō' nǎ	bō' nŭm
Abl.	bō' nō	bō' nǎ	bō' nō

Plural.

Nom.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nǎ
Gen.	bō' nō' rūm	bō' nǎ' rūm	bō' nō' rūm
Dat.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs
Acc.	bō' nōs	bō' nās	bō' nǎ
Voc.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nǎ
Abl.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs

Examples for Practice:

sēdūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>busy</i>	mōdestūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>modest</i>
tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>timid</i>	bēātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>happy, blessed</i>
rōtundūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>round</i>	albūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>white</i>
ōdōrūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fragrant</i>	fulvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>yellow</i>
clārūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>bright, clear</i>	multūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>much, many</i>
lūcidūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shining</i>	magnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>great, large</i>
ardūūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>arduous, steep</i>	parvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little, small</i>
umbrōsūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shady</i>	hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>human</i>
garrūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>garrulous</i>	vērūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>true</i>

[21. 22.]

73. Substantives and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are combined in the following manner:

Singular.

Nom.	nau'tā lae'tūs, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Gen.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>of a merry sailor</i>
Dat.	nau'tae lae'tō, <i>to a merry sailor</i>
Acc.	nau'tām lae'tūm, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Voc.	nau'tā lae'tē, <i>O merry sailor</i>
Abl.	nau'tā lae'tō, <i>with a merry sailor</i>

Plural.

Nom.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>merry sailors</i>
Gen.	nautā'rūm laetō'rūm, <i>of merry sailors</i>
Dat.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>to merry sailors</i>
Acc.	nau'tās lae'tōs, <i>merry sailors</i>
Voc.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>O merry sailors</i>
Abl.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>with merry sailors</i>

Singular.

Nom.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Gen.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>of a moderate dinner</i>
Dat.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>to a moderate dinner</i>
Acc.	coe'nām mō'dicām, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Voc.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>O moderate dinner</i>
Abl.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>with a moderate dinner</i>

Plural.

Nom.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Gen.	coenā'rūm mō'dicā'rūm, <i>of moderate dinners</i>
Dat.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>to moderate dinners</i>
Acc.	coe'nās mō'dicās, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Voc.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>O moderate dinners</i>
Abl.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>with moderate dinners</i>

Singular.

Nom.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Gen.	tec'tī al'tī, of a high roof
Dat.	tec'tō al'tō, to a high roof
Acc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Voc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, O high roof
Abl.	tec'tō al'tō, with a high roof

Plural.

Nom.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, high roofs
Gen.	tectō'rūm altō'rūm, of high roofs
Dat.	tec'tīs al'tīs, to high roofs
Acc.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, high roofs
Voc.	tec'tǎ al'tǎ, O high roofs
Abl.	tec'tīs al'tīs, with high roofs

Examples for Practice.

pōētǎ clārūs, a famous poet	flūvīūs lātūs, a broad river
formicǎ sēdulǎ, the busy ant	collūm longūm, a long neck.

Adjectives in ěr, ǎ, ūm.

74. Adjectives in **ěr, ǎ, ūm**, are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine, like substantives of the **First**.

nīgěr, nigrǎ, nigrūm, *black*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	nī' gěr	nī' grǎ	nī' grūm
Gen.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grī
Dat.	nī' grō	nī' grae	nī' grō
Acc.	nī' grūm	nī' grām	nī' grūm
Voc.	nī' gěr	nī' grǎ	nī' grūm
Abl.	nī' grō	nī' grǎ	nī' grō

Plural.

Nom.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grǎ
Gen.	nī' grō' rūm	nī' grǎ' rūm	nī' grō' rūm
Dat.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs
Acc.	nī' grōs	nī' grās	nī' grǎ
Voc.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grǎ
Abl.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs

liběr, liběrá, liběrům, *free*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	lī' běr	lī' bě rǎ	lī' bě rŭm
Gen.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rī
Dat.	lī' bě rō	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rō
Acc.	lī' bě rŭm	lī' bě rām	lī' bě rŭm
Voc.	lī' běr	lī' bě rǎ	lī' bě rŭm
Abl.	lī' bě rō	lī' bě rā	lī' bě rō

Plural.

Nom.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rǎ
Gen.	lī' bě rō' rŭm	lī' bě rā' rŭm	lī' bě rō' rŭm
Dat.	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs
Acc.	lī' bě rōs	lī' bě rās	lī' bě rǎ
Voc.	lī' bě rī	lī' bě rae	lī' bě rǎ
Abl.	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs	lī' bě rīs

75. Most adjectives in **ěr, ǎ, ŭm** drop the **ě** before the **r** like **nīgěr**. Examples are:

aegěr, aegrǎ, aegrŭm, *sick*
 crėběr, crėbrǎ, crėbrŭm, *frequent*
 rŭběr, rŭbrǎ, rŭbrŭm, *red*
 pulchěr, pulchrǎ, pulchrŭm, *beautiful, fine*
 sīnistěr, sīnistrǎ, sīnistrŭm, *left*
 pīgěr, pīgrǎ, pīgrŭm, *lazy*
 intėgěr, intėgrǎ, intėgrŭm, *whole, entire*

76. A few adjectives in **ěr, ǎ, ŭm** retain the **ě** throughout, like **liběr**. (See **65**.) [25. 26.]

77. These nine adjectives have the genitive singular in **īūs**, and the dative in **ī** in all the genders:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Dative.
ālīūs, -ǎ, -ŭd, <i>another</i>	ālīūs	ālīī
nullūs, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>no, not any, no one</i>	nullīūs	nullīī
sōlūs, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>alone</i>	sōlīūs	sōlīī
tōtūs, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>whole</i>	tōtīūs	tōtīī
ullūs, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>any</i>	ullīūs	ullīī
ŭnūs, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>one</i>	ŭnīūs	ŭnīī
altěr, -ǎ, -ŭm, <i>the other (of two)</i>	altěrīūs	altěrīī
ūtěr, -rǎ, -rŭm, <i>which (of two)</i>	utrīūs	utrīī
neutěr, -rǎ, -rŭm, <i>neither</i>	neutrīūs	neutrīī

The plural is regular like that of **bōnūs**.

[71. 72.]

Third Declension.

78. Nouns whose genitive ends in **īs**, are of the **Third Declension**. Their nominative ends in

ǎ, ě, ĭ, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, and **x**.

79. In the Third Declension, the **stem** ends either in **ĭ** (**Vowel-stem**) or in a consonant (**Consonant-stem**). There are only two **u-stems**, **sū-s**, *a swine*, and **grū-s**, *a crane*. The stem can be found by cutting off **ŭm** from the **Genitive Plural**:

ǎvis, <i>a bird</i>	Gen. Plur. āvīŭm	Stem āvī-
lǎpīs, <i>a stone</i>	“ lǎpīdŭm	“ lǎpīd-

80. All nouns having the *same* number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (**Parisyllabic**) have **Vowel-stems** in **ĭ**. They end in the Nominative in **īs, ēs, ě, ǎl, ǎr**, those in **ǎl** and **ǎr** having lost a final **ě**.

Nom. nāvīs	Gen. nāvī-s	Nom. ānīmāl(ě)	Gen. ānīmālī-s
“ nūbēs	“ nūbī-s	“ calcār(ě)	“ calcārī-s
“ mǎrě	“ mǎrī-s		

81. All nouns *increasing* in the Genitive (**Imparisyllabic**) have **Consonant-stems**:

Nom. lǎpīs	Gen. lǎpīd-īs	Nom. hōmǒ	Gen. hōmīn-īs
------------	---------------	-----------	---------------

Formation of the Genitive.

82. The **Entire Declension** of any Substantive of the Third Declension may be readily formed by substituting for the Genitive-ending **īs**, the proper endings of the other cases. Hence to decline a word correctly, in this Declension, we need to know how its **Genitive** is formed.

But we must bear in mind that **Neuters** always form the **Accusative** and **Vocative** cases in both numbers like the **Nominative**, and the **Nominative Plural** in **ǎ**. *This is a rule of highest importance.*

83. Nouns in **ǎ** are **Neuters** of Greek origin and change **ǎ** into **ǎtīs** to form the genitive, as: pǒemǎ, pǒemǎtīs.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	põ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>		põ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Gen.	põ ē' mā tīs, <i>of a poem</i>		põ ē' mā tūm, <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	põ ē' mā tī, <i>to a poem</i>		põ ē mā' tī būs, <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	põ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>		põ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Voc.	põ ē' mā, <i>O poem</i>		põ ē' mā tā, <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	põ ē' mā tē, <i>with a poem</i>		põ ē mā' tī būs, <i>with poems</i>

Examples for Practice:

ārōmā, -tīs, *a spice* aenigmā, -tīs, *a riddle* [65. 66.]

84. Nouns in **ě** change **ě** into **īs** to form the genitive, as: rētě, rētīs. They are **Neuter**.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>		rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Gen.	rē' tīs, <i>of a net</i>		rē' tī ūm, <i>of nets</i>
Dat.	rē' tī, <i>to a net</i>		rē' tī būs, <i>to nets</i>
Acc.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>		rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Voc.	rē' tē, <i>O net</i>		rē' tī ā; <i>O nets</i>
Abl.	rē' tī, <i>with a net</i>		rē' tī būs, <i>with nets</i>

Examples for Practice:

mārě, -īs, *the sea, ocean* cūbīlē, -īs, *a lair*
altārě, -īs, *an altar* conclāvě, -īs, *a room* [53. 54.]

85. Certain nouns ending in **ō** form their genitive by changing **ō** into **īnīs**, as: hōmō, hōmīnīs.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	hō' mō, <i>man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>men, people</i>
Gen.	hō' mī nīs, <i>of man</i>		hō' mī nūm, <i>of men</i>
Dat.	hō' mī nī, <i>to man</i>		hō mī' nī būs, <i>to men</i>
Acc.	hō' mī nēm, <i>man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>men</i>
Voc.	hō' mō, <i>O man</i>		hō' mī nēs, <i>O men</i>
Abl.	hō' mī nē, <i>with man</i>		hō mī' nī būs, <i>with men</i>

Thus we have:

hōmō, -īnīs, *man* turbō, -īnīs, *a whirlwind*
nēmō, -īnīs, *nobody* Āpollō, -īnīs, *Apollo*

and nearly all the words in **dō** and **gō**, as:

ordō, -īnīs, *order* ĩmāgō, -īnīs, *an image*
consuētūdō, -īnīs, *habit* pulchrītūdō, -īnīs, *beauty.*

86. Mark: cārō, *flesh*; carnīs, **gen. plur.:** carnīūm.

87. All other words ending in **ō** change **ō** into **ōnīs** to form the genitive, as: **lēō, lēōnīs**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. lē' ō, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen. lē ō' nīs, <i>of a lion</i>	lē ō' nūm, <i>of lions</i>
Dat. lē ō' nī, <i>to a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>to lions</i>
Acc. lē ō' nēm, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc. lē' ō, <i>O lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl. lē ō' nē, <i>with a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>with lions</i>

Such are:

pāvō, -ōnīs, <i>a peacock</i>	āquīlō, -ōnīs, <i>the north wind</i>
pulmō, -ōnīs, <i>a lung</i>	pōtīō, -ōnīs, <i>a drink(ing)</i>

also a few in **dō** and **gō**, namely:

harpāgō, -ōnīs, <i>a grapple-hook</i>	praedō, -ōnīs, <i>a robber</i>
cōmēdō, -ōnīs, <i>a glutton</i>	līgō, -ōnīs, <i>a mattock</i>

[29—32.]

Peculiar: **Ānīō, -ēnīs, the river Anio.**

88. Nouns in **ī** and **ỹ** (Neuters of Greek origin) take **īs, ỹīs** in the genitive, as: **sīnāpī, -īs, mustard; mīsỹ, -ỹīs, copperas.**

89. Neuters in **e**: only **ālēc, ālēcīs, pickle; lāc, lactīs, milk.**

90. Nouns in **l** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive:

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. con' sūl, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Gen. con' sū līs, <i>of a consul</i>	con' sū lūm, <i>of the consuls</i>
Dat. con' sū lī, <i>to a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>to the consuls</i>
Acc. con' sū lēm, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Voc. con' sūl, <i>O consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>O consuls</i>
Abl. con' sū lē, <i>with a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>with the consuls</i>

Examples for Practice:

sōl, sōlīs, <i>the sun</i>	exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>an exile</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>	pūgīl, pūgīlīs, <i>a pugilist</i>

91. Nouns in **āl** change **āl** to **ālīs** to form the genitive, as: **ānīmāl, animālīs.** They are **Neuter**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Gen. ā nī māl' līs, <i>of an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ūm, <i>of animals</i>
Dat. ā nī māl' lī, <i>to an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>to animals</i>
Acc. ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Voc. ā' nī māl, <i>O animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>O animals</i>
Abl. ā nī māl' lī, <i>with an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>with animals</i>

Examples for Practice:

vectīgāļ, -āļīs, a tax tribūnāļ, -āļīs, a tribunal

92. mēļ, *honey*, has mellīs, and the plural mellā; fēļ, *gall*, has fellīs, but is without a plural; both are **Neuter**. [53. 54.]

93. Nouns in **ēn** form their genitive by changing **ēn** into **īnīs**, as: carmēn, carmīnīs; Nouns in **ēn**, by adding **īs**, as: rēn, rēnīs. All in **mēn** are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	car' mēn, a poem	car' mī nā, poems
Gen.	car' mī nīs, of a poem	car' mī nūm, of poems
Dat.	car' mī nī, to a poem	car mī' nī būs, to poems
Acc.	car' mēn, a poem	car' mī nā, poems
Voc.	car' mēn, O poem	car' mī nā, O poems
Abl.	car' mī nē, with a poem	car mī' nī būs, with poems

Examples for Practice:

nōmēn, -īnīs, a name	(rēn, rēnīs) usually pl.: rēnēs,
lūmēn, -īnīs, light	rēnūm, the kidneys
ōmēn, -īnīs, an omen	liēn, liēnīs, spleen
fulmēn, -īnīs, a thunder-bolt	splēn, splēnīs, spleen
grāmēn, -īnīs, grass	pectēn, -īnīs, a comb [59. 60.]

94. As a rule, nouns in **r**, viz. **ār, ēr, ōr, ūr**, add **īs** to form the genitive, subject, however, to the following variations:

Those in **ār** form the Genitive by changing **ār** into **ārīs**, as: calcār, calcārīs. They are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	cal' cār, a spur	cal cā' rī ā, spurs
Gen.	cal cā' rīs, of a spur	cal cā' rī ūm, of spurs
Dat.	cal cā' rī, to a spur	cal cā' rī būs, to spurs
Acc.	cal' cār, a spur	cal cā' rī ā, spurs
Voc.	cal' cār, O spur	cal cā' rī ā, O spurs
Abl.	cal cā' rī, with a spur	cal cā' rī būs, with spurs

Examples for Practice:

exemplār, -ārīs, a model cochlēār, -ārīs, a spoon

95.

EXCEPTIONS:

Neuter.

Masculine.

nectār, -īs, nectar	Caesār, -īs, Caesar
hēpār, -ātīs, the liver	lār, lārīs, a household deity
fār, farrīs, corn	pār, pārīs, a pair [53. 54.]

96. Nouns in **ěr** and **ēr** add **īs** to form the genitive, as: *ansěr, ansěrīs, a goose; věr, věrīs, spring; but imběr, a shower, the names of months in běr, and nouns in těr, except lătěr, a brick, change ěr into rīs, dropping the ě before the r, as: pătěr, pătērīs.*

Singular.

Nom.	an' sěr, <i>a goose</i>	pă' těr, <i>a father</i>
Gen.	an' sě rīs, <i>of a goose</i>	pă' trīs, <i>of a father</i>
Dat.	an' sě rī, <i>to a goose</i>	pă' trī, <i>to a father</i>
Acc.	an' sě rēm, <i>a goose</i>	pă' trēm, <i>a father</i>
Voc.	an' sěr, <i>O goose</i>	pă' těr, <i>O father</i>
Abl.	an' sě rě, <i>with a goose</i>	pă' trě, <i>with a father</i>

Plural.

Nom.	an' sě rēs, <i>geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Gen.	an' sě rŭm, <i>of geese</i>	pă' trŭm, <i>of fathers</i>
Dat.	an sě' rī bŭs, <i>to geese</i>	pă' trī bŭs, <i>to fathers</i>
Acc.	an' sě rēs, <i>geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Voc.	an' sě rēs, <i>O geese</i>	pă' trēs, <i>O fathers</i>
Abl.	an sě' rī bŭs, <i>with geese</i>	pă' trī bŭs, <i>with fathers</i>

Examples for Practice:

passěr, -īs, <i>a sparrow</i>	mătěr, -rīs, <i>a mother</i>
mŭliěr, -īs, <i>a woman</i>	frătěr, -rīs, <i>a brother</i>
aggěr, -īs, <i>a rampart</i>	imběr, -rīs, <i>a shower</i>
lătěr, -īs, <i>a brick</i>	Septemběr, -rīs, <i>September</i>

97.

Peculiar:

ĭtěr, ĭtĕněrīs, <i>a way (Neuter)</i>	ăēr, ăērīs, <i>the air</i>
Juppĭtěr, Jŏvīs, <i>Jove</i>	aethěr, aethěrīs, <i>the upper air</i>

98. A few have **ĭŭm**, instead of **ŭm**, in the Genitive plural:

imběr, <i>a shower, imbrĭŭm</i>	ŭtěr, <i>a leather sack, ŭtrĭŭm</i>
lintěr, <i>a boat, lintrĭŭm</i>	ventěr, <i>the belly, ventrĭŭm</i>

[37. 38.]

99. Nouns in **ōr** change **ōr** into **ōrīs** to form the genitive; as: *cŏlŏr, -ōrīs.*

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	cŏ' lŏr, <i>a color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Gen.	cŏ lŏ' rīs, <i>of a color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rŭm, <i>of colors</i>
Dat.	cŏ lŏ' rī, <i>to a color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rī bŭs, <i>to colors</i>
Acc.	cŏ lŏ' rēm, <i>a color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Voc.	cŏ' lŏr, <i>O color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rēs, <i>O colors</i>
Abl.	cŏ lŏ' rě, <i>with a color</i>	cŏ lŏ' rī bŭs, <i>with colors</i>

Examples for Practice:

tīmōr, -ōrīs, <i>fear</i>	āmōr, -ōrīs, <i>love</i>
praeceptōr, -ōrīs, <i>a teacher</i>	sāpōr, -ōrīs, <i>taste</i>
auctōr, -ōrīs, <i>an author</i>	ōdōr, -ōrīs, <i>smell</i>
auditōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hearer</i>	clāmōr, -ōrīs, <i>a shout, noise</i>
ōrātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a speaker</i>	vēnātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hunter</i>

100. The following have **ō** short in the genitive:

arbōr, arbōrīs, <i>a tree</i>	Neut. {	marmōr, marmōrīs, <i>marble</i>
mēmōr, mēmōrīs, <i>mindful</i>		aequōr, aequōrīs, <i>the sea</i>
immēmōr, immēmōrīs, <i>forgetful</i>		ādōr, ādōrīs, <i>spelt</i>

101. Mark the **Neuter** cōr, cordīs, *heart*, and its Compounds:
 concors, -dīs, *harmonious* discors, -dīs, *discordant*
[33. 34.]

102. Nouns in **ūr** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive;
 as: guttūr, guttūrīs; they are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Gen.	gut' tū rīs, <i>of the throat</i>	gut' tū rūm, <i>of the throats</i>
Dat.	gut' tū rī, <i>to the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>to the throats</i>
Acc.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Voc.	gut' tūr, <i>O throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>O throats</i>
Abl.	gut' tū rē, <i>with the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>with the throats</i>

103. These four change **ūr** into **ōrīs**, but are also **Neuter**:

ēbūr, -ōrīs, <i>ivory</i>	fēmūr, -ōrīs, <i>the thigh</i>
jēcūr, -ōrīs (jēcīnōrīs), <i>the liver</i>	rōbūr, -ōrīs, <i>strength</i>

[63. 64.]

104. There are **two Classes** of nouns in **s**:

s after a vowel: **as, es, is, os, us, aus**

s after a consonant: **ls, ns, rs; bs, ps, ms.**

105. Nouns in **ās** change **ās** into **ātīs** to form the genitive,
 as: aetās, aetātīs; ānās, *a duck*, has ānātīs; vās, *a surety*, vādīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	ae' tās, <i>an age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	ae' tā' tīs, <i>of an age</i>	ae' tā' tūm, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	ae' tā' tī, <i>to an age</i>	ae' tā' tī būs, <i>to ages</i>
Acc.	ae' tā' tēm, <i>an age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc.	ae' tās, <i>O age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl.	ae' tā' tē, <i>with an age</i>	ae' tā' tī būs, <i>with ages</i>

Examples for Practice:

aestās, -ātīs, <i>summer</i>	paupertās, -ātīs, <i>poverty</i>
vōluptās, -ātīs, <i>pleasure</i>	vōluntās, -ātīs, <i>the will</i>
sōciētās, -ātīs, <i>society</i>	libertās, -ātīs, <i>liberty</i>
difficultās, -ātīs, <i>difficulty</i>	vārīētās, -ātīs, <i>variety</i>
cīvitās, -ātīs, <i>a state</i>	sānītās, -ātīs, <i>health</i>

106. The following in ās form their genitives differently:

Nom. ās, <i>a copper</i>	Gen. assīs	Gen. Pl. assīūm
mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīs	mārīūm
ādāmās, <i>a diamond</i>	ādāmantīs	
ēlēphās, <i>an elephant</i>	ēlēphantīs	
vās, <i>a vessel (Neuter)</i>	vāsīs, Pl. vāsā, -ōrūm (2d decl.)	

107. fās, *right*; nēfās, *wrong*, are **Indeclinable**. [39. 40.]

108. Nouns ending in ēs change ēs into īs to form the genitive, as: nūbēs, nūbīs (**Vowel-stems**). They have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive. Nouns in ēs increase in the genitive, changing ēs into ītīs, as: mīlēs, mīlītīs (**Consonant-stems**).

Singular.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>a soldier</i>
Gen. nū' bīs, <i>of a cloud</i>	mī' lī tīs, <i>of a soldier</i>
Dat. nū' bī, <i>to a cloud</i>	mī' lī tī, <i>to a soldier</i>
Acc. nū' bēm, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lī tēm, <i>a soldier</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>O soldier</i>
Abl. nū' bē, <i>with a cloud</i>	mī' lī tē, <i>with a soldier</i>

Plural.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Gen. nū' bī ūm, <i>of clouds</i>	mī' lī tūm, <i>of soldiers</i>
Dat. nū' bī būs, <i>to clouds</i>	mī' lī' tī būs, <i>to soldiers</i>
Acc. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>O soldiers</i>
Abl. nū' bī būs, <i>with clouds</i>	mī' lī' tī būs, <i>with soldiers</i>

Examples for Practice:

fāmēs, -īs, <i>hunger</i>	cōmēs, -ītīs, <i>a companion</i>
clādēs, -īs, <i>defeat</i>	mergēs, -ītīs, <i>a sheaf</i>
vulpēs, -īs, <i>a fox</i>	pēdēs, -ītīs, <i>a foot-soldier</i>
sēdēs, -īs, <i>a seat</i>	ēquēs, -ītīs, <i>a horseman</i>

109. EXCEPTIONS. The following in *ēs* and *ēs* increase in the genitive in different ways (*ēt-īs, ēt-īs, ēd-īs, ēd-īs, id-īs, ēr-īs*).

<i>ābīēs, -ētīs, the silver fir</i>	<i>pēs, pēdīs, a foot</i>
<i>āriēs, -ētīs, a ram</i>	<i>quādrūpēs, -ēdīs, four-footed</i>
<i>pārīēs, -ētīs, a wall</i>	<i>compēs, -ēdīs, a fetter</i>
<i>interprēs, -ētīs, an interpreter</i>	<i>hērēs, -ēdīs, an heir</i>
<i>sēgēs, -ētīs, a crop</i>	<i>mercēs, -ēdīs, a reward</i>
<i>tēgēs, -ētīs, a covering</i>	<i>obsēs, -īdīs, a hostage</i>
<i>quīēs, -ētīs, rest</i>	<i>praesēs, -īdīs, a president</i>
<i>lōcūplēs, -ētīs, wealthy</i>	<i>Cērēs, -ērīs, Ceres</i> [45. 46.]

110. Mark the solitary nouns:

<i>aes, aerīs, brass (Neuter)</i>	<i>praes, praedīs, surety</i>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

111. The majority of nouns ending in *īs* have **Vowel-stems**, and form their genitive in *īs*, with an equal number of syllables. They have the nominative and genitive singular *alike*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>ā' vīs, a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, birds</i>
Gen.	<i>ā' vīs, of a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī ūm, of birds</i>
Dat.	<i>ā' vī, to a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs, to birds</i>
Acc.	<i>ā' vēm, a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, birds</i>
Voc.	<i>ā' vīs, O bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs, O birds</i>
Abl.	<i>ā' vē, with a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs, with birds</i>

Examples for Practice:

<i>amnīs, -, a river</i>	<i>fēlīs, -, a cat</i>	<i>ōvīs, -, a sheep</i>
<i>āpīs, -, a bee</i>	<i>finīs, -, an end</i>	<i>pānīs, -, bread</i>
<i>aurīs, -, the ear</i>	<i>hostīs, -, an enemy</i>	<i>piscīs, -, a fish</i>
<i>cānīs, -, a dog</i>	<i>ignīs, -, fire</i>	<i>tīgrīs, -, a tiger</i>
<i>cīvīs, -, a citizen</i>	<i>mensīs, -, a month</i>	<i>vallīs, -, a valley</i>
<i>classīs, -, a fleet</i>	<i>nātālīs, -, a birthday</i>	<i>vermīs, -, a worm</i>
<i>collīs, -, a hill</i>	<i>nāvīs, -, a ship</i>	<i>vestīs, -, a dress</i>

112. Others in *īs* and *īs* have **Consonant-stems** increasing in the genitive in different ways (*īd-īs, it-īs, ēr-īs, īr-īs, īn-īs*).

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>lā' pīs, a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, stones</i>
Gen.	<i>lā' pī dīs, of a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dūm, of stones</i>
Dat.	<i>lā' pī dī, to a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs, to stones</i>
Acc.	<i>lā' pī dēm, a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, stones</i>
Voc.	<i>lā' pīs, O stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs, O stones</i>
Abl.	<i>lā' pī dē, with a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs, with stones</i>

To this class belong:

cassīs, cassīdīs, *a helmet*
lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *a stone*
cīnīs, cīnērīs, *ashes*
pulvīs, pulvērīs, *dust*
cuspīs, cuspīdīs, *a spear*
vōmīs, vōmērīs, *a plowshare*

līs, litīs, *a quarrel*
sanguīs, sanguīnīs, *blood*
glīs, glirīs, *a dormouse*
Samnīs, Samnitīs, *a Samnite*
týrannīs, týrannīdīs, *tyranny*

113. exsanguīs, -ě, *bloodless*, though a compound of sangūīs, has in the genitive exsangūīs (*parisyllabic*).

114. Mark the special paradigm of vīs, *force*:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	vīs, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>forces</i>
Gen.	—	vī' rī ūm,	<i>of forces</i>
Dat.	—	vī' rī būs,	<i>to forces</i>
Acc.	vīm, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>forces</i>
Voc.	vīs, <i>O force</i>	vī' rēs,	<i>O forces</i>
Abl.	vī, <i>by force</i>	vī' rī būs,	<i>with forces</i> [41 - 44.]

115. Some Nouns in ōs form their genitive by changing ōs into ōrīs, others by changing ōs into ōtīs. Thus, we have:

ōs, ōrīs	ōs, ōtīs
fōs, -ōrīs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, -ōtīs, <i>a dowry</i>
mōs, -ōrīs, <i>custom</i>	eōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grindstone</i>
rōs, -ōrīs, <i>dew</i>	něpōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grandchild</i>
lěpōs, -ōrīs, <i>charm, wit</i>	rhīnōcěrōs, -ōtīs, <i>a rhinoceros</i>
ōs, ōrīs, <i>the mouth (Neuter)</i>	sācerdōs, -ōtīs, <i>a priest</i>

Singular.

Nom.	fōs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, <i>a dowry</i>
Gen.	fō' rīs, <i>of a flower</i>	dō' tīs, <i>of a dowry</i>
Dat.	fō' rī, <i>to a flower</i>	dō' tī, <i>to a dowry</i>
Acc.	fō' rēm, <i>a flower</i>	dō' tēm, <i>a dowry</i>
Voc.	fōs, <i>O flower</i>	dōs, <i>O dowry</i>
Abl.	fō' rě, <i>with a flower</i>	dō' tě, <i>with a dowry</i>

Plural.

Nom.	fō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Gen.	fō' rūm, <i>of flowers</i>	dō' tūm, <i>of dowries</i>
Dat.	fō' rī būs, <i>to flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>to dowries</i>
Acc.	fō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Voc.	fō' rēs, <i>O flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>O dowries</i>
Abl.	fō' rī būs, <i>with flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>with dowries</i>

116.

Peculiar:

custōs, custōdīs, <i>a keeper</i>	compōs, compōtīs, <i>capable</i>
ōs, ossīs, <i>a bone (Neuter);</i>	bōs, bōvīs, <i>an ox; Plur. N. bōvēs;</i>
Gen. Plur. ossiūm	G. bōūm; D. bōbūs or būbūs

117. A few masculine Greek nouns in ōs have ōīs, as:

hērōs, -ōīs, <i>a hero</i>	Trōs, -ōīs, <i>a Trojan</i> [35. 36.]
----------------------------	---------------------------------------

118. Of **Feminine Nouns** in ūs, some change ūs into ūtīs, others into ūdīs to form the genitive; as: virtūs, virtūtīs; pālūs, pālūdīs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	vir' tūs, <i>virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>virtues</i>
Gen.	vir tū' tīs, <i>of virtue</i>	vir tū' tūm, <i>of virtues</i>
Dat.	vir tū' tī, <i>to virtue</i>	vir tū' tī būs, <i>to virtues</i>
Acc.	vir tū' tēm, <i>virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>virtues</i>
Voc.	vir' tūs, <i>O virtue</i>	vir tū' tēs, <i>O virtues</i>
Abl.	vir tū' tē, <i>with virtue</i>	vir tū' tī būs, <i>with virtues</i>

sālūs, -ūtīs, <i>safety, welfare</i>	sēnectūs, -ūtīs, <i>old age</i>
servītūs, -ūtīs, <i>slavery</i>	pālūs, -ūdīs, <i>a marsh</i>
jūventūs, -ūtīs, <i>youth</i>	incūs, -ūdīs, <i>an anvil</i>

119. tellūs, *earth*, has tellūrīs, pēcūs, *a head of cattle, an animal*, pēcūdīs, and Vēnūs, *the goddess Venus*, Vēnērīs.

120. Notice the following names of animals in us:

mūs, mūrīs, <i>a mouse; Gen. Plur.</i>	grūs, grūīs, <i>a crane</i>
mūrīum	sūs, sūīs, <i>a swine; Dat. Plur.</i>
lēpūs, lēpōrīs, <i>a hare</i>	sūbūs (instead of sūībūs)

[51. 52.]

121. Of **Neuter Nouns** in ūs of two or more syllables, some change ūs into ōrīs to form the genitive, as: corpūs, corpōrīs; others change ūs into ěrīs, as: ōpūs, ōpěrīs. All monosyllables, with long ū, form their genitive in ūrīs, as: jūs, jūrīs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	cor' pūs, <i>a body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>bodies</i>
Gen.	cor' pō rīs, <i>of a body</i>	cor' pō rūm, <i>of bodies</i>
Dat.	cor' pō rī, <i>to a body</i>	cor pō' rī būs, <i>to bodies</i>
Acc.	cor' pūs, <i>a body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>bodies</i>
Voc.	cor' pūs, <i>O body</i>	cor' pō rā, <i>O bodies</i>
Abl.	cor' pō rē, <i>with a body</i>	cor pō' rī būs, <i>with bodies</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Gen.	ō' pē rīs, <i>of a work</i>	ō' pē rūm, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	ō' pē rī, <i>to a work</i>	ō pē' rī būs, <i>to works</i>
Acc.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Voc.	ō' pūs, <i>O work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	ō' pē rē, <i>with a work</i>	ō pē' rī būs, <i>with works</i>
Nom.	jūs, <i>right, law</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Gen.	jū' rīs, <i>of right</i>	jū' rūm, <i>of rights</i>
Dat.	jū' rī, <i>to right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>to rights</i>
Acc.	jūs, <i>right</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Voc.	jūs, <i>O right</i>	jū' rā, <i>O rights</i>
Abl.	jū' rē, <i>with right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>with rights</i>

Examples for Practice:

frīgūs, -ōrīs, <i>cold</i>	mūnūs, -ērīs, <i>an office, gift</i>
tempūs, -ōrīs, <i>a time</i>	gēnūs, -ērīs, <i>a kind, race</i>
litūs, -ōrīs, <i>a shore</i>	ōnūs, -ērīs, <i>a burden</i>
dēcūs, -ōrīs, <i>an ornament</i>	sīdūs, -ērīs, <i>a star, constella-</i>
nēmūs, -ōrīs, <i>a grove</i>	scēlūs, -ērīs, <i>a crime</i> [tion
pectūs, -ōrīs, <i>the breast</i>	erūs, -ūrīs, <i>the leg</i>
vulnūs, -ērīs, <i>a wound</i>	rūs, -ūrīs, <i>the country</i>

[61. 62.]

122. The following Greek nouns in **us** (**Masculine and Feminine**) deserve special notice:

Trápēzūs, -untīs, <i>Trebizond</i>	Oedīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>Oedipus</i>
trīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>a tripod</i>	pōlypūs, -ī, <i>a polyp</i> (2d decl.)

123. The only two nouns in **aus** are *laus*, *laudīs*, *praise*, and *fraus*, *fraudīs*, *fraud*; *fraus* has *fraudūm* or *fraudīūm* in the genitive plural. [51.]

124. Nouns ending in **bs**, **ps**, and **ms** change **s** final into **īs** to form the genitive; as: *urbs*, *urbīs*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	urbs, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Gen.	ur' bīs, <i>of a city</i>	ur' bī ūm <i>of cities</i>
Dat.	ur' bī, <i>to a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>to cities</i>
Acc.	ur' bēm, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Voc.	urbs, <i>O city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>O cities</i>
Abl.	ur' bē, <i>with a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>with cities</i>

Examples for Practice:

plebs, plēbīs, *the populace* stirps, stirpīs, *a stem*
trabs, trābīs, *a beam* hīems, hīēmīs, *winter*

125. A few are subject to a variation of the radical vowel:

ādeps, ādīpīs, *lard* auceps, aucūpīs, *a fowler*
caelebs, caelībīs, *unmarried*

126. Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpīō** have **cīpīs**, as:

princeps, -cīpīs, *a chief* particeps, -cīpīs, *sharing*

Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpūt** have **cīpītīs**, as:

anceps, -cīpītīs, *double* praeceps, -cīpītīs, *steep*

127. All nouns ending in **ls**, **rs**, and **ns** change **s** final into **tīs** to form the genitive; as: pars, partīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	pars, <i>a part, side</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Gen.	par' tīs, <i>of a part</i>	par' tī ūm, <i>of parts</i>
Dat.	par' tī, <i>to a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>to parts</i>
Acc.	par' tēm, <i>a part</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Voc.	pars, <i>O part</i>	par' tēs, <i>O parts</i>
Abl.	par' tē, <i>with a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>with parts</i>

Examples for Practice:

mors, -tīs, *death* gens, -tīs, *a tribe, people*
infans, -tīs, *a babe, child* frons, -tīs, *the forehead, brow*
ars, -tīs, *art* pārens, -tīs, *a parent*

128. Only three have **dīs** in the genitive, namely:
frons, -dīs, *foliage*; glans, -dīs, *an acorn*; juglans, -dīs, *a walnut*
[47. 48.]

129. There is only one noun in **t** (Neuter):

cāpūt, cāpītīs, *the head*, and its Compounds. [63.]

130. Nouns in **x** form their genitive by resolving **x** into **cs** or **gs** and changing final **s** into **īs**, as: dux (= ducs), dūcīs; rex (= regs), rēgīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	dux, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Gen.	dū' cīs, <i>of a leader</i>	dū' cūm, <i>of leaders</i>
Dat.	dū' cī, <i>to a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>to leaders</i>
Acc.	dū' cēm, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Voc.	dūx, <i>O leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>O leaders</i>
Abl.	dū' cē, <i>with a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>with leaders</i>

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	rex, <i>a king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Gen.	rē' gīs, <i>of a king</i>		rē' gūm, <i>of kings</i>
Dat.	rē' gī, <i>to a king</i>		rē' gī būs, <i>to kings</i>
Acc.	rē' gēm, <i>a king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Voc.	rex, <i>O king</i>		rē' gēs, <i>O kings</i>
Abl.	rē' gē, <i>with a king</i>		rē' gī būs, <i>with kings</i>

131. Nouns in **x** with preceding consonant change **x** into **cīs**:

falx, -cīs, <i>a sickle</i>	arx, -cīs, <i>a citadel</i>
merx, -cīs, <i>merchandise</i>	lanx, -cīs, <i>a dish</i>

132. Nouns in **ax** have **ācīs**, as: pax, pācīs, *peace*.

EXCEPTION: fax, fācīs, *a torch*.

133. Nouns in **ex** have commonly **īcīs**, as:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	jū' dex, <i>a judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	jū' dī cīs, <i>of a judge</i>		jū' dī cūm, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	jū' dī cī, <i>to a judge</i>		jū' dī' cī būs, <i>to judges</i>
Acc.	jū' dī cēm, <i>a judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Voc.	jū' dex, <i>O judge</i>		jū' dī cēs, <i>O judges</i>
Abl.	jū' dī cē, <i>with a judge</i>		jū' dī' cī būs, <i>with judges</i>

EXCEPTIONS:

lex, lēgīs, <i>a law</i>	rēmex, rēmīgīs, <i>a rower</i>
rex, rēgīs, <i>a king</i>	sēnex, sēnīs, <i>an old man</i>
grex, grēgīs, <i>a flock</i>	sūpellex, sūpellectīlīs, <i>furniture</i>
nex, nēcīs, <i>murder</i>	vervex, vervēcīs, <i>a wether</i>
	faex, faecīs, <i>lees</i>

134. Nouns in **ix** have **īcīs**, and less frequently **īcīs**, as:

cīcātrix, -īcīs, <i>a wound</i>	pix, -īcīs, <i>pitch</i>
cornix, -īcīs, <i>a crow</i>	cālix, -īcīs, <i>a cup</i>
rādix, -īcīs, <i>a root</i>	fornix, -īcīs, <i>an arch</i>
nūtrix, -īcīs, <i>a nurse</i>	appendix, -īcīs, <i>an appendix</i>

But nix, snow, has nīvīs.

135. Nouns in **ox** have **ōcīs**, as: vox, vōcīs, *a voice*.

EXCEPTIONS:

praecox, praecōcīs, *premature* nox, noctīs, *night*
and a few national names in **ox**, as:

Cappādox, -ōcīs, *a Cappadocian*

Allōbrox, -ōgīs, *one of the Allobroges*.

136. Nouns in **ux** have **ŭcĭs**, as: **dux**, **dŭcĭs**, *a leader*.

EXCEPTIONS:

lux, lŭcĭs, <i>light</i>	conjux, conjŭgĭs, <i>a spouse</i>
Pollux, Pollŭcĭs, <i>Pollux</i>	frux, frŭgĭs, <i>fruit</i>
faux, faucĭs, <i>the throat</i>	

[49. 50.]

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

137. Certain adjectives of the **Third Declension** have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender — others two, the masculine and feminine being the same — others but one, the same for all genders.

138. Adjectives of three terminations end in **ĕr**, **ĭs**, **ĕ**, and are declined like **pătĕr**, **ăvĭs**, **mărĕ**, respectively. All drop the **ĕ** before **r** in declension, except **cĕlĕr**, **cĕlĕrĭs**, **cĕlĕrĕ**, *swift*, which retains it.

ăcĕr, ăcrĭs, ăcrĕ, *sharp, keen*

	Singular.		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ă' cĕr	ă' crĭs	ă' crĕ
Gen.	ă' crĭs	ă' crĭs	ă' crĭs
Dat.	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ
Acc.	ă' crĕm	ă' crĕm	ă' crĕ
Voc.	ă' cĕr	ă' crĭs	ă' crĕ
Abl.	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ	ă' crĭ
	Plural.		
Nom.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Gen.	ă' crĭ ŭm	ă' crĭ ŭm	ă' crĭ ŭm
Dat.	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs
Acc.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Voc.	ă' crĕs	ă' crĕs	ă' crĭ ă
Abl.	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs	ă' crĭ bŭs

Examples for Practice :

terrestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>terrestrial</i>	silvestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>woody</i>
pălustĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>marshy</i>	campestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>level</i>
cĕlĕbĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>famous</i>	ĕquestĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>equestrian</i>
ălăcĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>lively</i>	sălŭbĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>healthy</i>
pŭtĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>putrid</i>	vŭlŭcĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ, <i>winged</i>

139. Adjectives of two terminations end in **īs, ě, and ōr, ůs** (Comparatives), and are thus declined:

		tristīs, tristě, sad			
		Singular.		Plural.	
	m. & f.	n.		m. & f.	n.
Nom.	tri' stīs	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Gen.	tri' stīs	tri' stīs		tri' stī ům	tri' stī ům
Dat.	tri' stī	tri' stī		tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs
Acc.	tri' stēm	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Voc.	tri' stīs	tri' stě		tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Abl.	tri' stī	tri' stī		tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs

Examples for Practice:

süāvīs, -ě, <i>pleasant</i>	instābilīs, -ě, <i>unsteady</i>	omnīs, -ě, <i>all, every</i>
dulcīs, -ě, <i>sweet</i>	hūmilīs, -ě, <i>low</i>	sīmīlīs, -ě, <i>like</i>
brēvīs, -ě, <i>short</i>	mortālīs, -ě, <i>mortal</i>	fācilīs, -ě, <i>easy</i>

[55. 56.]

dūrīōr, dūrīūs, *harder*

		Singular.		Plural.	
	m. & f.	n.		m. & f.	n.
Nom.	dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ůs		dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Gen.	dū rī ō' rīs	dū rī ō' rīs		dū rī ō' rūm	dū rī ō' rūm
Dat.	dū rī ō' rī	dū rī ō' rī		dū rī ō' rī būs	dū rī ō' rī būs
Acc.	dū rī ō' rēm	dū' rī ůs		dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Voc.	dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ůs		dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Abl.	dū rī ō' rě	dū rī ō' rě		dū rī ō' rī būs	dū rī ō' rī būs

Examples for Practice:

excelsīōr, -ūs, <i>higher</i>	ācrīōr, -ūs, <i>sharper</i>	mĕlīōr, -ūs, <i>better</i>
libĕrīōr, -ūs, <i>freer</i>	lēvīōr, -ūs, <i>lighter</i>	cārīōr, -ūs, <i>dearer</i>
pulchrīōr, -ūs, <i>finer</i>	fĕlicīōr, -ūs, <i>happier</i>	hĕbĕtīōr, -ūs, <i>duller</i>

[73. 74.]

140. As a rule, adjectives in **ēr, īs, ě, and ūs, ě** form their ablative singular in **ī**, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter in **īā**, and the genitive plural in **īům**; *cĕlĕr*, *swift*, has *cĕlĕrům*.

141. Adjectives of one termination have the same forms in all genders, except that in the accusative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine. They end in **l, r, s, x**, and are declined like substantives of the Third Declension.

fēlix, *happy, fortunate*

prūdēns, *prudent, sensible*

Singular.

m. & f.

n.

m. & f.

n.

Nom. fē' lix

fē' lix

prū' dens

prū' dens

Gen. fē lī' cīs

prū den' tīs

Dat. fē lī' cī

prū den' tī

Acc. fē lī' cēm

fē' lix

prū den' tēm

prū' dens

Voc. fē' lix

prū' dens

Abl. fē lī' cī

prū den' tī

Plural.

Nom. fē lī' cēs

fē lī' cī ā

prū den' tēs

prū den' tī ā

Gen. fē lī' cī ūm

prū den' tī ūm

Dat. fē lī' cī būs

prū den' tī būs

Acc. fē lī' cēs

fē lī' cī ā

prū den' tēs

prū den' tī ā

Voc. fē lī' cēs

fē lī' cī ā

prū den' tēs

prū den' tī ā

Abl. fē lī' cī būs

prū den' tī būs

Examples for Practice:

mendax, -ācīs, *lying*

sāpiēns, -tīs, *wise*

lōquax, -ācīs, *loquacious*

pātēns, -tīs, *open*

rāpax, -ācīs, *rapacious*

diligēns, -tīs, *diligent*

vēlox, -ōcīs, *swift*

clēmēns, -tīs, *mild*

[57. 58.]

142. As a rule, adjectives of one termination have **ī** in the ablative singular, but to this there are many exceptions. The neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural ends in **īā**, and the genitive in **īūm** (see **144—147**).

Remarks on Certain Cases.

Accusative Singular.

143. The **Accusative** in **īm** is found *exclusively*:

1. in Greek nouns in **īs**, as: bāsīs, *a base*, bāsīm;

2. in names of rivers and towns in **īs**, as: Tībērīs, *the Tiber*, Tībērīm; Nēāpōlīs, *Naples*, Nēāpōlīm;

3. in āmussīs, *a mason's rule*, āmussīm; rāvīs, *hoarseness*, rāvīm; sītīs, *thirst*, sītīm; tussīs, *a cough*, tussīm; vīs, *force*, vīm; and is regarded as *preferable*:

4. in fēbrīs, *a fever*, fēbrīm (fēbrēm); pelvīs, *a basin*, pelvīm (pelvēm); puppīs, *the stern*, puppīm (puppēm); restīs, *a rope*, restīm (restēm); turrīs, *a tower*, turrīm (turrēm); sēcūrīs, *an axe*, sēcūrīm (sēcūrēm).

Ablative Singular.

144. The **Ablative** in **ī** is found *exclusively*:

1. in all nouns which have or *may* have the accusative in **īm**, and in *clāvīs*, a *key*, **Abl.** *clāvī*; *nāvīs*, a *ship*, **Abl.** *nāvī*; *imbēr*, a *shower*, **Abl.** *imbrī*; *occipūt*, the *back part of the head*, **Abl.** *occipītī*;

2. in neuter nouns in **ě**, and those in **āl** and **ār** which have **ā** long in the genitive; also in **pār**, **pāris**, a *pair*, **Abl.** *pārī*;

3. in those Substantives in **īs** and **ěr** which are originally Adjectives, as: *fāmīliārīs*, a *friend*, **Abl.** *fāmīliārī*; also in the names of the months, as: *Septembēr*, *September*, **Abl.** *Septembrī*; but *jūvēnīs*, a *youth*, *aedīlīs*, an *aedile*, have ablative in **ě**, *jūvēně*, *aedīlē*.

4. In all Adjectives of the Third Declension, including Participial Adjectives in **ans** and **ens**; but to this, there are many exceptions:

paupěr, <i>poor</i>	Abl. paupěrě	caelebs, <i>single</i>	Abl. caelībě
dēsēs, <i>indolent</i>	“ dēsīdě	dīvēs, <i>rich</i>	“ dīvītě
pūbēr, <i>adult</i>	“ pūběrě	větūs, <i>old</i>	“ větěrě
sospēs, <i>safe</i>	“ sospītě	princeps, <i>first</i>	“ princīpě
compōs, <i>possessed of</i>	“ compōtě	particeps, <i>sharing</i>	“ partīcipě
	superstēs, <i>surviving</i>	Abl. superstītě	

All Comparatives, as: *altīōr*, *higher*, **Abl.** *altīōrě*;

Participles, when used as such or as Substantives, as: *sāpiens*, a *wise man*, **Abl.** *sāpiētě*; but *vīr sāpiens* has ablative *vīrō sāpiētī*;

Adjectives used as proper names, as: *Jūvēnālīs*, *Juvenal*, **Abl.** *Jūvēnālě*.

[59. 60.]

Nominative Plural.

145. Such Neuters of Nouns, Adjectives and Participles as have **ī** in the Ablative singular form their **Nominative Plural** in **īā** instead of **ā**.

Of Adjectives having **ě** in the ablative singular, only *větūs* has a neuter of the plural, *větěrā*. Of Comparatives, *complūrēs*, *several*, has *complūrā* and *complūrīā*.

Genitive Plural.

146. The **Genitive Plural** in **īūm** is found:

1. in all nouns having **ī** in the ablative singular (see above **144.**);

2. in all nouns in **ēr**, **īs**, and **ēs** having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*), and in all pure Latin words in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant, except the following which retain **ūm** in the genitive plural:

	Gen. Plural.		Gen. Plural.
vātēs, <i>a prophet</i>	vātūm	pātēr, <i>a father</i>	pātrūm
strūēs, <i>a heap</i>	strāūm	mātēr, <i>a mother</i>	mātrūm
sēdēs, <i>a seat</i>	sēdūm	frātēr, <i>a brother</i>	frātrūm
cānīs, <i>a dog</i>	cānūm	accīpītēr, <i>a hawk</i>	accīpītrūm
pānīs, <i>bread</i>	pānūm	ādeps, <i>fat</i>	ādīpūm
jūvēnīs, <i>a youth</i>	jūvēnūm	(ops), <i>help</i>	ōpūm
vōlūcrīs, <i>a bird</i>	vōlūcrūm	hīems, <i>winter</i>	hīēmūm

3. in the following words:

mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīūm	nox, <i>the night</i>	noctīūm
mūs, <i>a mouse</i>	mūrīūm	jūs, <i>right</i>	jūrīūm
glīs, <i>a dormouse</i>	glīrīūm	nix, <i>snow</i>	nīvīūm
līs, <i>a quarrel</i>	lītīūm	ōs, <i>a bone</i>	ossīūm
vīs, <i>force</i>	vīrīūm	ās, <i>an as (Roman coin)</i>	assīūm
cārō, <i>flesh</i>	carnīūm	(faux), <i>the throat</i>	faucīūm

4. in names of nations in **ās**, **-ātīs**; **īs**, **-ītīs**, as:

Arpīnās, <i>an Arpinian</i>	Gen. Plural.	Arpīnātīūm
Samnīs, <i>a Samnite</i>	“ “	Samnītīūm

and likewise in:

pēnātēs, <i>penates</i>	“ “	pēnātīūm
optīmātēs, <i>the aristocrats</i>	“ “	optīmātīūm
nostrās, <i>our countryman</i>	“ “	nostrātīūm
vestrās, <i>your countryman</i>	“ “	vestrātīūm

147. Of Adjectives having **ī** in the ablative singular, the following have **ūm** in the Genitive plural:

ūbēr, -īs , <i>fertile</i>	Abl. Sing.	ūbērī	Gen. Pl.	ūbērūm
mēmōr, -īs , <i>mindful</i>	“	mēmōrī	“	mēmōrūm
immēmōr, -īs , <i>unmindful</i>	“	immēmōrī	“	immēmōrūm
cīcūr, -īs , <i>tame</i>	“	cīcūrī	“	cīcūrūm
vīgīl, -īs , <i>watchful</i>	“	vīgīlī	“	vīgīlūm

[103. 104.]

Accusative Plural.

148. The Accusative Plural in **īs** occurs side by side with **ēs** in all nouns which have **īūm** in the genitive plural, as: navēs and nāvīs; and seems preferable in nouns in **ēr** which have **ī** in the ablative, as: imbrīs and imbrēs.

Dative and Ablative Plural.

149. In the **Dative** and **Ablative Plural**, Neuters in **mǎ** have commonly **īs** instead of **ībūs**; thus: *põemātīs*, instead of *põemātībūs*. See **83**.

Greek Nouns.

150. Most Greek Nouns of the **Third Declension** are entirely regular; a few, however, retain certain peculiarities of the Greek.

151. Proper Names in *ης* of the first Greek Declension often follow the third in Latin, as: *Xerxēs*, **-īs**.

152. Several feminine nouns in **ō** have **Genitive sing.** **ūs**, all the other cases ending in **ō**, as: *ēchō*, **Gen.** *ēchūs*, **Dat.** *ēchō*, *an echo*.

153. Many Greek nouns have **Genitive ōs**, as: *lampās*, *lampādōs*, *a lamp* — and **Accusative ā**, as: *Sālāmīs*, **Acc.** *Sālāmīnā*, *Salamis*; *āēr*, **Acc.** *āērā*, *air*; *aethēr*, **Acc.** *aethērā*, *ether*.

154. The **Vocative sing.** drops **s** in nouns in **ēus**, **īs**, **ys**, and **ās** (**antīs**), as: *Daphnīs*, **Voc.** *Daphnī*, *Daphnis*; *Orphēus*, **Voc.** *Orphēu*, *Orpheus*; *Atlās*, **Voc.** *Atlā*, *Atlas*.

155. A few Neuters in **ōs**, as: *mēlōs*, *a song*; *pēlāgōs*, *the sea*, have **ē** in the plural: *mēlē*, *pēlāgē*.

156. The ending **ōn** occurs in the **Genitive plur.** of a few titles of books, as: *Mētāmorphōsēs*, **-ēōn**.

157. Many Greek nouns have **Plural Nom.** **ēs**, as: *lampās*, *lampādēs* — and **Accus. ās**, as: *Ārabs*, *Ārābās*, *Arabian*; *Cyclops*, *Cyclōpās*, *a Cyclops*.

Gender in Third Declension.

Nouns whose gender is determined by their meaning (see **40-42**) are not included in the following rules.

I. MASCULINES.

158. Nouns of the **Third Declension** in **ō**, **ōr**, **ōs**, **ēr**, and **ēs** or **ēs** increasing in the **Genitive**:

hīc *sermō*, *this speech*

hīc *aggēr*, *this mound*

hīc *cōlōr*, *this color*

hīc *mōs*, *this custom*

hīc *pēs*, *this foot* (**gen.** *pēdis*)

hīc *caespēs*, *this sod* (**gen.** *caespītis*)

159.

EXCEPTIONS in **ō**.

Feminine:

1. Nouns in **dō** and **gō**, as: *hīrundō*, a swallow; *ōrīgō*, origin; &c. Only the following in **dō** and **gō** are **Masculine**:

<i>ordō</i> , - īnīs , order	<i>līgō</i> , - ōnīs , a mattock
<i>cardō</i> , - īnīs , the hinge (of a door)	<i>harpāgō</i> , - ōnīs , a grapple-hook
	<i>margō</i> , - īnīs , a margin

2. *Abstract nouns in īō*, as: *ōpīnīō*, -**ōnīs**, an opinion; *actīō*, -**ōnīs**, a deed; *ōrātiō*, -**ōnīs**, speech; *vēnātiō*, -**ōnīs**, hunting; &c. The following (*concrete*) nouns in **īō** are **Masculine**:

<i>septentriō</i> , - ōnīs , the north	<i>pāpīlīō</i> , - ōnīs , a butterfly
<i>scorpiō</i> , - ōnīs , a scorpion	<i>pūgiō</i> , - ōnīs , a dagger
<i>vespertīlīō</i> , - ōnīs , a bat	<i>scīpiō</i> , - ōnīs , a staff
<i>tītīō</i> , - ōnīs , a firebrand	<i>ūnīō</i> , - ōnīs , a pearl

3. *cārō*, *carnīs*, flesh *ēchō*, -**ūs**, an echo

160.

EXCEPTIONS in **ōr**.

Neuter.

<i>marmōr</i> , <i>marmōrīs</i> , marble	<i>ādōr</i> , <i>ādōrīs</i> , spelt
<i>aequōr</i> , <i>aequōrīs</i> , the sea	<i>cōr</i> , <i>cordīs</i> , the heart

Feminine.

arbōr, *arbōrīs*, a tree

161.

EXCEPTIONS in **ōs**, **ōs**.

Feminine.

<i>cōs</i> , <i>cōtīs</i> , a whetstone	<i>dōs</i> , <i>dōtīs</i> , a dowry
---	-------------------------------------

Neuter.

<i>ōs</i> , <i>ōrīs</i> , the mouth	<i>ōs</i> , <i>ossīs</i> , a bone
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

162.

EXCEPTIONS in **ēr**, **ēr**.

Neuter.

<i>cādāvēr</i> , - īs , a corpse	<i>spīnthēr</i> , - īs , a bracelet
<i>pīpēr</i> , - īs , pepper	<i>tūbēr</i> , - īs , a hump
<i>cīcēr</i> , - īs , a chick-pea	<i>ūbēr</i> , - īs , a teat
<i>ītēr</i> , <i>ītīnērīs</i> , a journey	<i>vēr</i> , - īs , spring
<i>pāpāvēr</i> , - īs , the poppy	(<i>verbēr</i> , - īs), a blow

Common.

lintēr, -**rīs**, a boat

163. EXCEPTIONS in *ēs*, *ēs imparisyllabic*.

Neuter.

aes, *aerīs*, *copper*

Feminine.

mergēs, *-ītīs*, *a sheaf*

sēgēs, *-ētīs*, *a crop*

tēgēs, *-ētīs*, *a covering*

mercēs, *-ēdīs*, *a reward*

quīēs, *-ētīs*

rēquīēs, *-ētīs* } *rest*

inquīēs, *-ētīs*, *restlessness*

compēs, *-ēdīs*, *a fetter*

Common.

ālēs, *-ītīs*, *a bird*

quādrūpēs, *-ēdīs*, *a quadruped*

II. FEMININES.

164. Nouns of the Third Declension in *ās*, *īs*, *aus*, *x*, *ēs* not increasing in the Genitive, and in *s* preceded by a consonant:

haec tempestās, *this storm*

haec rādex, *this root*

haec aurīs, *this ear*

haec nūbēs, *this cloud*

haec laus, *this praise*

haec hīems, *this winter*.

165. EXCEPTIONS in *ās*, *ās*.

Masculine.

ās, *assīs*, *an as (coin)*

ēlēphās, *-antīs*, *an elephant*

vās, *vādīs*, *a surety*

ādāmās, *-antīs*, *a diamond*

Neuter.

vās, *vāsīs*, *a vessel*; plur. *vāsā*, *-ōrūm* (2d decl.)

Indeclinable.

fās, *right*

nēfās, *wrong*

166. EXCEPTIONS in *īs*, *īs*.

Masculine.

1. All nouns in *nīs*, as: *ignīs*, *fire*; *amnīs*, *a river*; &c.

2. Also the following:

axīs, *-*, *an axis*

pulvīs, *-ērīs*, *dust*

collīs, *-*, *a hill*

lāpīs, *-īdīs*, *a stone*

orbīs, *-*, *a circle*

vermīs, *-*, *a worm*

angūīs, *-*, *a serpent*

mensīs, *-*, *a month*

fascīs, *-*, *a bundle*

piscīs, *-*, *a fish*

postīs, *-*, *a post*

ungūīs, *-*, *a claw*

torquīs, *-*, *a collar*

fustīs, *-*, *a club*

sangūīs, *-īnīs*, *blood*

ensīs, *-*, *a sword*

167.

EXCEPTIONS in **x**.

Masculine.

1. Greek nouns in **ax**, as: *thōrax, a breast-plate*;
2. Most nouns in **ex**, **-īcīs**, as: *cortex, -īcīs, bark*; *cūlex, -īcīs, a gnat*; &c. Only the following in **ex** are **Feminine**:

<i>lex, lēgīs, a law</i>	<i>faex, faecīs, lees</i>
<i>nex, nēcīs, a murder</i>	<i>sūpellex, -ectīlīs, furniture</i>

(*prex*), *prēcēs, prayers*
3. Two in **ix**:

<i>cālix, -īcīs, a cup</i>	<i>fornix, -īcīs, an arch</i>
----------------------------	-------------------------------

168. EXCEPTIONS in **s** preceded by a consonant.

Masculine.

1.

<i>fons, -tīs, a spring</i>	<i>pons, -tīs, a bridge</i>
<i>mons, -tīs, a mountain</i>	<i>ādeps, -īpīs, fat</i>
	<i>dens, -tīs, a tooth</i>
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally Adjectives with a masculine noun understood, as:

<i>ōriens, -tīs (sōl), east</i>	<i>rūdens, -tīs (fūnīs), a cable</i>
<i>occidens, -tīs (sōl), west</i>	<i>torrens, -tīs (flūviūs), a torrent</i>

III. NEUTERS.

169. Nouns of the Third Declension in

ā, ē, ī, c, l, n, t, ŷ, ār, ūr, ūs:

<i>hōc aenigmā, this riddle</i>	<i>hōc nōmēn, this name</i>
<i>hōc mārē, this sea</i>	<i>hōc cāpūt, this head</i>
<i>hōc lāc, this milk</i>	<i>hōc calcār, this spur</i>
<i>hōc ānimāl, this animal</i>	<i>hōc fulgūr, this lightning</i>
<i>hōc tempūs, this time.</i>	

170.

EXCEPTIONS.

Masculine.

<i>sāl, sālīs, salt</i>	<i>lēpūs, -ōrīs, a hare</i>
<i>sōl, sōlīs, the sun</i>	<i>mūs, mūrīs, a mouse</i>
<i>turtūr, -īs, a turtle-dove</i>	<i>rēn, rēnīs, kidney</i>
<i>furfūr, -īs, bran</i>	<i>liēn, liēnīs, { spleen</i>
<i>vultūr, -īs, a vulture</i>	<i>splēn, splēnīs }</i>
<i>sālār, -īs, trout</i>	<i>pectēn, -īnīs, a comb</i>

Feminine.

jüventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*
 sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*
 virtūs, -ūtīs, *virtue*
 servītūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*
 sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety*
 sūs, sūīs, *a swine*

incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*
 pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*
 pęcūs, -ūdīs, *a head of cattle*
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *the earth*
 grūs, grūīs, *a crane*

Fourth Declension.

171. Latin nouns whose genitive ends in ūs, are of the **Fourth Declension.**

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fourth Declension* ends in ū. Masculine and Feminine nouns end in the Nominative in ūs; Neuters in ū.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	fruc' tūs, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>	
Gen.	fruc' tūs, <i>of fruit</i>	fruc' tū ūm, <i>of fruits</i>	
Dat.	fruc' tū ī, <i>to fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>to fruits</i>	
Acc.	fruc' tūm, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>	
Voc.	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruits</i>	
Abl.	fruc' tū, <i>with fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>with fruits</i>	
Nom.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>	
Gen.	cor' nūs, <i>of a horn</i>	cor' nū ūm, <i>of horns</i>	
Dat.	cor' nū (ūī), <i>to a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>to horns</i>	
Acc.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>	
Voc.	cor' nū, <i>O horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>O horns</i>	
Abl.	cor' nū, <i>with a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>with horns</i>	

Examples for Practice:

sensūs, -ūs, <i>sense</i>	olfactūs, -ūs, <i>smell</i>	ōbitūs, -ūs, <i>death</i>
visūs, -ūs, <i>sight</i>	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>motion</i>	nūtūs, -ūs, <i>a nod</i>
gustūs, -ūs, <i>taste</i>	fluctūs, -ūs, <i>a flood</i>	gělū, -ūs, (<i>icy</i>) <i>cold</i>
tactūs, -ūs, <i>touch</i>	cantūs, -ūs, <i>a song</i>	gēnū, -ūs, <i>the knee</i>

172. The following have the **Dative** and **Ablative** plural in ūbūs:

ācūs, ācūbūs, <i>a needle</i>	artūs, artūbūs, <i>a joint</i>
arcūs, arcūbūs, <i>a bow</i>	partūs, partūbūs, <i>birth</i>
lācūs, lācūbūs, <i>a lake</i>	portūs, portūbūs, <i>a harbor</i>
pęcū, pęcūbūs, <i>cattle</i>	trībūs, trībūbūs, <i>a tribe</i>
quercūs, quercūbūs, <i>an oak</i>	vērū, vērūbūs, <i>a spit</i>
spęcūs, spęcūbūs, <i>a cave</i>	

173. *dómūs, a house, is declined thus:*

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	dō' mūs, <i>a house</i>		dō' mūs, <i>houses</i>
Gen.	{ dō' mūs, <i>of a house</i>		dō' mū ūm, } <i>of houses</i> dō mō' rūm, }
	{ dō' mī, <i>at home</i>		
Dat.	dō' mū ī, <i>to a house</i>		dō' mī būs, <i>to houses</i>
Acc.	dō' mūm, <i>a house, home</i>		dō' mūs & dō' mōs, <i>houses</i>
Voc.	dō' mūs, <i>O house</i>		dō' mūs, <i>O houses</i>
Abl.	dō' mō, <i>with a house, from home</i>		dō' mī būs, <i>with houses</i>

Rule of Gender.

174. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in ūs are masculine. The few words in ū are all neuter.

175.

EXCEPTIONS.

Feminine.

ācūs, -ūs, <i>a needle</i>	mānūs, -ūs, <i>the hand</i>
dōmūs, -ūs, <i>a house</i>	porticūs, -ūs, <i>a gallery</i>
Idūs, -ūm (pl.), <i>the Ides</i>	tribūs, -ūs, <i>a tribe</i>

[67. 68. 105. 106.]

Fifth Declension.

176. Nouns which have ēī or ěī in the genitive from ēs in the nominative are of the **Fifth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fifth Declension* ends in e, which appears in all the cases.

Singular.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>a day</i>	rēs, <i>a thing</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' ī, <i>of a day</i>	rē' ī, <i>of a thing</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' ī, <i>to a day</i>	rē' ī, <i>to a thing</i>
Acc.	dī' ěm, <i>a day</i>	rěm, <i>a thing</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O day</i>	rēs, <i>O thing</i>
Abl.	dī' ē, <i>with a day</i>	rē, <i>with a thing</i>

Plural.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' rūm, <i>of days</i>	rē' rūm, <i>of things</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' būs, <i>to days</i>	rē' būs, <i>to things</i>
Acc.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O days</i>	rēs, <i>O things</i>
Abl.	dī' ē' būs, <i>with days</i>	rē' būs, <i>with things</i>

Examples for Practice :

fāciēs, -ēī, <i>the face</i>	sēriēs, -ēī, <i>a series</i>
effigiēs, -ēī, <i>a likeness</i>	sūperficiēs, -ēī, <i>a surface</i>
spēs, -ēī, <i>hope</i>	fīdēs, -ēī, <i>faith</i>
glāciēs, -ēī, <i>ice</i>	prōgēniēs, -ēī, <i>offspring</i>

177. Of all the nouns of the Fifth Declension only two are complete in the plural, viz.: dīēs and rēs.

178. The e of ei in the genitive and dative is long when preceded by a vowel, as: dī-ē-ī, and short when preceded by a consonant, as: fī-dē-ī.

Rule of Gender.

179. All Nouns of this declension are feminine, except mērīdīēs, *mid-day*, and the plural of dīēs, *a day*, which are always masculine.

180. In the singular, dīēs is usually masculine, but sometimes feminine, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, or time in general, as: constitūtā diē, *on the appointed day*.

[69. 70. 105. 106.]

Irregular Nouns.

181. The Latin has only a few **Indeclinable Nouns**; viz.:

fās, <i>right</i>	mānē, <i>morning</i>
nēfās, <i>wrong</i>	nīhīl, <i>nothing</i>
instār, <i>an image, kind</i>	pondō, (lit. <i>in weight</i>), <i>pounds</i>
nēcessē, <i>necessary</i>	ōpūs, <i>need</i>

besides the names of the Latin and Greek letters, as: A, D, alphā, deltā, and some foreign words, as: sīnāpī, *mustard*.

182. Some nouns are **Defective in Case**, i. e., they want one or more cases.

The commonest of them are:

(dīcīō), *sway*, Nom. sing. wanting.

fors, *chance*, only in Nom. & Abl. sing. fortē, *by chance*.

(frux), *fruit*, Nom. sing. wanting.

grātēs, *thanks*, only in Nom. & Acc. plur.

impētūs, *attack*, only in Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing. & Nom. & Acc. plur.

infītīās, *denial*, only in Acc. with īrē, as: infītīās ire, *to deny*.

nēmō, *no one*, only in **Dat. & Acc.** — **Gen. & Abl.** supplied by nulliūs, nullō.

(ops), *aid*, **Nom. sing.** wanting; plur. ōpēs, *wealth*, entire.

(prex), *prayer*, only in **Dat. & Abl. sing.** přeci, přecē; — plur. přecēs, *prayers*, entire.

(sordēs), *filth*, only **Acc. & Abl. sing.** sordēm, sordē; plural entire.

(spons), *will*, only in **Abl. sing.** spontē, as: mēā spontē, *of my own accord*.

vēnūm, *sale*, only in **Acc. sing.** as: vēnūm dārē, *to put up for sale*.

(verbēr), *whip*, only in **Abl. sing.** verbērē; plur. verbērā, *whipping*.

(vix or vīcīs), *change*, only in **Gen., Acc. & Abl. sing.** (vīcīs, vīcēm, vīcē). In the plural, only the **Genitive** is wanting.

vīs, *force*, only in **Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing.** — **Plural** entire.

183. Of many verbal nouns in **sūs** or **tūs** of the *Fourth Declension*, only the **Ablative singular** is used; as: jussū mēō, *by my command*; concessū, impulsū, permissū, rōgātū mēō.

184. The **Genitive Plural** of many monosyllabic words does not occur; such are:

cōs, cōr, fāx, lūx, ōs, pāx, rōs, sāl, sōl, tūs, vēr.

185. Monosyllabic neuters, such as: aes, jūs, rūs, are found only in the **Nominative** and **Accusative Plural**: aerā, jūrā, rurā.

186. **Defective in Number** are those which want either the singular or the plural.

187. Nouns used in the **Singular** only: **Singularia tantum**. Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural, as: justitiā, *justice*; fāmēs, *hunger*; aurūm, *gold*. There are also other nouns which lack the plural, without any obvious reason, as: spēciměn, *a sample*; vespēr, *evening*; mēridiēs, *mid-day*; vēr, *spring*.

188. Nouns used in the **Plural** only: **Pluralia tantum**. The commonest of them are:

First Declension.

dēlicīae, -ārūm, *delight*

dīvitiāe, -ārūm, *riches*

exsēquīae, -ārūm, *a funeral*

fēriāe, -ārūm, *holidays*

indūtīae, -ārūm, *a truce*

insīdiāe, -ārūm, *an ambush*

nundīnae, -ārūm, *market-day*

nuptīae, -ārūm, *a wedding*

tēnēbrae, -ārūm, *darkness*

Athēnae, -ārūm, *Athens*

Second Declension.

armā, -ōrūm, <i>arms, weapons</i>	libērī, -ōrūm, <i>children</i>
fastī, -ōrūm, <i>an almanac</i>	postērī, -ōrūm, <i>descendants</i>
gēmīnī, -ōrūm, <i>twins</i>	Delphī, -ōrūm, <i>Delphi</i>

Third Declension.

Alpēs, -īŭm, <i>the Alps</i>	faucēs, -īŭm, <i>the throat</i>
mājōrēs, -ūm, <i>ancestors</i>	mānēs, -īŭm, <i>the shades of the dead</i>

189. Some words have, besides the *general* meaning for both numbers, a *special* meaning for the **Plural**.

Singular.

aedēs, -īs, <i>a temple</i>
āquā, -ae, <i>water</i>
auxiliūm, -ī, <i>help</i>
castrūm, -ī, <i>a fort</i>
cōpiā, -ae, <i>abundance</i>
finīs, -, <i>an end, limit</i>
fortūnā, -ae, <i>fortune</i>
grātiā, -ae, <i>favor</i>
littērā, -ae, <i>a letter (of the alphabet)</i>
impēdimentūm, -ī, <i>a hindrance</i>
ōpērā, -ae, <i>a task; service</i>
(ops) ōpis, <i>help; power</i>
pars, -tis, <i>a part</i>
rostrūm, -ī, <i>a beak</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>

Plural.

aedēs, -īŭm, <i>a house</i>
āquae, -ārūm, <i>medicinal springs</i>
auxiliā, -ōrūm, <i>auxiliary troops</i>
castrā, -ōrūm, <i>a camp</i>
cōpiae, -ārūm, <i>troops</i>
finēs, -īŭm, <i>borders; a territory</i>
fortūnae, -ārūm, <i>wealth</i>
grātiāe, -ārūm, <i>favours; thanks</i>
littērae, -ārūm, <i>an epistle; learning; literature</i>
impēdimentā, -ōrūm, <i>baggage</i>
ōpērae, -ārūm, <i>workmen</i>
ōpēs, -ūm, <i>wealth</i>
partēs, -īŭm, <i>a part (on the stage); a party</i>
rostrā, -ōrūm, <i>a speaker's platform</i>
sālēs, -īŭm, <i>witty sayings</i>

190. Some nouns have two or more forms of Declension (**Heteroclites**). Such are:

laurūs, -ī	laurūs, -ūs, <i>a laurel-tree</i>
ēventūs, -ūs	ēventūm, -ī, <i>an event</i>
luxūriā, -ae	luxūriēs, -ēī, <i>luxury</i>
mātēriā, -ae	mātēriēs, -ēī, <i>matter</i>
segnitiā, -ae	segnitiēs, -ēī, <i>slowness</i>
ēlēphantūs, -ī	ēlēphās, -antīs, <i>an elephant</i>
plēbs, -īs	plēbēs, -ēī, <i>the common people</i>

vās, vāsīs, *a vessel, etc. etc.*

191. The following have the plural in a gender different from that of the singular (**Heterogeneous Nouns**):

Singular.	Plural.
jōcūs, -ī, <i>a joke, jest</i>	jōcī, -ōrūm, & jōcā, -ōrūm, <i>jokes</i>
lōcūs, -ī, <i>a place</i>	{ lōcī, -ōrūm, <i>passages (in books)</i>
	{ lōcā, -ōrūm, <i>places</i>
margārītā, -ae, <i>a pearl</i>	{ margārītae, -ārūm } <i>pearls</i>
	{ margārītā, -ōrūm }
caelūm, -ī, <i>heaven</i>	caelī, -ōrūm, <i>heavens</i>
ēpūlūm, -ī, <i>a banquet</i>	ēpūlae, -ārūm, <i>a meal</i>
balnēūm, -ī, <i>a bath</i>	balnēae, -ārūm, <i>baths, a bathhouse</i>
frēnūm, -ī, <i>a bridle</i>	frēnī, -ōrūm, & frēnā, -ōrūm, <i>a bit</i>

[107. 108.]

192. Sometimes a Noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected, as: jūsjūrandūm, *an oath*; rēspublīcā, *a commonwealth*.

Singular.

	<i>an oath</i>	<i>a commonwealth</i>
Nom.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Gen.	jū ris jū ran' dī	rē ī pu' blī cae
Dat.	jū rī jū ran' dō	rē ī pu' blī cae
Acc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēm pu' blī cām
Voc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Abl.	jū rē jū ran' dō	rē pu' blī cā

Plural.

Nom.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cae
Gen.	—	rē rūm pu blī cā' rūm
Dat.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs
Acc.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cās
Voc.	—	rēs pu' blī cae
Abl.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs

[109. 110.]

Proper Names.

193. The Romans regularly had **three names**, as: Marcus Tullīus Cicēro.

194. Marcus, the **praenōmen**, corresponded to our *Christian name*; Tullīus, the **nōmen**, was the *name* of the gens or clanship; the **cognōmen**, or *surname*, as Cicēro, indicated the particular family to which one belonged. Another species of *surname*, **agnōmen**,

was some significant epithet, as: Publius Cornelius Scipio **Africanus**, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

195. The three names, however, were not always used, commonly two. The Romans, when addressing a person, generally used the praenomen.

196. Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens with a feminine termination, as: Julia, *the daughter of Gaius Julius Caesar*.

197. The commonest praenomens are thus abbreviated:

A. = Aulus	L. = Lucius	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus
App. = Appius	M. = Marcus	S. (Sex.) = Sextus
C. (G.) = Gaius	M'. = Manius	Serv. = Servius
Cn. (Gn.) = Gnaeus	Mam. = Mamercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. (Num.) = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaeso	P. = Publius	Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.

ADJECTIVES.

198. Adjectives and Participles are in general declined like substantives. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, corresponding with their substantives in **Number, Gender, and Case**.

199. Some Adjectives denote each gender by a different termination, and consequently have **three terminations**, viz.:

Of the **First and Second Declensions**:

ūs, ā, ūm, as: bōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *good* (see 72.)

ēr, ā, ūm, as: { lībēr, -ā, -ūm, *free* (see 74.)
nīgēr, -rā, -rūm, *black* (see 76.)

ūr, ā, ūm, only sātūr, -ā, -ūm, *sated* (see 66.)

[21. 22. 25. 26.]

Of the **Third Declension**:

ēr, īs, ě, as: ācēr, -rīs, -rĕ, *sharp* (see 137.) [55. 56.]

200. Some Adjectives of the **Third Declension** have **two terminations** — one for the masculine and feminine, and the other for the neuter; they end in:

īs, ě, as: tristīs, -ě, *sad* (see 139.)

ōr, ūs, as: dūrīōr, -ūs, *harder* (see 139.)

[55. 56. 73. 74.]

201. Some Adjectives of the **Third Declension** have only one **termination** which is common to all genders; they end in:

- l**, as: vīgīl, *wakeful* (see **90**.)
r, as: paupēr, *poor* (see **95**.)
s, as: prūdēns, *sensible* (see **141**.)
x, as: fēlix, *happy* (see **141**.)

[57—60.]

Irregular Adjectives.

202. The following Adjectives with their Compounds have the **Genitive singular** in **īūs**, and the **Dative** in **ī** for all genders (see **77**.).

ālīūs, -ā, -ūđ, <i>another</i>	ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no</i>	ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>one</i>
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>alone</i>	altēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>whole</i>	ūtēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>which (of two)</i>
neutēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>	

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	sō' lūs	sō' lā	sō' lūm, <i>alone</i>
Gen.	sō lī' ūs	sō lī' ūs	sō lī' ūs
Dat.	sō' lī	sō' lī	sō' lī

Like ūtēr are declined its compounds, as ūterque, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē, *either*. Of altērūtēr, *the one or the other of the two*, either both parts are declined; altēr ūtēr, altērā ūtrā, altērūm ūtrūm; or only the latter: altērūtēr, altērūtrā, altērūtrūm.

[71. 72.]

203. Many Adjectives of one termination, especially such as end in **ēr**, **ēs**, **ōr**, **ōs**, **fex**, are not used in the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative plural** of the neuter gender, viz.:

dēgēnēr, -īs, <i>degenerate</i>	compōs, -ōtīs, <i>capable</i>
paupēr, -īs, <i>poor</i>	artīfex, -īcīs, <i>artificial</i>
ālēs, -ītīs, <i>winged</i>	īnops, īnōpīs, <i>needy</i>
bīpēs, -ēđīs, <i>two-footed</i>	rēdux, -ūcīs, <i>returning</i>
dīvēs, -ītīs, <i>rich</i>	sons, -tīs, <i>guilty</i>
sospēs, -ītīs, <i>safe</i>	supplex, -īcīs, <i>suppliant</i>
concolōr, -ōrīs, <i>of the same color</i>	trux, -ūcīs, <i>fierce</i>
mēmōr, -īs, <i>mindful</i>	vīgīl, -īs, <i>wakeful</i>

204. Of cētērī, -ae, -ā, *the rest*, the **Nominative singular masculine** is not used. singūlī, -ae, -ā, *one at a time*; paucī, -ae, -ā, *few*; and plērīquē, plēraequē, plērāquē are not used in the singular.

205. The following Adjectives are **Indeclinable**:

frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	tōt, <i>so many</i>
nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	quōt, <i>how many</i>

206. The Substantives: victōr, victrix, *conqueror*, and ultōr, ultrix, *avenger*, are also used as Adjectives — *victorious, revengeful* — and, in poetry, they admit even a neuter of the plural, as: armā victriciā, *victorious arms*.

Comparison.

207. Adjectives have three degrees of **Comparison**: the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**.

208. The **Positive Degree** is expressed by the adjective in its simple form, as: dūrūs, *hard*.

209. The **Comparative Degree** ends in **ōr** for the masculine and feminine, and in **ūs** for the neuter, and is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **īōr**, **īūs**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.
excelsūs, <i>high</i>	excelsī	excelsīōr, excelsīūs
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libērīōr, libērīūs
pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrī	pulchrīōr, pulchrīūs
ācēr, <i>sharp</i>	ācrīs	ācrīōr, ācrīūs
lēvīs, <i>light</i>	lēvīs	lēvīōr, lēvīūs
sāgax, <i>sagacious</i>	sāgācīs	sāgācīōr, sāgācīūs
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i>	prūdētīs	prūdētīōr, prūdētīūs

210. Comparatives are of the *Third Declension*; they are declined like dūrīōr, dūrīūs (see **139**.)

211. The **Superlative** is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **issīmūs**, **issimā**, **issimūm**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Superlative.
prētīōsūs, <i>valuable</i>	prētīōsī	prētīōsissīmūs
dīlīgēns, <i>diligent</i>	dīlīgētīs	dīlīgētissīmūs

212. Superlatives are declined like bōnūs, **-ā**, **-ūm** of the *First* and *Second Declensions*.

213. Adjectives in **ēr** add **rīmūs** to the positive to form the **Superlative**, as:

pulchēr, *beautiful*, pulcherrīmūs; ācēr, *sharp*, ācerrīmūs.

214. *vētūs, old*, has **Superlative** *vēterrīmūs*, and *mātūrūs, ripe, mātūrrissīmūs* and sometimes *mātūrrīmūs*.

215. Six adjectives in *īlis* form their **Superlative** by changing the ending *īs* into *īmūs*, as: *fācilīs, fācillīmūs*. These are:

<i>fācilīs, easy, fācillīmūs</i>	<i>difficilīs, difficult, difficillīmūs</i>
<i>sīmīlīs, like, sīmīllīmūs</i>	<i>dissīmīlīs, unlike, dissīmīllīmūs</i>
<i>grācilīs, slender, grācillīmūs</i>	<i>hūmilīs, low, hūmillīmūs</i>

216. Compound adjectives in *dicūs, ficūs, and vōlūs* form their **Comparative** and **Superlative** by changing *ūs* into *entīōr, entissīmūs*, as:

<i>bēnēvōlūs, benevolent</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentissīmūs</i>
<i>bēnēficūs, beneficent</i>	<i>bēnēficentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēficentissīmūs</i>
<i>magnificūs, magnificent</i>	<i>magnificentīōr</i>	<i>magnificentissīmūs</i>

217. In like manner are compared:

<i>ēgēnūs (ēgens), needy</i>	<i>ēgentīōr</i>	<i>ēgentissīmūs</i>
<i>prōvidūs, provident</i>	<i>prōvidentīōr</i>	<i>prōvidentissīmūs</i>

218. Adjectives in *ūs*, preceded by a vowel, are compared by means of *māgīs* and *maxīmē, more* and *most*:

<i>dūbīūs, doubtful</i>	<i>māgīs dūbīūs</i>	<i>maxīmē dūbīūs</i>
-------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

219. But adjectives in *quūs* are regular:

<i>antīquūs, old</i>	<i>antīquīōr</i>	<i>antīquīssīmūs</i>
----------------------	------------------	----------------------

[73—76.]

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

220. The following adjectives have different words for expressing the different degrees of comparison:

<i>bōnūs, good</i>	<i>mēlīōr, better</i>	<i>optīmūs, best</i>
<i>mālūs, bad</i>	<i>pējōr, worse</i>	<i>pessīmūs, worst</i>
<i>magnūs, great</i>	<i>mājōr, greater</i>	<i>maxīmūs, greatest</i>
<i>parvūs, little</i>	<i>mīnōr, less, lesser</i>	<i>mīnīmūs, least</i>
<i>multūs, much</i>	<i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrīmūs, most</i>

221. *plūs, more*, is thus declined:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plū' rēs</i>	<i>plū' rā (plū' rī ā)</i>
Gen.	<i>plū' rīs</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>
Dat. & Abl.	—	<i>plū' rī būs</i>	<i>plū' rī būs</i>

complūrēs, several, very many, is declined like *plūrēs*.

222. Mark the degrees of the two **Indeclinable** adjectives:

nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimūs
frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	frūgālīōr	frūgālissimūs

223. The following adjectives have two **Irregular Superlatives**:

extērūs, <i>outward</i>	extēriōr, <i>outer</i>	extrēmūs, (extimūs), <i>outmost</i>
infērūs, <i>below</i>	infēriōr, <i>lower</i>	infimūs, imūs, <i>lowest</i>
postērūs, <i>next</i>	postēriōr, { <i>latter</i>	postrēmūs, } <i>last</i>
	{ <i>later</i>	postūmūs, } <i>latest</i>
sūpērūs, <i>above</i>	sūpēriōr, <i>upper</i>	suprēmūs, summūs, <i>highest</i>

224. The following adjectives are **Defective** in their comparison:

I. **Positive wanting.**

Comparative.	Superlative.
cīteriōr, <i>more on this side</i>	cītimūs, <i>most on this side</i>
intēriōr, <i>inner</i>	intimūs, <i>innermost, intimate</i>
prīōr, <i>prior, former</i>	prīmūs, <i>foremost, first</i>
prōpiōr, <i>nearer</i>	proximūs, <i>nearest</i>
ultēriōr, <i>ulterior, further</i>	ultimūs, <i>furthest, last</i>
ōciōr, <i>swifter</i>	ōcissimūs, <i>swiftest</i>
pōtiōr, <i>preferable</i>	pōtissimūs, <i>most important</i>
dētēriōr, <i>worse</i>	dētērimūs, <i>worst</i>

II. **Comparative wanting.**

Positive.	Superlative.
dīversūs, <i>different</i>	dīversissimūs, <i>most different</i>
falsūs, <i>false</i>	falsissimūs, <i>falsest</i>
inclūtūs, <i>renowned</i>	inclūtissimūs, <i>most renowned</i>
invītūs, <i>unwilling</i>	invītissimūs, <i>most unwilling</i>
nōvūs, <i>new</i>	nōvissimūs, <i>latest, last</i>
sācēr, <i>sacred</i>	sācerrimūs, <i>most sacred</i>
vētūs, <i>old</i>	vētērimūs, <i>oldest</i>

III. **Superlative wanting.**

Positive.	Comparative.
jūvēnīs, <i>young</i>	jūniōr, <i>younger</i>
sēnex, <i>old</i>	sēniōr, <i>older</i>
ālācēr, <i>gay</i>	ālācriōr, <i>gayer</i>
longinquūs, <i>far</i>	longinquiōr, <i>farther</i>
propinquūs, <i>near</i>	propinquiōr, <i>nearer</i>
pōpūlārīs, <i>popular</i>	pōpūlāriōr, <i>more popular</i>
sālūtārīs, <i>salutary</i>	sālūtāriōr, <i>more salutary</i>

225. Some Adjectives are, by their meaning, excluded from comparison. Among these are certain words implying *matter, time, place, and person*, as: *ferrēūs, iron; hōdiernūs, of to-day; Rōmānūs, Roman; paternūs, paternal*; also words denoting the lowest or highest degree of a quality, as: *singulārīs, alone of its kind*, and Compounds with **pēr** and **prae**; but *praeclārūs, renowned*, and *pertīnax, very tenacious*, are found in the Comparative and Superlative.

226. Again, there are Adjectives which, from their form, or without any obvious reason, are incapable of comparison, viz.:

1. Adjectives in **ūs**, after a vowel (see **218.**).

2. Compound Adjectives containing a verb or a substantive, as: *particeps, sharing; inops, needy*; except Compounds of *dīcō, faciō, vōlō* (see **216.**), and Compounds of *ars, cōr, mens*, as: *īners, unskilled; concors, harmonious; āmens, senseless*; which are regularly compared.

3. Adjectives in **īcūs, īmūs, īnūs, īnūs, ōrūs, ūlūs**, as: *mōdīcūs, moderate; lēgītīmūs, lawful; dīūtīnūs, lasting; mātūtīnūs, early; cānōrūs, melodious; sēdūlūs, busy*.

4. Many Adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct headings:

cādūcūs, drooping
cīcūr, tame
curvūs, curved
fērūs, wild
gnārūs, skilful
impīgēr, active
lācēr, torn
lassūs, wearied
mūtīlūs, maimed

mērūs, mere
mēdīōcrīs, middling
mēmōr, mindful
mīrūs, wonderful
pār, equal
impār, unequal
rūdīs, rude
trūx, fierce
vāgūs, vagrant.

227. Participles, when used as Adjectives, are regularly compared, as: *doctūs, learned, doctīōr, doctissīmūs; abstīnens, abstinent, abstīnentīōr, abstīnentissīmūs*.

Adverbs formed from Adjectives are compared as follows (see **440**):

<i>cārūs, dear:</i>	<i>cārē,</i>	<i>cārūs,</i>	<i>cārissīmē</i>
<i>mīsēr, wretched:</i>	<i>mīsērē,</i>	<i>mīsērīūs,</i>	<i>mīserrīmē</i>
<i>lēvis, light:</i>	<i>lēvītēr,</i>	<i>lēvīūs,</i>	<i>lēvissīmē</i>

NUMERALS.

Numeral Adjectives.

228. Cardinal Numerals express number in its simplest form, and answer the question *quōt? how many?*

1	I	ūnūs, ūnā, ūnūm
2	II	dūō, dūae, dūō
3	III	trēs, triā
4	IV	quattūr
5	V	quinqūē
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septēm
8	VIII	octō
9	IX	nōvēm
10	X	dēcēm
11	XI	undēcīm
12	XII	dūōdēcīm
13	XIII	trēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt trēs)
14	XIV	quattūordēcīm (dēcēm ēt quattūr)
15	XV	quindēcīm (dēcēm ēt quinqūē)
16	XVI	sēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt sex)
17	XVII	septendēcīm (dēcēm ēt septēm)
18	XVIII	dūōdēvigintī (dēcēm ēt octō)
19	XIX	undēvigintī (dēcēm ēt nōvēm)
20	XX	vigintī
21	XXI	ūnūs ēt vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī ūnūs
22	XXII	dūō ēt vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī dūō
23	XXIII	trēs ēt vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī trēs
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XXXX <i>or</i> XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quinqūāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septūāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	LXXXX <i>or</i> XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centūm
101	CI	centūm ēt ūnūs <i>or</i> centūm ūnūs
200	CC	dūcentī, -ae, -ā
300	CCC	trēcentī, -ae, -ā
400	CCCC	quādringentī, -ae, -ā

500	D or IO	quingentī, -ae, -ă
600	DC or IOC	sescentī, -ae, -ă
700	DCC or IOCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ă
1000	M or CIO	millē
2000	MM or IIM	dŭō milliā
5000	IOO	quinquē milliā
6000	IOOM	sex milliā
10 000	CCIOO	dēcēm milliā
50 000	IOOO	quinguāgintā milliā
100 000	CCCIOOO	centŭm milliā
1 000 000	CCCCIOOOO	dēcīēs centēnā milliā or dēcīēs centŭm

229. The three first are declined; the rest, as far as one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds, as: dŭcentī, *ae, ā, trēcentī, ae, ā, etc.*, are declined like the plural of bōnŭs.

ŭnŭs, ŭnā, ŭnŭm, *one*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. ŭ' nŭs	ŭ' nā	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nae	ŭ' nā
G. ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nō' rūm	ŭ nā' rūm	ŭ nō' rūm
D. ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs
A. ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nām	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nōs	ŭ' nās	ŭ' nā
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
A. ŭ' nō	ŭ' nā	ŭ' nō	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs

The plural of ŭnŭs occurs only with such nouns as have no singular, as: ŭnā castrā, *one camp*; ŭnae nuptīae, *one marriage*.

dŭō, dŭae, dŭō, *two*

trēs, triā, *three*

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. dŭ' ō	dŭ' ae	dŭ' ō	trēs	tri' ā
G. dŭ ō' rūm	dŭ ā' rūm	dŭ ō' rūm	tri' ūm	tri' ūm
D. dŭ ō' bŭs	dŭ ā' bŭs	dŭ ō' bŭs	tri' bŭs	tri' bŭs
A. dŭ' ōs, dŭ' ō	dŭ' ās	dŭ' ō	trēs	tri' ā
V. —	—	—	—	—
A. dŭ ō' bŭs	dŭ ā' bŭs	dŭ ō' bŭs	tri' bŭs	tri' bŭs

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both*, is declined like dŭō.

230. In the singular millē is an **Indeclinable Adjective**; in the plural it is a **Substantive** and takes the genitive, as: millē militēs, *a thousand soldiers*; dŭō milliā militŭm, *two thousand soldiers*.

231. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English, as: *vīgintī ūnūs*, *twenty-one*, or *ūnūs ēt vīgintī*, *one and twenty*.

232. From 100 on, units follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; *ēt*, *and*, is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations, as:

centūm ēt quinquāgintā or centūm quinquāgintā, 150
centūm ēt quinquāgintā trēs or centūm quinquāgintā trēs, 153.

233. *sexcentī* is used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* in English. [79. 80.]

234. Ordinal Numerals denote a series, and answer the question *quōtūs?* *which one in the series?*

1st, <i>prīmūs, -ā, -ūm (prīōr, -ūs)</i>	23d, <i>tertīūs ēt vīcēsīmūs</i>
2d, <i>sēcundūs (altēr)</i>	30th, <i>trīcēsīmūs or trīgēsīmūs</i>
3d, <i>tertīūs</i>	40th, <i>quādrāgēsīmūs</i>
4th, <i>quartūs</i>	50th, <i>quīquāgēsīmūs</i>
5th, <i>quintūs</i>	60th, <i>sexāgēsīmūs</i>
6th, <i>sextūs</i>	70th, <i>septuāgēsīmūs</i>
7th, <i>septīmūs</i>	80th, <i>octōgēsīmūs</i>
8th, <i>octāvūs</i>	90th, <i>nōnāgēsīmūs</i>
9th, <i>nōnūs</i>	100th, <i>centēsīmūs</i>
10th, <i>dēcīmūs</i>	101st, <i>centēsīmūs (ēt) prīmūs</i>
11th, <i>undēcīmūs</i>	200th, <i>dūcentēsīmūs</i>
12th, <i>dūdēcīmūs</i>	300th, <i>trēcentēsīmūs</i>
13th, <i>tertīūs dēcīmūs</i>	400th, <i>quādrīngentēsīmūs</i>
14th, <i>quartūs dēcīmūs</i>	500th, <i>quīngentēsīmūs</i>
15th, <i>quintūs dēcīmūs</i>	600th, <i>sescentēsīmūs</i>
16th, <i>sextūs dēcīmūs</i>	700th, <i>septīngentēsīmūs</i>
17th, <i>septīmūs dēcīmūs</i>	800th, <i>octīngentēsīmūs</i>
18th, <i>octāvūs dēcīmūs or dūdēvīcēsīmūs</i>	900th, <i>nongentēsīmūs</i>
19th, <i>nōnūs dēcīmūs or undēvīcēsīmūs</i>	1000th, <i>millēsīmūs</i>
20th, <i>vīcēsīmūs or vīgēsīmūs</i>	2000th, <i>bīs millēsīmūs</i>
21st, <i>ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs prīmūs</i>	3000th, <i>tēr millēsīmūs</i>
22d, <i>altēr ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs sēcundūs</i>	10 000th, <i>dēcīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	100 000th, <i>centīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	1 000 000th, <i>dēcīēs centīēs millēsīmūs</i>

235. All **Ordinals** are adjectives in **ūs, ā, ūm**; except **prīor**, *prīus*, *first*, which is used instead of *prīmūs* in speaking of *two*; *altēr* is often used for *sēcundūs*. In compounding Ordinals, observe the same practice as with Cardinals (see **231**).

236. **Ordinals** with *pars*, *part*, expressed or understood, may be used to denote fractions, as: *tertiā pars*, *a third*; *quartā pars*, *a fourth*; *duae quintae*, *two fifths*. [81. 82.]

237. **Distributive Numerals** answer the question *quōtēnī?* *how many at a time?* and are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

1. singŭlī, -ae, -ā, <i>one by one</i>	22. vīcēnī binī
2. binī, -ae, -ā, <i>two by two, etc.</i>	23. vīcēnī ternī
3. ternī (trīnī)	30. trīcēnī
4. quāternī	40. quādrāgēnī
5. quīnī	50. quinquāgēnī
6. sēnī	60. sexāgēnī
7. septēnī	70. septuāgēnī
8. octōnī	80. octōgēnī
9. nōvēnī	90. nōnāgēnī
10. dēnī	100. centēnī
11. undēnī	200. dūcēnī
12. dūōdēnī	300. trēcēnī
13. ternī dēnī	400. quādringēnī
14. quāternī dēnī	500. quīngēnī
15. quīnī dēnī	600. sexcēnī
16. sēnī dēnī	700. septīngēnī
17. septēnī dēnī	800. octīngēnī
18. octōnī dēnī <i>or</i> dūōdēvīcēnī	900. nongēnī
19. nōvēnī dēnī <i>or</i> undēvīcēnī	1000. singŭlā mīliā
20. vīcēnī	2000. binā mīliā
21. vīcēnī singŭlī	3000. ternā mīliā, etc.

238. **Distributives** are used as follows:

In the meaning of *so many a piece* or *on each side*, as: *Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus congressi sunt*, *Scipio and Hannibal met, with an interpreter on each side*;

In multiplication, as: *bis bina*, *twice two*;

Instead of **Cardinals**, when a noun is plural in form, but singular in meaning, as: *binā castrā*, *two camps*. But with these, *ūnī, -ae, -ā* is used instead of *singŭlī*, and *trīnī* instead of *ternī*; as: *ūnae littērae*, *one letter*; *trīnae littērae*, *three letters*.

239. Multiplicative Numerals answer the question *quōtūplex? how many fold?* They are adjectives in *ex, icis*.

simplex, *-īcis, single*
 dūplex, *twofold, double*
 triplex, *threefold, triple*
 quādrūplex, *fourfold*

quincūplex, *fivefold*
 septemplex, *sevenfold*
 dēceplex, *tenfold*
 centūplex, *a hundredfold*

240. Proportional Numerals answer the question *quōtūplūs? how many times as great?* and are adjectives in *ūs, ā, ūm*. Only a few are commonly used.

simplūs, *-ā, -ūm, simple*
 dūplūs, *twice as great*
 triplūs, *three times as great*

quādrūplūs, *four times as great*
 septūplūs, *seven times as great*
 octūplūs, *eight times as great*

Numeral Adverbs.

241. Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quōtīens? how often?* Being adverbs, they are indeclinable.

1. sēmēl, *once*
2. bīs, *twice*
3. tēr, *thrice*
4. quātēr, *four times, etc.*
5. quinquīēs
6. sexīēs
7. septīēs
8. octīēs
9. nōvīēs
10. dēcīēs
11. undēcīēs
12. dūōdēcīēs
13. terdēcīēs (*trēdēcīēs*)
14. quāterdēcīēs (*quattūōrdēcīēs*)
15. quinquīēsdēcīēs (*quindēcīēs*)
16. sexīēsdēcīēs
17. septīēsdēcīēs
18. dūōdēvīcīēs (*octīēs dēcīēs*)
19. undēvīcīēs (*nōvīēs dēcīēs*)
20. vīcīēs

21. sēmēl ēt vīcīēs
22. bīs ēt vīcīēs
23. tēr ēt vīcīēs
30. trīcīēs
40. quādrāgīēs
50. quinquāgīēs
60. sexāgīēs
70. septūāgīēs
80. octōgīēs
90. nōnāgīēs
100. centīēs
200. dūcentīēs
300. trēcentīēs
400. quādringentīēs
500. quingentīēs
600. sescentīēs
700. septingentīēs
800. octingentīēs
900. nongentīēs
1000. milīēs

2000. bīs miljēs	100 000. centjēs miljēs
3000. tēr miljēs	1 000 000. miljēs miljēs
10 000. dēcjēs miljēs	2 000 000. bīs miljēs miljēs

242. The Accusative and Ablative neuter of Ordinals are used as **Adverbs of order**, thus:

prīmūm, prīmō, *first, at first;*
 (sēcundūm, sēcundō) commonly: ĭtěrūm, *secondly;*
 tertjūm, tertjō, *thirdly.*

[81. 82.]

PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns distinguish the Person speaking, or the **First Person**, from the Person spoken to, or the **Second Person**, and the object spoken of, **Third Person**. Accordingly, we have pronouns of the First, Second, and Third persons which are used either substantively or adjectively, or both substantively and adjectively.

244. Strictly speaking, the Pronouns of the *First* and *Second Persons* are the only **Personal Pronouns**, because they apply to Persons, *and to these only.*

245. The **Personal Pronouns** of the *First Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
		Singular.	
Nom.	ĕ' gŏ, <i>I</i>		
Gen.	mĕ' ĭ, <i>of me</i>		
Dat.	mĭ' hĭ, <i>to me</i>		
Acc.	mĕ, <i>me</i>		mĕūs, mĕā, mĕūm, <i>my</i>
Voc.	—		
Abl.	mĕ, <i>from me</i>		
		Plural.	
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>		
Gen.	no' strūm } <i>of us</i> no' strĭ }		
Dat.	nō' bīs, <i>to us</i>		nostĕr, nostrā, nostrūm, <i>our</i>
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>		
Voc.	—		
Abl.	nō' bīs, <i>from us</i>		

246. The Personal Pronouns of the *Second Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		Singular.		POSSESSIVE.
Nom.	tū, <i>thou</i>			
Gen.	tū' ī, <i>of thee</i>			
Dat.	tī' bī, <i>to thee</i>			
Acc.	tē, <i>thee</i>			tūīs, tūā, tūīm, <i>thy, your</i>
Voc.	tū, <i>O thou</i>			
Abl.	tē, <i>from thee</i>			

SUBSTANTIVE.		Plural.		POSSESSIVE.
Nom.	vōs, <i>ye or you</i>			
Gen.	ve' strūm } ve' strī } <i>of you</i>			
Dat.	vō' bīs, <i>to you</i>			vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, <i>your</i>
Acc.	vōs, <i>you</i>			
Voc.	vōs, <i>O ye or O you</i>			
Abl.	vō' bīs, <i>from you</i>			

The Genitives nostrūm, vestrūm are used *partitively* in reference to number.

247. The Personal Pronouns of the *Third Person* (*he, she, it, they*) are wanting in Latin; they are represented by the Determinative īs, ēā, īd, *he, she, it*.

SUBSTANTIVE.			Singular.		POSSESSIVE.
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>			
N. īs	ē' ā	īd	<i>he, she, it</i>		
G. ē' jūs	ē' jūs	ē' jūs	<i>of him, etc.</i>		(<i>supplied by the Gen.</i>)
D. ē' ī	ē' ī	ē' ī	<i>to, for him</i>		ējūs, <i>his, hers,</i>
A. ē' ūm	ē' ām	īd	<i>him, her, it</i>		<i>its</i>
A. ē' ō	ē' ā	ē' ō	<i>from, by him</i>		

SUBSTANTIVE.			Plural.		POSSESSIVE.
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>			
N. ī' ī, ē' ī	ē' ae	ē' ā	<i>they</i>		
G. ē' ō' rūm	ē' ā' rūm	ē' ō' rūm	<i>of them</i>		ēōrūm, ēārūm,
D. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>to, for them</i>		ēōrūm, <i>their</i>
A. ē' ōs	ē' ās	ē' ā	<i>them</i>		<i>or theirs</i>
A. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>from, by them</i>		

Pronouns of the *Third Person*, from their signification, cannot have a **Vocative**.

248. The Reflexive Pronoun of the *Third Person* is:

SUBSTANTIVE.

Singular.

POSSESSIVE.

Nom.	—
Gen.	sū' ī, of him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)
Dat.	sī' bī, to him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)
Acc.	sē, him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)
Abl.	sē, with him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)

sūūs, sūā, sūūm, his,
her(s), its own

Plural.

Nom.	—
Gen.	sū' ī, of them(<i>selves</i>)
Dat.	sī' bī, to them(<i>selves</i>)
Acc.	sē, them(<i>selves</i>)
Abl.	sē, with them(<i>selves</i>)

sūūs, sūā, sūūm, their
own

249. Possessives are declined like Adjectives of the first and second Declensions; but mēūs has the Voc. Sing. Masc. mī (see 67).

250. From nostēr and vestēr come the Patrial Adjectives: nostrās, -ātīs, of our country; vestrās, -ātīs, of your country.

251. The particle -mēt is joined for emphasis to all forms of ěgō, except nostrūm; to all forms of tū, except tū and vestrūm; to sībī, sē and the forms of sūūs; as: ěgōmēt, I myself. -tē is joined to tū: tūtē, yourself; -ptē is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive, as: suaptē mātū, by his own hand; sē, the Accusative of sūī, is often doubled, as: sēsē. [27. 28. 83. 84.]

Pronouns of the Third Person.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

252. The proper Demonstratives are:

hīc, this; istē, that; illē, that (yonder).

Singular.

Plural.

hīc, haec, hōc, this (of mine)

	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hū' jūs	hū' jūs	hū' jūs	hō' rūm	hā' rūm	hō' rūm
D.	hū' ěc	hū' ěc	hū' ěc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

istě, istā, istūd, that (of yours)

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. i' stě	i' stā	i' stūd	i' stī	i' stae	i' stā
G. i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stō' rūm	i stā' rūm	i stō' rūm
D. i' stī	i' stī	i' stī	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs
A. i' stūm	i' stām	i' stūd	i' stōs	i' stās	i' stā
A. i' stō	i' stā	i' stō	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs

illě, illā, illūd, that (yonder)

N. il' lě	il' lā	il' lūd	il' lī	il' lae	il' lā
G. il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lō' rūm	il lā' rūm	il lō' rūm
D. il' lī	il' lī	il' lī	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs
A. il' lūm	il' lām	il' lūd	il' lōs	il' lās	il' lā
A. il' lō	il' lā	il' lō	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs

253. *istě* and *illě* have forms in **c**, but only in the Nominative, Accusative and Ablative singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative plural (*neuter only*), thus:

	Singular.			Plural.
Nom.	istīc	istaec	istōc (commonly istūc)	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istōc (" istūc)	istaec
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc	

254. Forms of *hěc* ending in **s**, and the neuter *hōc* are found with the intensive **-cě**, *ās*: *hūjuscě*, *hoccě*. There is also an interrogative form with **-ně**, *hěcině*, *haecinė*, *hōcině*? *this here?*

[85. 86.]

Determinative Pronouns.

255. Certain pronouns connected with the Demonstratives in meaning, are ordinarily called **Determinatives**. These are:

īs, *he, that*; **īdēm**, *the same*; **ipsě**, *he, self*.

īs, *ěā*, *īd*, *he, she, it; that*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	īs	ě' ā	īd	ī' ī, ě' ī	ě' ae	ě' ā
Gen.	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' ō' rūm	ě' ā' rūm	ě' ō' rūm
Dat.	ě' ī	ě' ī	ě' ī	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs
Acc.	ě' ūm	ě' ām	īd	ě' ōs	ě' ās	ě' ā
Abl.	ě' ō	ě' ā	ě' ō	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs

Idēm, ěādēm, idēm, *the same.*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ī' dēm	ě' ā dēm	ī' dēm
Gen.	ě jūs' dēm	ě jus' dēm	ě jus' dēm
Dat.	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm
Acc.	ě un' dēm	ě an' dēm	ī' dēm
Abl.	ě ō' dēm	ě ā' dēm	ě ō' dēm

Plural.

Nom.	ī ī' dēm, ě ī' dēm	ě ae' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Gen.	ě ō run' dēm	ě ā run' dēm	ě ō run' dēm
Dat.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm
Acc.	ě ōs' dēm	ě ās' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Abl.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm

ipsě, ipsā, ipsūm, *he, she, it; self.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	ip' sě	ip' sǎ	ip' sūm	ip' sī	ip' sae	ip' sǎ
G.	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sō' rūm	ip' sā' rūm	ip' sō' rūm
D.	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs
A.	ip' sūm	ip' sǎm	ip' sūm	ip' sōs	ip' sās	ip' sǎ
A.	ip' sō	ip' sā	ip' sō	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs

[85. 86.]

Relative Pronouns.

256. The Relative Pronoun is

quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	quō' rūm	quā' rūm	quō' rūm
D.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs
A.	quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs

257. Ancient and rare forms: quīs (queis) for quībūs; quī for quō, quā, chiefly with -cūm; quīcūm = quōcūm, *with whom.*

258. The following are **General Relatives**:

Adjective.	quicunquē	quaecunquē	quodcunquē, <i>whichever</i>
Substantive.	quisquīs, <i>whoever</i>	—	quidquīd, <i>whatever</i>

259. They are declined in the same manner as the simple words; **cunquē** is invariable; of **quisquīs** both parts are declined, but it is generally used in these two forms only: **quisquīs**, *whoever*; **quidquīd**, *whatever*. [87. 88.]

Interrogative Pronouns.

260. The **Interrogative** (that is question-asking) pronouns are:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Substantive.	quīs? <i>who?</i>		quīd? <i>what?</i>
Adjective.	quī?	quae?	quōd? <i>which?</i>
Subst. and Adj.	ūtēr?	ūtrā?	ūtrūm? <i>who? which of two?</i>

Singular.

Nom.	quīs? <i>who?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Gen.	cū' jūs? <i>whose?</i>	cū' jūs? <i>of what?</i>
Dat.	cuī? <i>to or for whom?</i>	cuī? <i>to or for what?</i>
Acc.	quēm? <i>whom?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Abl.	quō? <i>from or with whom?</i>	quō? <i>from or with what?</i>

261. The Plural of **quīs**, **quīd?** *who, what?* and both numbers of **quī**, **quae**, **quōd?** *which?* are the same as the forms of the Relative **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**, *who, which*.

262. For the Declension of **ūtēr** see **77**.

263. To all cases of **quīs?** **quīd?** the particle **nām** (literally *for*) may be appended for the sake of emphasis, answering to our English *pray*, as: **quidnām** *āgīs?* *pray, what are you doing?*

264. From **cūjūs**, *whose?* comes the **Patrial Adjective**

cūjās, **-ātīs**, *of whose country?* [87. 88.]

Indefinite Pronouns.

265. The following are **Indefinite Pronouns**:

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
quīs (subst. & adj.)	quae or quā	quīd (subst.), <i>any one</i>
quī (adj.)	quae or quā	quōd (adj.), <i>any one, any</i>
āliquīs (subst. & adj.)	āliquā	āliquīd (subst.), <i>some, some one</i>
āliquī (adj.)	āliquā	āliquōd (adj.), <i>some, some one</i>
quīdām (subst. & adj.)	quaedām	{ quiddām (subst.) } <i>a certain</i> { quoddām (adj.) } <i>one</i>

quispiām (subst. & adj.)	quaepiām	{ quidpiām (subst.)	} some one, some
quisquām (subst.)	—	{ quodpiām (adj.)	
quisquē (subst. & adj.)	quaequē	quidquām (subst.),	} each one
		{ quodquē (adj.)	
quīvis (subst. & adj.)	quaevis	{ quidvis (subst.)	} any one
		{ quodvis (adj.)	
quīlibēt (subst. & adj.)	quaelībēt	{ quidlibēt (subst.)	} you please, any one
		{ quodlibēt (adj.)	

266. They are all declined like the **Interrogatives**, except **āliquis**, which has in the feminine singular and the neuter plural **āliquā**. They take **quid** in the neuter when used substantively, and **quōd** when used adjectively; **quisquām**, *any one*, is almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.

267. **ūnusquisquē**, **ūnāquaeque**, **ūnumquidquē**, **ūnumquodquē**, *each one, every one, each*, is used only in the singular, and both **ūnūs** and **quisquē** are declined: Gen. **ūnīūscūjusquē**, Dat. **ūnīcūiquē**, and so on.

268. Akin to *Indefinite Pronouns* are **Indefinite Adjectives**:

ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>	āliūs, -ā, -ūd, <i>another</i>
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no</i>	altēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
nonnullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>some</i>	neutēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>

To **ullūs** and **nullūs** the corresponding nouns are: **nēmō** (**-īnīs**), *nobody*, and **nīhīl** (indeclinable), *nothing*.

269. Mark the following **Pronominal Adjectives**:

Demonstrative.	Relative.
tālīs, -ē, <i>such</i>	quālīs, -ē, <i>such as</i>
tantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>so great</i>	quantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>as great</i>
tōt, <i>so many</i>	quōt, <i>as many as</i>
Interrogative.	Indefinite.
quālīs, -ē ? <i>what? of what sort?</i>	āliquantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>some, considerable</i>
quantūs, -ā, -ūm ? <i>how great?</i>	
quōt ? <i>how many?</i>	āliquōt, <i>some</i>

Of these **tōt**, **quōt**, **āliquōt** are indeclinable, the rest are declined like adjectives.

They are called **Correlatives**, when used in pairs, so that one refers or answers to the other, as: **tālīs..quālīs**, *such..as; like..like*; **tantūs..quantūs**, *so great..as; tōt..quōt*, *so many..as*;

VERBS.

270. The **Essential Characteristic** of a verb is that it ascribes some action, state, or quality to a subject. Verbs, like Nouns and Pronouns, have their inflection, or changes of form in order to express certain changes of meaning; this inflection is called their **Conjugation**.

The forms of **Conjugation** are:

Voices, genēra; **Tenses**, tempōra; **Moods**, mōdi;
Numbers and **Persons**, numēri et persōnae.

Voices.

271. Some verbs are usually followed by an object signifying that at which the action of the verb is directed. They are said to be **Transitive Verbs** and express an assertion in two forms, called the **Active Voice** and the **Passive Voice**.

272. The **Active Voice** denotes that the action proceeds from the subject, as: canis puērum mordēbat, *the dog bit the boy*. The **Passive** denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb, as: puer mordebātur a cane, *the boy was bitten by the dog*.

273. Other verbs, again, express an action which is limited to the subject, as: puer currit, *the boy runs*. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**, and from their nature cannot be regularly used in the **Passive Voice**.

274. Transitive verbs may be used without any expressed object (*absolutely*), as: puer scribit, *the boy writes*.

275. A **Reflexive Verb** is one that represents the action as exerted by the subject upon itself. The **Passive Voice** often has a reflexive meaning, as: occasiō datur, *the occasion offers, presents itself*.

276. The **Active** and **Passive** Voices in Latin are equivalent to the corresponding English forms. Many verbs are only used in the **Passive** form, but with an active or reflexive signification; they are called **Deponents**.

277. Some verbs which form their Perfect like *Deponents*, are called **Semi-Deponents**, as:

audēō, -ērē, to dare	ausūs sūm, I dared
gaudēō, -ērē, to rejoice	gāvīsūs sūm, I rejoiced
sōlēō, -ērē, to be wont	sōlītūs sūm, I was wont
fīdō, -ērē, to trust	fīsūs sūm, I trusted

278. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect **Passive** Participle with **Active** meaning, viz.:

cēnō, -ārē, to dine	cēnātūs, having dined
prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast	pransūs, having breakfasted
pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtūs, having drunk
jūrō, -ārē, to swear	jūrātūs, having sworn

279. Again, a few **Active** verbs have a **Passive** meaning; they are sometimes called **Neutral Passives**, viz.:

vāpūlārē, to be flogged; vēnīrē (vēnūm īrē, to go to sale), to be sold.

Tenses.

280. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action

the **Present**, as: scrībō, *I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: scrībēbām, *I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: scrībām, *I shall write*.

Of Completed Action

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: scripsī, *I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: scripsērām, *I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: scripsērō, *I shall have written*.

The **Passive** has the same tenses. (For Particulars see *Syntar.*)

Moods.

281. The **Moods** are three, **Indicative**. **Subjunctive**. and **Imperative**.

282. The **Indicative** is used for direct assertions or interrogations, corresponding, without any auxiliary, to the three forms of an English verb, viz.: the **Simple**, **Progressive**, and **Emphatic**, as: scrībō, *I write, am writing, do write*.

283. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances, as: *āmārēm, I should love.*

284. The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice, or exhortation*, as: *este diligentes, puēri, be diligent, boys!*

285. These three moods which are limited by *person, number, and time* are called the **Finite Verb**.

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

286. Outside of the Finite Verb, and partaking of the nature of nouns, are certain **Verbal Forms** which are so important that they are always given with the inflectional forms, as part of the conjugation of the verb.

287. The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**, as: *āmārē, to love.*

288. The **Gerund** is a verbal noun of the *Second Declension*, used only in the singular, and wanting the nominative and vocative; it corresponds to the English Participial Infinitive in *ing*, as: *āmandī, of loving.*

289. The **Gerundive** differs from the Gerund only in having adjective terminations in *ūs, ā, ūm*, thus: **Gerund**, *āmandī, of loving*; **Gerundive**, *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm, to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

290. The **Participle** gives, like the English Participle, the meaning of the verb in the form of an Adjective.

291. A Latin verb may have four **Participles**: two in the **Active**, the Present and the Future—*āmans, loving*; *āmātūrūs, about to love*; and two in the **Passive**, the Perfect, *āmātūs, loved*, and the Future, commonly called Gerundive; *āmandūs, deserving to be loved.*

292. The **Supine** is a verbal noun of the *Fourth Declension*, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū, to love.*

Numbers and Persons.

293. There are two **Numbers**, *Singular* and *Plural*, and three **Persons**: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

294. The **Personal Endings** for each of the three persons, both singular and plural, active and passive, are as follows:

	PERSON.		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
Sing.	1. <i>I</i>	-ō, -m	ăm-ō	-r	ămō-r
	2. <i>thou, you</i>	-s	ămā-s	-rīs	ămā-rīs
	3. <i>he, she, it</i>	-t	ămā-t	-tūr	ămā-tūr
Plur.	1. <i>we</i>	-mūs	ămā-mūs	-mūr	ămā-mūr
	2. <i>you</i>	-tīs	ămā-tīs	-mīnī	ămā-mīnī
	3. <i>they</i>	-nt	ămā-nt	-ntūr	ămā-ntūr

The *Imperative* has the following terminations:

Sing.	2.	-	ămā	-rē	ămā-rē
"	3.	-tō	ămā-tō	-tōr	ămā-tōr
Plur.	2.	-tē, -tōtē	ămā-tē	-mīnī	ămā-mīnī
"	3.	-ntō	ămā-ntō	-ntōr	ămā-ntōr

The *Perfect Indicative (active)* has the special terminations:

Sing.	2.	-stī	ămāvi-stī	Plur.	2.	-stīs	ămāvi-stīs
				"	3.	-ērunt	ămāv-ērunt

The Four Conjugations.

295. Verbs are inflected in four regular **Conjugations**, distinguished by the ending of the **Present Infinitive Active**, viz.:

- I. **First Conjugation** -ārē; stem ending in ā;
- II. **Second Conjugation** -ērē; " " in ē;
- III. **Third Conjugation** -ērē; " " in a consonant or ū;
- IV. **Fourth Conjugation** -īrē; " " in ī.

296. Besides the **Present Infinitive** we need to know the **Present Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Perfect Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Former Supine**, in order to understand the whole inflection of any verb. Hence these four are called the **Principal Parts**

or **Stem-forms**, and in describing any verb these are given. Their regular forms are seen in the following:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
I. āmō	āmārē , <i>to love</i>	āmāvī	āmātūm
II. mōnēō	mōnērē , <i>to advise</i>	mōnūī	mōnītūm
III. lēgō	lēgērē , <i>to read</i>	lēgī	lectūm
IV. audīō	audīrē , <i>to hear</i>	audīvī	audītūm

297. The **Principal Parts** being known, the rest of the conjugation is found by the following rules.

Simple Forms of the Verb.

298. From the **PRESENT INDICATIVE** are formed: the **Present Subjunctive** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ēm	ām-ō	ām-ēm
II.	-ēō	"	-ēām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēām
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Imperfect Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābām	ām-ō	ām-ābām
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbām
III.	-ō	"	-ēbām	lēg-ō	lēg-ēbām
IV.	-īō	"	-īēbām	aud-īō	aud-īēbām

the **Future Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābō	ām-ō	ām-ābō
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbō	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbō
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Present Participle** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ans	ām-ō	ām-ans
II.	-ēō	"	-ens	mōn-ēō	mōn-ens
III.	-ō	"	-ens	lēg-ō	lēg-ens
IV.	-īō	"	-iens	aud-īō	aud-iens

the **Gerundive** (and the **Gerund**) by changing

I.	-ō	into	-andūs	ām-ō	ām-andūs
II.	-ēō	"	-endūs	mōn-ēō	mōn-endūs
III.	-ō	"	-endūs	lēg-ō	lēg-endūs
IV.	-īō	"	-iendūs	aud-īō	aud-iendūs

299. From the **PRESENT INFINITIVE** are formed:

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Active** by adding **m**:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē- m | III. lēgērē, lēgērē- m |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē- m | IV. audirē, audirē- m |

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Passive** by adding **r**:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē- r | III. lēgērē, lēgērē- r |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē- r | IV. audirē, audirē- r |

the **Present Imperative Active** by dropping **rē**:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I. āmā- rē , āmā | III. lēgē- rē , lēgē |
| II. mōnē- rē , mōnē | IV. audī- rē , audī |

the **Present Imperative Passive** identically:

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|
| I. āmārē | II. mōnērē | III. lēgērē | IV. audirē |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|

the **Present Infinitive Passive** by changing

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| I. ē into ī | āmār- ē | āmār- ī |
| II. ē " ī | mōnēr- ē | mōnēr- ī |
| III. ērē " ī | lēg- ērē | lēg- ī |
| IV. ē " ī | audīr- ē | audīr- ī |

300. From the **PERFECT INDICATIVE** are formed:

the **Pluperfect Indicative** by changing **ī** into **ērām**:

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- ī , āmāv- ērām | III. lēg- ī , lēg- ērām |
| II. mōnū- ī , mōnū- ērām | IV. audīv- ī , audīv- ērām |

the **Future Perfect** by changing **ī** into **ērō**:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| I. āmāv- ī , āmāv- ērō | III. lēg- ī , lēg- ērō |
| II. mōnū- ī , mōnū- ērō | IV. audīv- ī , audīv- ērō |

the **Perfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **ērīm**:

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- ī , āmāv- ērīm | III. lēg- ī , lēg- ērīm |
| II. mōnū- ī , mōnū- ērīm | IV. audīv- ī , audīv- ērīm |

the **Pluperfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **issēm**:

- | | |
|---|---|
| I. āmāv- ī , āmāv- issēm | III. lēg- ī , lēg- issēm |
| II. mōnū- ī , mōnū- issēm | IV. audīv- ī , audīv- issēm |

the **Perfect Infinitive** by changing **ī** into **issē**:

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. āmāv- ī , āmāv- issē | III. lēg- ī , lēg- issē |
| II. mōnū- ī , mōnū- issē | IV. audīv- ī , audīv- issē |

301. From the SUPINE are formed:

the **Perfect Participle** by changing **ŭm** into **ŭs**:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I. āmāt-ŭm , āmāt-ŭs | III. lect-ŭm , lect-ŭs |
| II. mōnīt-ŭm , mōnīt-ŭs | IV. audīt-ŭm , audīt-ŭs |

the **Future Participle** by changing **ŭm** into **ŭrŭs**:

- | | |
|---|---|
| I. āmāt-ŭm , āmāt-ŭrŭs | III. lect-ŭm , lect-ŭrŭs |
| II. mōnīt-ŭm , mōnīt-ŭrŭs | IV. audīt-ŭm , audīt-ŭrŭs |

302. Of the active tenses of continued action, viz.: **Present**, **Imperfect**, and **Future**, those ending in **ō** become passive by changing **ō** into **ōr**; those ending in **m**, by changing **m** into **r**, as:

- | | |
|---|---|
| I. ām-ō , ām-ōr
āmĕ-m , āmĕ-r | III. lēg-ō , lēg-ōr
lēgā-m , lēgā-r |
| II. mōnĕ-ō , mōnĕ-ōr
mōnĕā-m , mōnĕā-r | IV. audī-ō , audī-ōr
audiā-m , audiā-r |

To TEACHERS. As the *theory* of conjugation is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the *Paradigms themselves* should be made very familiar, before the *systematic study* of the foregoing rules is taken up. At this stage, *AHN-HENNS Paradigm Charts* exhibiting the *Essentials of Latin Conjugation*, will greatly help in mastering one of the numerous difficulties of the language.

Compound Forms.

303. All the rest are compound forms, made by the aid of the **Auxiliary** verb *essĕ*, *to be*:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
sŭm	essĕ, <i>to be</i>	fŭī	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Perfect.
sŭm, <i>I am</i>	fŭī' ī, <i>I have been (was)</i>
ĕs, <i>thou art</i>	fŭī' stī, <i>thou hast been</i>
est, <i>he, she, it is</i>	fŭī' ĭt, <i>he has been</i>
sŭ' mŭs, <i>we are</i>	fŭī' ī mŭs, <i>we have been</i>
e' stīs, <i>you are</i>	fŭī' ī stīs, <i>you have been</i>
sunt, <i>they are</i>	fŭī' ĕ' runt. <i>they have been</i>

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

ě' rām, *I was*
 ě' rās, *thou wast*
 ě' rāt, *he was*
 ě' rā' mūs, *we were*
 ě' rā' tīs, *you were*
 ě' rant, *they were*

Future.

ě' rō, *I shall be*
 ě' rīs, *thou wilt be*
 ě' rīt, *he will be*
 ě' rī mūs, *we shall be*
 ě' rī tīs, *you will be*
 ě' runt, *they will be*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' ě' rām, *I had been*
 fŭ' ě' rās, *thou hadst been*
 fŭ' ě' rāt, *he had been*
 fŭ' ě' rā' mūs, *we had been*
 fŭ' ě' rā' tīs, *you had been*
 fŭ' ě' rant, *they had been*

Future Perfect.

fŭ' ě' rō, *I shall have been*
 fŭ' ě' rīs, *thou wilt have been*
 fŭ' ě' rīt, *he will have been*
 fŭ' ě' rī mūs, *we shall have been*
 fŭ' ě' rī tīs, *you will have been*
 fŭ' ě' rint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sīm, *may I be**
 sīs, *be thou, or may you be*
 sīt, *let him be (may he be)*
 sī' mūs, *let us be*
 sī' tīs, *be ye, or may ye be*
 sint, *let them be (may they be)*

Imperfect.

es' sēm, *I should be (were)*
 es' sēs, *thou wouldst be*
 es' sēt, *he would be*
 es' sē' mūs, *we should be*
 es' sé' tīs, *you would be*
 es' sent, *they would be*

Perfect.

fŭ' ě' rīm, *I may have been*
 fŭ' ě' rīs, *thou mayest have been*
 fŭ' ě' rīt, *he may have been*
 fŭ' ě' rī mūs, *we may have been*
 fŭ' ě' rī tīs, *you may have been*
 fŭ' ě' rint, *they may have been*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' is' sēm, *I should have been*
 fŭ' is' sēs, *thou wouldst have been*
 fŭ' is' sēt, *he would have been*
 fŭ' is' sē' mūs, *we should have been*
 fŭ' is' sé' tīs, *you would have been*
 fŭ' is' sent, *they would have been*

Future.

fŭ' tŭ' rūš, -ǎ, -ŭm fŭ' tŭ' rī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sīm, <i>I may be about to be</i>
		sīs, <i>thou mayest be about to be</i>
		sīt, <i>he may be about to be</i>
		sī' mūs, <i>we may be about to be</i>
		sī' tīs, <i>you may be about to be</i>
		sint, <i>they may be about to be</i>

* The rendering of the Subjunctive here given shows the most frequent meanings of its forms *when used independently*.

	Singular.	IMPERATIVE,	Plural.
Present.	ēs, <i>be thou</i>	e' stě, <i>be ye</i>	
Future.	e' stō, <i>thou shalt be</i> e' stō, <i>he shall be</i>	e stō' tě, <i>ye shall be</i> sun' tō, <i>they shall be</i>	

	INFINITIVE.
Present.	es' sě, <i>to be</i>
Perfect.	fū is' sě, <i>to have been</i>
Future.	fū tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě, or fō' rě, <i>to be about to be</i>
Future Participle.	fū tū' rūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>about to be</i>

304. The Future Perfect is wanting in the **Subjunctive** which is represented, when necessary, by the Subjunctive of the Perfect or Pluperfect, according to the connection of the sentence.

305. The verb *essě* has no **Gerund** or **Supine**, and no **Participle** but the **Future**.

[111—114.]

306. Compounds of *essě*.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
absūm	ābessě, <i>to be absent, be away</i>	āfūi	—
adsūm	ādessě, <i>to be present</i>	adfūi	—
dēsūm	dēessě, <i>to be wanting</i>	dēfūi	—
insūm	inessě, <i>to be in</i>	infūi	—
intersūm	intēressě, <i>to be between</i>	interfūi	—
obsūm	ōbessě, <i>to be in the way</i>	obfūi	—
praesūm	praeessě, <i>to be over</i>	praefūi	—
prōsūm	prōdessě, <i>to be useful</i>	prōfūi	—
subsūm	sūbessě, <i>to be under</i>	wanting	—
sūpersūm	sūpēressě, <i>to remain over</i>	sūperfūi	—

307. All these Compounds are conjugated like *sūm*; but *prōsūm* inserts a **d** when **prō** would be followed by **e**, thus:

Present.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.	Future.
prōsūm	prōdērām	prōdessēm	prōdērō
prōdēs	prōdērās	prōdessēs	prōdērīs
prōdest	prōdērāt	prōdessēt	prōdērīt
prōsūmūs	prōdērāmūs	prōdessēmūs	prōdērīmūs
prōdestīs	prōdērātīs	prōdessētīs	prōdērītīs
prōsunt	prōdērant	prōdessent	prōdērunt

Imperative.	Infinitive.
prōdēs	prōdestě
prōdestō	prōdestōtě

308. Neither *sūm* nor any of its compounds has a present participle, except: *praesens*, *-tīs*, *present*; *absens*, *-tīs*, *absent*; *essē* is also compounded with *pōtīs*, *pōtē*, *able*, in the verb *possē*. For its inflection see **401**. [115. 116.]

309. The **Perfect**, **Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect**, and also the **Perfect Infinitive** in the **Passive Voice** are compound forms, made up of the **Perfect Participle** and the verb *essē* as an auxiliary, as:

Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I have been or was loved*
Perf. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm es'sē*, *to have been loved*
Pluperf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I had been loved*
Fut. Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall have been loved*
Fut. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fōrē*, *to be about to be loved*

310. In the compound tenses of the **Passive**, the **Participle** is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, as:

bellum parātum est, *war has been prepared*.

Periphrastic Conjugation.

311. The **Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle** (**Active**), and with the **Gerundive** (**Passive**).

312. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I am about to love*
Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I was about to love*
Future. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall be about to love*
Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūi*, *I have been, or was about to love*
Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērām*, *I had been about to love*
Fut. Perf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērō*, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sīm*, *I may be about to love*
Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm essēm*, *I should be about to love*
Future. (*wanting*)
Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērīm*, *I may have been about to love*
Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūissēm*, *I should have been about to*
Fut. Perf. (*wanting*) [love]

INFINITIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to be about to love*
 Perfect. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have been about to love*

313. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sūm, I have to be loved*
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērām, I had to be loved*
 Future. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērō, I shall have to be loved*
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūi, I (have) had to be loved*
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērām, I had had to be loved*
 Fut. Perf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērō, I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sīm, I may have to be loved*
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essēm, I should have to be loved*
 Future. (*wanting*)
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērīm, I may have had to be loved*
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissēm, I should have had to be loved*
 Fut. Perf. (*wanting*)

INFINITIVE.

Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to have to be loved*
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have had to be loved*

314. Impersonal Periphrastic Conjugation.

The Neuter of the Gerundive with *est, ērāt, etc.*, is used impersonally, if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendūm est, we or you must live; moriendūm est, we or you must die.* But the person *by whom* may also be added in the dative, thus:

mihī scribendum est, *I must or should write*
tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*
ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*
nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*
vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*
eis scribendum est, *they must or should write*

[171. 172.]

315. The **Future Infinitive Passive** is a compound form made up of the **Supine** and **īrī** (lit. *to be gone*), which is the *Infinitive Passive* of the verb *īrē, to go.*

I. *āmātūm īrī*
 II. *mōnītūm īrī*

III. *lectūm īrī*
 IV. *auditūm īrī*

316. First Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
āmō, -ārē, to love

Perfect.
āmāvi

Supine.
āmātūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ā' mō, *I love*
 ā' mās, *thou lovest*
 ā' māt, *he loves*
 ā mā' mūs, *we love*
 ā mā' tīs, *you love*
 ā' mant, *they love*

ā' mēm, *may I love*
 ā' mēs, *love thou*
 ā' mēt, *let him love*
 ā mē' mūs, *let us love*
 ā mē' tīs, *love ye*
 ā' ment, *let them love*

Imperfect.

ā mā' bām, *I was loving*
 ā mā' bās, *thou wast loving*
 ā mā' bāt, *he was loving*
 ā mā bā' mūs, *we were loving*
 ā mā bā' tīs, *you were loving*
 ā mā' bant, *they were loving*

ā mā' rēm, *I should love*
 ā mā' rēs, *thou wouldst love*
 ā mā' rēt, *he would love*
 ā mā rē' mūs, *we should love*
 ā mā rē' tīs, *you would love*
 ā mā' rent, *they would love*

Future.

ā mā' bō, *I shall love*
 ā mā' bīs, *thou wilt love*
 ā mā' bīt, *he will love*
 ā mā' bī mūs, *we shall love*
 ā mā' bī tīs, *you will love*
 ā mā' bunt, *they will love*

ā mā tū' rūš, { sīm
 -ā, -ūm { sīs
 { sīt } *be about*
 ā mā tū' rī, { sī' mūs } *to love*
 -ae, -ā { sī' tīs }
 { sit }

Perfect.

ā mā' vī, *I have loved*
 ā mā vi' stī, *thou hast loved*
 ā mā' vīt, *he has loved*
 ā mā' vī mūs, *we have loved*
 ā mā vi' stīs, *you have loved*
 ā mā vē' runt, *they have loved*

ā mā' vē rīm, *I may have loved*
 ā mā' vē rīs, *thou mayest have l.*
 ā mā' vē rīt, *he may have loved*
 ā mā vē rī mūs, *we may have l.*
 ā mā vē rī tīs, *you may have l.*
 ā mā' vē rint, *they may have l.*

Pluperfect.

ā mā' vē rām, *I had loved*
 ā mā' vē rās, *thou hadst loved*
 ā mā' vē rāt, *he had loved*
 ā mā vē rā' mūs, *we had loved*
 ā mā vē rā' tīs, *you had loved*
 ā mā' vē rant, *they had loved*

ā mā vis' sēm, *I should have l.*
 ā mā vis' sēs, *thou wouldst h. l.*
 ā mā vis' sēt, *he would have l.*
 ā mā vis sē' mūs, *we should h. l.*
 ā mā vis sē' tīs, *you would h. l.*
 ā mā vis' sent, *they would h. l.*

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ã mā' vē rō,	<i>I shall have loved</i>	(wanting)
ã mā' vē rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved</i>	
ã mā' vē rīt,	<i>he will have loved</i>	
ã mā vē rī mūs,	<i>we shall have loved</i>	
ã mā vē rī tīs,	<i>you will have loved</i>	
ã mā' vē rint,	<i>they will have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Present.	ã' mā, <i>love thou</i>	ã mā' tē, <i>love ye</i>
Future.	ã mā' tō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	ã mā tō' tē, <i>ye shall love</i>
	ã mā' tō, <i>he shall love</i>	ã man' tō, <i>they shall love</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ã mā' rē, <i>to love</i>	
Perfect.	ã mā vis' sē, <i>to have loved</i>	
Fut. Sing.	Nom. ã mā tū' rūs, -ã, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to be about to love</i>
"	Acc. ã mā tū' rūm, -ãm, -ūm es' sē	
Plur.	Nom. ã mā tū' rī, -ae, -ã es' sē	
"	Acc. ã mā tū' rōs, -ās, -ã es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ã' mans, ã man' tīs, <i>loving</i>
Future.	ã mā tū' rūs, ã mā tū' rã, ã mā tū' rūm, <i>about to love</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	ã man' dī, <i>of loving</i>	
Dat.	ã man' dō, <i>for loving</i>	
Acc.	ã man' dūm, <i>loving</i>	} <i>to love</i>
Abl.	ã man' dō, <i>by loving</i>	

[117-120.]

317. First Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ã mōr,	<i>I am loved</i>	ã' mēr, <i>may I be loved</i>
ã mā' rīs,	<i>thou art loved</i>	ã mē' rīs, <i>be thou loved</i>
ã mā' tūr,	<i>he is loved</i>	ã mē' tūr, <i>let him be loved</i>
ã mā' mūr,	<i>we are loved</i>	ã mē' mūr, <i>let us be loved</i>
ã mā' mī nī,	<i>you are loved</i>	ã mē' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
ã man' tūr,	<i>they are loved</i>	ã men' tūr, <i>let them be loved</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ă mā' bār, <i>I was loved</i>	ă mā' rēr, <i>I should be loved</i>
ă mā' bā' rīs, <i>thou wast loved</i>	ă mā' rē' rīs, <i>thou wouldst be l.</i>
ă mā' bā' tūr, <i>he was loved</i>	ă mā' rē' tūr, <i>he would be loved</i>
ă mā' bā' mūr, <i>we were loved</i>	ă mā' rē' mūr, <i>we should be loved</i>
ă mā' bā' mī nī, <i>you were loved</i>	ă mā' rē' mī nī, <i>you would be l.</i>
ă mā' ban' tūr, <i>they were loved</i>	ă mā' ren' tūr, <i>they would be l.</i>

Future.

ă mā' bōr, <i>I shall be loved</i>	(wanting)
ă mā' bē rīs, <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	
ă mā' bī tūr, <i>he will be loved</i>	
ă mā' bī mūr, <i>we shall be loved</i>	
ă mā' bī' mī nī, <i>you will be loved</i>	
ă mā' bun' tūr, <i>they will be loved</i>	

Perfect.

<i>I have been or was loved</i>	<i>I may have been loved</i>
ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ūm { sūm	ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ūm { sīm
{ ēs	{ sīs
{ est	{ sīt
ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă { sū' mūs	ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă { sī' mūs
{ e' stīs	{ sī' tīs
{ sunt	{ sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>I might have been loved</i>
ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ūm { ěj' rām	ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ūm { es' sēm
{ ěj' rās	{ es' sēs
{ ěj' rāt	{ es' sēt
ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă { ěj' rā' mūs	ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă { es' sē' mūs
{ ěj' rā' tīs	{ es' sē' tīs
{ ěj' rant	{ es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been loved</i>	(wanting)
ă mā' tūs, -ă, -ūm { ěj' rō	
{ ěj' rīs	
{ ěj' rīt	
ă mā' tī, -ae, -ă { ěj' rī mūs	
{ ěj' rī tīs	
{ ěj' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	ǎ mā' rě, <i>be thou loved</i>	ǎ mā' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
Fut.	ǎ mā' tōr, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>	
	ǎ mā' tōr, <i>he shall be loved</i>	ǎ man' tōr, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ǎ mā' rī, <i>to be loved</i>	
Perfect Sing.	Nom. ǎ mā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě	} <i>to have been loved</i>
	Acc. ǎ mā' tūm, -ǎm, -ūm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom. ǎ mā' tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
	Acc. ǎ mā' tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	
Future.	ǎ mā' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	ǎ mā' tūs, ǎ mā' tā, ǎ mā' tūm, <i>loved, beloved, or having been loved</i>
Gerundive.	ǎ man' dūs, ǎ man' dā, ǎ man' dūm, <i>to be loved, deserving to be loved</i>

Examples for Practice:

ǎgītō, -ārě, <i>to agitate</i>	spērō, -ārě, <i>to hope for</i>
ēdūcō, -ārě, <i>to bring up</i>	occō, -ārě, <i>to harrow</i>
ēvitō, -ārě, <i>to avoid, shun</i>	compārō, -ārě, <i>to compare</i>
admīnistrō, -ārě, <i>to govern</i>	cāvō, -ārě, <i>to (make) hollow</i>
turbō, -ārě, <i>to trouble</i>	lácērō, -ārě, <i>to tear into pieces</i>
conservō, -ārě, <i>to preserve</i>	expugnō, -ārě, <i>to capture</i>
multō, -ārě, <i>to punish</i>	vastō, -ārě, <i>to lay waste</i>

[121. 122.]

318. Second Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
mōněō, -ērě, <i>to advise</i>	mōnūī	mōnītūm

INDICATIVE.

mō' ně ō, <i>I advise</i>
mō' něs, <i>thou advisest</i>
mō' nět, <i>he advises</i>
mō' ně' mūs, <i>we advise</i>
mō' ně' tīs, <i>you advise</i>
mō' nent, <i>they advise</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mō' ně ām, <i>may I advise</i>
mō' ně ās, <i>advise thou</i>
mō' ně āt, <i>let him advise</i>
mō' ně ā' mūs, <i>let us advise</i>
mō' ně ā' tīs, <i>advise ye</i>
mō' ně ant, <i>let them advise</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

mǒ nē' bām, <i>I was advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēm, <i>I should advise</i>
mǒ nē' bās, <i>thou wast advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēs, <i>thou wouldst advise</i>
mǒ nē' bāt, <i>he was advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēt, <i>he would advise</i>
mǒ nē bā' mūs, <i>we were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē rē' mūs, <i>we should advise</i>
mǒ nē bā' tīs, <i>you were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē rē' tīs, <i>you would advise</i>
mǒ nē' bant, <i>they were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē' rent, <i>they would advise</i>

Future.

mǒ nē' bō, <i>I shall advise</i>	mǒ nī tū' rūš, {	sīm	}	be about
mǒ nē' bīs, <i>thou wilt advise</i>				
mǒ nē' bīt, <i>he will advise</i>	-ā, -ūm	sīt	}	to advise
mǒ nē' bī mūs, <i>we shall advise</i>	mǒ nī tū' rī, {	sī' mūs		
mǒ nē' bī tīs, <i>you will advise</i>		sī' tīs		
mǒ nē' bunt, <i>they will advise</i>		-ae, -ā	sint	

Perfect.

mǒ' nū ī, <i>I (have) advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīm, <i>I may have adv'd</i>
mǒ nū i' stī, <i>thou hast advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīs, <i>thou mayest have a.</i>
mǒ' nū īt, <i>he has advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīt, <i>he may have adv'd</i>
mǒ nū' ī mūs, <i>we have advised</i>	mǒ nū ě rī mūs, <i>we may have a.</i>
mǒ nū i' stīs, <i>you have advised</i>	mǒ nū ě rī tīs, <i>you may have a.</i>
mǒ nū ě' runt, <i>they have advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rint, <i>they may have a.</i>

Pluperfect.

mǒ nū' ě rām, <i>I had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēm, <i>I should have a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēs, <i>thou wouldst h. a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rāt, <i>he had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēt, <i>he would have a.</i>
mǒ nū ě rā' mūs, <i>we had adv'd</i>	mǒ nū is sē' mūs, <i>we should h. a.</i>
mǒ nū ě rā' tīs, <i>you had adv'd</i>	mǒ nū is sē' tīs, <i>you would h. a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rant, <i>they had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sent, <i>they would h. a.</i>

Future Perfect.

mǒ nū' ě rō, <i>I shall have advised</i>	(wanting)
mǒ nū' ě rīs, <i>thou wilt have adv'd</i>	
mǒ nū' ě rīt, <i>he will have advised</i>	
mǒ nū ě rī mūs, <i>we shall have a.</i>	
mǒ nū ě rī tīs, <i>you will have a.</i>	
mǒ nū' ě rint, <i>they will have a.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	mǒ' nĕ, <i>advise thou</i>	mǒ nĕ' tĕ, <i>advise ye</i>
Fut.	mǒ nĕ' tō, <i>thou shalt advise</i> mǒ nĕ' tō, <i>he shall advise</i>	mǒ nĕ tō' tĕ, <i>ye shall advise</i> mǒ nen' tō, <i>they shall advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mǒ nĕ' rĕ, <i>to advise</i>		
Perf.	mǒ nŭ is' sĕ, <i>to have advised</i>		
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	mǒ nĭ tŭ' rŭs, -ă, -ŭm es' sĕ	} <i>to be about to advise</i>
	Acc.	mǒ nĭ tŭ' rŭm, -ăm, -ŭm es' sĕ	
Plur.	Nom.	mǒ nĭ tŭ' rĭ, -ae, -ă es' sĕ	
	Acc.	mǒ nĭ tŭ' rōs, -ās, -ă es' sĕ	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mǒ' nens, mǒ nen' tĭs, <i>advising</i>	
Fut.	mǒ nĭ tŭ' rŭs, mǒ nĭ tŭ' ră, mǒ nĭ tŭ' rŭm, <i>about to advise</i>	

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	mǒ nen' dĭ, <i>of advising</i>	
Dat.	mǒ nen' dō, <i>for advising</i>	
Acc.	mǒ nen' dŭm, <i>advising</i>	mǒ' nĭ tŭm } <i>to advise</i>
Abl.	mǒ nen' dō, <i>by advising</i>	mǒ' nĭ tŭ }

[125. 126]

319. Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mǒ' nĕ ōr, <i>I am advised</i>	mǒ' nĕ ār, <i>may I be advised</i>
mǒ nĕ' rĭs, <i>thou art advised</i>	mǒ nĕ ā' rĭs, <i>be thou advised</i>
mǒ nĕ' tŭr, <i>he is advised</i>	mǒ nĕ ā' tŭr, <i>let him be advised</i>
mǒ nĕ' mŭr, <i>we are advised</i>	mǒ nĕ ā' mŭr, <i>let us be advised</i>
mǒ nĕ' mĭ nĭ, <i>you are advised</i>	mǒ nĕ ā' mĭ nĭ, <i>be ye advised</i>
mǒ nen' tŭr, <i>they are advised</i>	mǒ nĕ an' tŭr, <i>let them be adv'd</i>

Imperfect.

mǒ nĕ' bār, <i>I was advised</i>	mǒ nĕ' rĕr, <i>I should be advised</i>
mǒ nĕ bā' rĭs, <i>thou wast advised</i>	mǒ nĕ rĕ' rĭs, <i>thou wouldst b. a.</i>
mǒ nĕ bā' tŭr, <i>he was advised</i>	mǒ nĕ rĕ' tŭr, <i>he would b. a.</i>
mǒ nĕ bā' mŭr, <i>we were advised</i>	mǒ nĕ rĕ' mŭr, <i>we should b. a.</i>
mǒ nĕ bā' mĭ nĭ, <i>you were adv'd</i>	mǒ nĕ rĕ' mĭ nĭ, <i>you would b. a.</i>
mǒ nĕ ban' tŭr, <i>they were adv'd</i>	mǒ nĕ ren' tŭr, <i>they would b. a.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

mó nē' bōr, *I shall be advised*
 mó nē' bē rīs, *thou wilt be adv'd*
 mō nē' bī tūr, *he will be advised*
 mō nē' bī mūr, *we shall be adv'd*
 mō nē' bī' mī nī, *you will be adv'd*
 mō nē' bun' tūr, *they will be a.*

(wanting)

Perfect.

I have been or was advised

I may have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sūm
 { ěs
 { est
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sū' mūs
 { e' stīs
 { sunt

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sīm
 { sīs
 { sīt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
 { sī' tīs
 { sint

Pluperfect.

I had been advised

I should have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ě' rām
 { ě' rās
 { ě' rāt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ě rā' mūs
 { ě rā' tīs
 { ě' rant

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { es' sēm
 { es' sēs
 { es' sēt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { es sē' mūs
 { es sē' tīs
 { es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have been advised

(wanting)

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ě' rō
 { ě' rīs
 { ě' rīt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ě' rī mūs
 { ě' rī tīs
 { ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. mó nē' rē, *be thou advised*

mō nē' mī nī, *be ye advised*

Fut. mó nē' tōr, *thou shalt be a.*

mō nē' tōr, *he shall be adv.*

mō nen' tōr, *they shall be adv.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mǒ nē' rī, to be advised	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	mǒ' nī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě	} to have been advised
“ Acc.	mǒ' nī tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	mǒ' nī tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
“ Acc.	mǒ' nī tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	
Fut.	mǒ' nī tūm ī' rī, to be about to be advised	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mǒ' nī tūs, mǒ' nī tā, mǒ' nī tūm, advised
Gerundive.	mǒ nen' dūs, mǒ nen' dā, mǒ nen' dūm, to be advised, deserving to be advised

Examples for Practice:

hābēō, -ērē, to have, maintain	dēbēō, -ērē, to owe
ādhībēō, -ērē, to employ, apply	exercēō, -ērē, to exercise
pārēō, -ērē, to obey	nōcēō, -ērē, to hurt, do harm
tācēō, -ērē, to be silent	terrēō, -ērē, to frighten
plācēō, -ērē, to please	vālēō, -ērē, to avail, be well
praebēō, -ērē, to afford, give	cōercēō, -ērē, to restrain

[127. 128.]

320. Third Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
lěgō, -ērē, to read	lěgī	lectūm

INDICATIVE.

lě' gō, I read
lě' gīs, thou readest
lě' gīt, he reads
lě' gī mūs, we read
lě' gī tīs, you read
lě' gunt, they read

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lě' gām, may I read
lě' gās, read thou
lě' gāt, let him read
lě' gā' mūs, let us read
lě' gā' tīs, read ye
lě' gant, let them read

Imperfect.

lě' gē' bām, I was reading	lě' gē' rēm, I should read
lě' gē' bās, thou wast reading	lě' gē' rēs, thou wouldst read
lě' gē' bāt, he was reading	lě' gē' rēt, he would read
lě' gē' bā' mūs, we were reading	lě' gē' rē' mūs, we should read
lě' gē' bā' tīs, you were reading	lě' gē' rē' tīs, you would read
lě' gē' bant, they were reading	lě' gē' rent, they would read

INDICATIVE.

lē' gām, *I shall read*
 lē' gēs, *thou wilt read*
 lē' gēt, *he will read*
 lē gē' mūs, *we shall read*
 lē gē' tīs, *you will read*
 lē' gent, *they will read*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

lec tū' rūš,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>be about</i> <i>to read</i>
-ā, -ūm		
lec tū' rī,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\}$	
-ae, -ā		

Perfect.

lē' gī, <i>I (have) read</i>	lē' gē rīm, <i>I may have read</i>
lē gi' stī, <i>thou hast read</i>	lē' gē rīs, <i>thou mayest have read</i>
lē' gīt, <i>he has read</i>	lē' gē rīt, <i>he may have read</i>
lē' gī mūs, <i>we have read</i>	lē gē rī mūs, <i>we may have read</i>
lē gi' stīs, <i>you have read</i>	lē gē rī tīs, <i>you may have read</i>
lē gē' runt, <i>they have read</i>	lē' gē rint, <i>they may have read</i>

Pluperfect.

lē' gē rām, <i>I had read</i>	lē gis' sēm <i>I should have read</i>
lē' gē rās, <i>thou hadst read</i>	lē gis' sēs, <i>thou wouldst have read</i>
lē' gē rāt, <i>he had read</i>	lē gis' sēt, <i>he would have read</i>
lē gē rā' mūs, <i>we had read</i>	lē gis sē' mūs, <i>we should have r.</i>
lē gē rā' tīs, <i>you had read</i>	lē gis sē' tīs, <i>you would have r.</i>
lē' gē rant, <i>they had read</i>	lē gis' sent, <i>they would have read</i>

Future Perfect.

lē' gē rō, <i>I shall have read</i>	(wanting)
lē' gē rīs, <i>thou wilt have read</i>	
lē' gē rīt, <i>he will have read</i>	
lē gē rī mūs, <i>we shall have read</i>	
lē gē rī tīs, <i>you will have read</i>	
lē' gē rint, <i>they will have read</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. lē' gē, <i>read thou</i>	Plur. lē' gī tē, <i>read ye</i>
Fut. " lē' gī tō, <i>thou shalt read</i>	" lē gī tō' tē, <i>ye shall read</i>
" lē' gī tō, <i>he shall read</i>	" lē gun' tō, <i>they shall read</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	lē' gē rē, <i>to read</i>	
Perf.	lē gis' sē, <i>to have read</i>	
Fut. Sing. Nom.	lec tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{es' sē} \\ \text{es' sē} \end{array} \right\}$
" Acc.	lec tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	
Plur. Nom.	lec tū' rī, -ae, -ā	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{es' sē} \\ \text{es' sē} \end{array} \right\}$
" Acc.	lec tū' rōs, -ās, -ā	

to be about to read

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *lě' gens, lě gen' tīs, reading*

Fut. *lec tū' rūs, lec tū' rǎ, lec tū' rūm, about to read*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. *lě gen' dī, of reading*

Dat. *lě gen' dō, for reading*

Acc. *lě gen' dūm, reading*

Abl. *lě gen' dō, by reading*

lec' tūm } to read
lec' tū }

[133. 134.]

321. Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

lě' gōr, I am read

lě' gē rīs, thou art read

lě' gī tūr, he is read

lě' gī mūr, we are read

lě gī' mī nī, you are read

lě gun' tūr, they are read

Present.

lě' gār, may I be read

lě gā' rīs, be thou read

lě gā' tūr, let him be read

lě gā' mūr, let us be read

lě gā' mī nī, be ye read

lě gan' tūr, let them be read

Imperfect.

lě gē' bār, I was read

lě gē bā' rīs, thou wast read

lě gē bā' tūr, he was read

lě gē bā' mūr, we were read

lě gē bā' mī nī, you were read

lě gē ban' tūr, they were read

lě' gē rēr, I should be read

lě gē rē' rīs, thou wouldst be read

lě gē rē' tūr, he would be read

lě gē rē' mūr, we should be read

lě gē rē' mī nī, you would be read

lě gē ren' tūr, they would be read

Future.

lě' gār, I shall be read

lě gē' rīs, thou wilt be read

lě gē' tūr, he will be read

lě gē' mūr, we shall be read

lě gē' mī nī, you will be read

lě gen' tūr, they will be read

(wanting)

Perfect.

I was or have been read

I may have been read

lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sūm} \\ \text{ēs} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$

lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right.$

lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sū' mūs} \\ \text{es' tīs} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$

lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been read</i>		<i>I should have been read</i>	
lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{ ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{ es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě rā' mūs ě rā' tīs ě' rant	lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ es sē' mūs es sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been read</i>		
lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ām	{ ě' rō ě' rīs ě' rīt	(wanting)
lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě' rī mūs ě' rī tīs ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. le' gě rě, <i>be thou read</i>	le' gī' mī nī, <i>be ye read</i>
Fut. le' gī tōr, <i>thou shalt be read</i>	le' gun' tōr, <i>they shall be read</i>
le' gī tōr, <i>he shall be read</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	le' gī, <i>to be read</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. lec' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sē
"	Acc. lec' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sē
Plur.	Nom. lec' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sē
"	Acc. lec' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sē
Fut.	lec' tūm ī rī, <i>to be about to be read</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	lec' tūs, lec' tǎ, lec' tūm, <i>read</i>
Gerundive.	le' gen' dūs, le' gen' dǎ, le' gen' dūm, <i>to be read, de-serving to be read</i>

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
ēmō, -ērě, <i>to buy</i>	ēmī	emptūm
scribō, -ērě, <i>to write</i>	scripsī	scriptūm
āgō, -ērě, <i>to drive</i>	ēgī	actūm
ācūō, -ērě, <i>to whet</i>	ācūī	ācūtūm

322. Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
audīō, -īrē, *to hear*

Perfect.
audīvī

Supine.
audītūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ō, *I hear*
au' dīs, *thou hearest*
au' dīt, *he hears*
au dī' mūs, *we hear*
au dī' tīs, *you hear*
au' dī unt, *they hear*

au' dī ām, *may I hear*
au' dī ās, *hear thou*
au' dī āt, *let him hear*
au dī ā' mūs, *let us hear*
au dī ā' tīs, *hear ye*
au' dī ant, *let them hear*

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bām, *I was hearing*
au dī ē' bās, *thou wast hearing*
au dī ē' bāt, *he was hearing*
au dī ē' bā' mūs, *we were hearing*
au dī ē' bā' tīs, *you were hearing*
au dī ē' bant, *they were hearing*

au dī' rēm, *I should hear*
au dī' rēs, *thou wouldst hear*
au dī' rēt, *he would hear*
au dī rē' mūs, *we should hear*
au dī rē' tīs, *you would hear*
au dī' rent, *they would hear*

Future.

au' dī ām, *I shall hear*
au' dī ēs, *thou wilt hear*
au' dī ēt, *he will hear*
au dī ē' mūs, *we shall hear*
au dī ē' tīs, *you will hear*
au' dī ent, *they will hear*

au dī tū' rūs,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{be about} \\ \text{to hear} \end{array} \right\}$
-ā, -ūm		
au dī tū' rī,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \end{array} \right\}$	
-ae, -ā		

Perfect.

au dī' vī, *I (have) heard*
au dī vi' stī, *thou hast heard*
au dī' vīt, *he has heard*
au dī' vī mūs, *we have heard*
au dī vi' stīs, *you have heard*
au dī vē' runt, *they have heard*

au dī' vē rīm, *I may have heard*
au dī' vē rīs, *thou mayest have h.*
au dī' vē rīt, *he may have heard*
au dī vē rī mūs, *we may have h.*
au dī vē rī tīs, *you may have h.*
au dī' vē rint, *they may have h.*

Pluperfect.

au dī' vē rām, *I had heard*
au dī' vē rās, *thou hadst heard*
au dī' vē rāt, *he had heard*
au dī vē rā' mūs, *we had heard*
au dī vē rā' tīs, *you had heard*
au dī' vē rant, *they had heard*

au dī vis' sēm, *I should have h.*
au dī vis' sēs, *thou wouldst h. h.*
au dī vis' sēt, *he would have h.*
au dī vis sē' mūs, *we should h. h.*
au dī vis sē' tīs, *you would h. h.*
au dī vis' sent, *they would h. h.*

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

au dī' vē rō, *I shall have heard*
 au dī' vē rīs, *thou wilt have heard*
 au dī' vē rīt, *he will have heard*
 au dī' vē rī mūs, *we shall have h.*
 au dī' vē rī tīs, *you will have h.*
 au dī' vē rint, *they will have h.*

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. au' dī, *hear thou* au dī' tē, *hear ye*
 Fut. au dī' tō, *thou shalt hear* au dī tō' tē, *ye shall hear*
 au dī' tō, *he shall hear* au dī un' tō, *they shall hear*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au dī' rē, *to hear*
 Perf. au dī vis' sē, *to have heard*
 Fut. Sing. Nom. au dī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
 Plur. Nom. au dī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē

} *to be about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. au' dī ens, au dī en' tīs, *hearing*
 Future. au dī tū' rūš, au dī tū' rā, au dī tū' rūm, *about to hear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. au dī en' dī, *of hearing*
 Dat. au dī en' dō, *for hearing*
 Acc. au dī en' dūm, *hearing*
 Abl. au dī en' dō, *by hearing*

au dī' tūm }
 au dī' tū } *to hear*

[155. 156.]

323. Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ōr, *I am heard* au' dī ār, *may I be heard*
 au dī' rīs, *thou art heard* au dī ā' rīs, *be thou heard*
 au dī' tūr, *he is heard* au dī ā' tūr, *let him be heard*
 au dī' mūr, *we are heard* au dī ā' mūr, *let us be heard*
 au dī' mī nī, *you are heard* au dī ā' mī nī, *be ye heard*
 au dī un' tūr, *they are heard* au dī an' tūr, *let them be heard*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bār, <i>I was heard</i>	au dī' rēr, <i>I should be heard</i>
au dī ē' bā' rīs, <i>thou wast heard</i>	au dī rē' rīs, <i>thou wouldst be h.</i>
au dī ē' bā' tūr, <i>he was heard</i>	au dī rē' tūr, <i>he would be heard</i>
au dī ē' bā' mūr, <i>we were heard</i>	au dī rē' mūr, <i>we should be h.</i>
au dī ē' bā' mī nī, <i>you were h.</i>	au dī rē' mī nī, <i>you would be h.</i>
au dī ē' ban' tūr, <i>they were h.</i>	au dī ren' tūr, <i>they would be h.</i>

Future.

au' dī ār, <i>I shall be heard</i>	(wanting)
au dī ē' rīs, <i>thou wilt be heard</i>	
au dī ē' tūr, <i>he will be heard</i>	
au dī ē' mūr, <i>we shall be heard</i>	
au dī ē' mī nī, <i>you will be heard</i>	
au dī en' tūr, <i>they will be heard</i>	

Perfect.

<i>I was or have been heard</i>	<i>I may have been heard</i>
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm
{ sūm	{ sīm
{ ěs	{ sis
{ est	{ sīt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ
{ sū' mūs	{ sī' mūs
{ e' stīs	{ sī' tīs
{ sunt	{ sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been heard</i>	<i>I should have been heard</i>
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm
{ ě' rām	{ es' sēm
{ ě' rās	{ es' sēs
{ ě' rāt	{ es' sēt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ
{ ě rā' mūs	{ es sē' mūs
{ ě rā' tīs	{ es sē' tīs
{ ě' rant	{ es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have been heard</i>	(wanting)
au dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	
{ ě' rō	
{ ě' rīs	
{ ě' rīt	
au dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	
{ ě' rī mūs	
{ ě' rī tīs	
{ ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.		Plural.
Pres.	au dī' rē, <i>be thou heard</i>	au	dī' mī nī, <i>be ye heard</i>
Fut.	au dī' tōr, <i>thou shalt be h.</i>		
	au dī' tōr, <i>he shall be heard</i>	au	dī un' tōr, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	au dī' rī, <i>to be heard</i>		
Perf. Sing.	Nom. au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē	}	<i>to have been heard</i>
	“ Acc. au dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē		
Plur.	Nom. au dī' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē		
	“ Acc. au dī' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē		
Fut.	au dī' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be heard</i>		

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	au dī' tūs, au dī' tā, au dī' tūm, <i>heard</i>
Gerundive.	au dī en' dūs, au dī en' dā, au dī en' dūm, <i>to be heard, deserving to be heard</i>

Examples for Practice:

dormiō, -irē, <i>to sleep</i>	vestiō, -irē, <i>to clothe</i>
custodiō, -irē, <i>to guard</i>	lenniō, -irē, <i>to appease</i>
erudiō, -irē, <i>to instruct</i>	nūtriō, -irē, <i>to nourish</i>
impediō, -irē, <i>to hinder</i>	pūniō, -irē, <i>to punish</i>
condiō, -irē, <i>to season</i>	fīniō, -irē, <i>to finish</i>

[157. 158.]

Deponent Verbs.

324. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice with an active signification, as: hortōr, hortātūs sūm, hortārī, *to exhort*, the Perfect hortātūs sūm representing at the same time the Supine hortātūm.

325. Deponent Verbs have Four Participles:

- the Present Participle, as: hortans, *exhorting*
- the Perfect Participle, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*
- the Fut. Part. Act., as: hortātūrūs, *being about to exhort*
- the Fut. Part. Pass., as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

326. The Future Infinitive is always to be given in the active form, thus: hortātūrūs essē, *to be about to exhort* (not hortātūm irī).

327. Deponent of the First Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
hortōr, -ārī, to exhort

Perfect.
hortātūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I exhort
hor' tōr
hor tā' rīs
hor tā' tūr
hor tā' mūr
hor tā' mī nī
hor tan' tūr

I may exhort
hor' tēr
hor tē' rīs
hor tē' tūr
hor tē' mūr
hor tē' mī nī
hor ten' tūr

Imperfect.

I was exhorting
hor tā' bār
hor tā bā' rīs
hor tā bā' tūr
hor tā bā' mūr
hor tā bā' mī nī
hor tā ban' tūr

I should exhort
hor tā' rēr
hor tā rē' rīs
hor tā rē' tūr
hor tā rē' mūr
hor tā rē' mī nī
hor tā ren' tūr

Future.

I shall exhort
hor tā' bōr
hor tā' bē rīs
hor tā' bī tūr
hor tā' bī mūr
hor tā bī' mī nī
hor tā bun' tūr

I may be about to exhort

hor tā tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	}	sīm sīs sīt
hor tā tū' rī, -ae, -ā	}	sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

Perfect.

I (have) exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm	}	sūm ēs est
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā	}	sū' mūs e' stīs sunt

I may have exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm	}	sīm sīs sīt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā	}	sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had exhorted

I should have exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rā' mūs ě' rā' tīs ě' rant	hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es' sē' mūs es' sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have exhorted

(wanting)

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rō ě' rīs ě' rīt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs ě' rī tīs ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. hor tā' rě, <i>exhort thou</i>	hor tā' mī nī, <i>exhort ye</i>
Fut. hor tā' tōr, <i>thou shalt exhort</i>	hor tan' tōr, <i>they shall exhort</i>
hor tā' tōr, <i>he shall exhort</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	hor tā' rī, <i>to exhort</i>	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě
Plur. Nom.	hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě
Fut. Sing. Nom.	hor tā' tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě
Plur. Nom.	hor tā' tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě
“ Acc.	hor tā' tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě

} *to have exhorted*

} *to be about to exhort*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	hor' tans, hor tan' tīs, <i>exhorting</i>
Perfect.	hor tā' tūs, hor tā' tā, hor tā' tūm, <i>having exhorted</i>
Fut. Act.	hor tā' tū' rūs, hor tā' tū' rā, hor tā' tū' rūm, <i>about to exhort</i>
Gerundive.	hor tan' dūs, hor tan' dā, hor tan' dūm, <i>to be exhorted</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. hor tan' dī, of exhorting
 Dat. hor tan' dō, for exhorting
 Acc. hor tan' dūm, exhorting
 Abl. hor tan' dō, by exhorting

hor tā' tūm } to exhort
 hor tā' tū }

Examples for Practice:

pscōr, -ārī, to fish
 ĩmītōr, -ārī, to imitate
 rēcōrdōr, -ārī, to remember
 proeliōr, -ārī, to fight
 laetōr, -ārī, to rejoice (at)
 vēnōr, -ārī, to hunt

arbĭtrōr, -ārī, to regard
 cōnōr, -ārī, to try
 cōmĭtōr, -ārī, to accompany
 vāgōr, -ārī, to roam
 mĭrōr, -ārī, to admire
 mĭnōr, -ārī, to threaten

[161. 162.]

328. Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

vērēōr, -ērī, to fear

INDICATIVE.

I fear

vě' rě ōr
 vě rě' rĭs
 vě rě' tŭr
 vě rě' mŭr
 vě rě' mĭ nĭ
 vě ren' tŭr

I was fearing

vě rě' bŕr
 vě rě bā' rĭs
 vě rě bā' tŭr
 vě rě bā' mŭr
 vě rě bā' mĭ nĭ
 vě rě ban' tŭr

I shall fear

vě rě' bŕr
 vě rě' bĕ rĭs
 vě rě' bĭ tŭr
 vě rě' bĭ mŭr
 vě rě bĭ' mĭ nĭ
 vě rě bun' tŭr

Perfect.

vĕrĭtŭs sŭm

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I may fear

vě' rě ār
 vě rě ā' rĭs
 vě rě ā' tŭr
 vě rě ā' mŭr
 vě rě ā' mĭ nĭ
 vě rě an' tŭr

Imperfect.

I should fear

vě rě' rĕr
 vě rě rĕ' rĭs
 vě rě rĕ' tŭr
 vě rě rĕ' mŭr
 vě rě rĕ' mĭ nĭ
 vě rě ren' tŭr

Future.

I may be about to fear

vě rĭ tŭ' rŭs, { sĭm
 -ā, -ŭm } sĭs
 sĭt
 vě rĭ tŭ' rĭ, { sĭ' mŭs
 -ac, -ă } sĭ' tĭs
 sint

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

<i>I (have) feared</i>		<i>I may have feared</i>
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ sŭm ěs est	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm { sĭm sĭs sĭt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ sŭ' mŭs e' stĭs sunt	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ { sĭ' mŭs sĭ' tĭs sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had feared</i>		<i>I should have feared</i>
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm { es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě rā' mŭs ě rā' tĭs ě' rant	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ { es sē' mŭs es sē' tĭs es' sent

Future Perfect.

<i>I shall have feared</i>		(wanting)
vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rō ě' rĭs ě' rĭt	
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě' rĭ mŭs ě' rĭ tĭs ě' runt	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. vě rē' rē, fear thou	vě rē' mĭ nĭ, fear ye
Fut. vě rē' tōr, thou shalt fear	
vě rē' tōr, he shall fear	vě ren' tōr, they shall fear

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	vě rē' rĭ, to fear	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm es' sě	} to have feared
"	Acc. vě' rī tŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom. vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
"	Acc. vě' rī tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	
Fut. Sing.	Nom. vě rĭ tŭ' rŭs, -ǎ, -ŭm es' sě	} to be about to fear
"	Acc. vě rĭ tŭ' rŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom. vě rĭ tŭ' rĭ, -ae, -ǎ es' sě	
"	Acc. vě rĭ tŭ' rōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	vě' rens, vě ren' tīs, <i>fearing</i>
Perfect.	vě' rī tūs, vě' rī tá, vě' rī tūm, <i>having feared</i>
Fut. Act.	vě rī tū' rūš, vě rī tū' rá, vě rī tū' rūm, <i>about to fear</i>
Gerundive.	vě ren' dūs, vě ren' dā, vě ren' dūm, <i>to be feared</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	vě ren' dī, <i>of fearing</i>	
Dat.	vě ren' dō, <i>for fearing</i>	
Acc.	vě ren' dūm, <i>fearing</i>	vě' rī tūm } <i>to fear</i>
Abl.	vě ren' dō, <i>by fearing</i>	vě' rī tū }

Examples for Practice:

licěōr, -ērī, <i>to bid</i>	tűěōr, -ērī, <i>to look to</i>
pollicěōr, -ērī, <i>to promise</i>	intűěōr, -ērī, <i>to look at</i>
měřěōr, -ērī, <i>to deserve</i>	řevěřěōr, -ērī, <i>to respect</i>

[163. 164.]

329. Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

sěquōr, -ī, *to follow*

sěcūtūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sě' quōr, *I follow*
 sě' quě rīs
 sě' quī tūr
 sě' quī mūr
 sě quī' mī nī
 sě quun' tūr

sě' quār, *I may follow*
 sě quā' rīs
 sě quā' tūr
 sě quā' mūr
 sě quā' mī nī
 sě quan' tūr

Imperfect.

sě quē' bār, *I was following*
 sě quē' bā' rīs
 sě quē' bā' tūr
 sě quē' bā' mūr
 sě quē' bā' mī nī
 sě quē' ban' tūr

sě' quě řēr, *I should follow*
 sě quě řē' rīs
 sě quě řē' tūr
 sě quě řē' mūr
 sě quě řē' mī nī
 sě quě ren' tūr

Future.

I may be about to follow

I shall follow
 sě' quār
 sě quē' rīs
 sě quē' tūr
 sě quē' mūr
 sě quē' mī nī
 sě quen' tūr

sě cū tū' rūš,	{ sīm sīs sīt
-ā, -ūm	
sě cū tū' rī,	
-ae, -ā	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I (have) followed

I may have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sūm	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sīm
		ēs			sīs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	est	sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sīt
		sū' mūs			sī' mūs
	{	e' stīs		{	sī' tīs
		sunt			sint

Pluperfect.

I had followed

I should have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm
		ě' rās			es' sēs
		ě' rāt			es' sēt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě rā' mūs	sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es sē' mūs
		ě rā' tīs			es sē' tīs
		ě' rant			es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have followed

(wanting)

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rō
		ě' rīs
		ě' rīt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs
		ě' rī tīs
		ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	sě' quě rě, follow thou	sě quī' mī nī, follow ye
Fut.	sě' quī tōr, thou shalt follow	
	sě' quī tōr, he shall follow	sě quun' tōr, they shall follow

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	sě' quī, to follow			
Perf. Sing.	Nom	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě	} to have followed	
	Acc.	sě cū' tūm, -ǎm, -ūm es' sě		
	Plur.	Nom.		sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě
		Acc.		sě cū' tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	sě cū tū' rūs -ǎ, -ūm es' sě	} to be about to follow	
	Acc.	sě cū tū' rūm, -ǎm, -ūm es' sě		
	Plur.	Nom.		sě cū tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ es' se
		Acc.		sě cū tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě

PARTICIPLES.

Present. sě' quens, sě quen' tīs, *following*
Perfect. sě cū' tūs, sě cū' tǎ, sě cū' tūm, *having followed*
Fut. Act. sě cū' tū' rūš, sě cū' tū' rǎ, sě cū' tū' rūm, *about to follow*
Gerundive. sě quen' dūs, sě quen' dǎ, sě quen' dūm, *to be followed*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. sě quen' dī, *of following*
 Dat. sě quen' dō, *for following*
 Acc. sě quen' dūm, *following*
 Abl. sě quen' dō, *by following*

sě cū' tūm }
 sě cū' tū } *to follow*

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.
lōquōr, -ī, <i>to speak</i>	lōcūtūs sūm
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	fructūs sūm
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	functūs sūm

[165. 166.]

330. Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

blandīōr, -īrī

blandītūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

blan' dī ōr, <i>I flatter</i>	blan' dī ār, <i>I may flatter</i>
blan dī' rīs	blan dī ā' rīs
blan dī' tūr	blan dī ā' tūr
blan dī' mūr	blan dī ā' mūr
blan dī' mī nī	blan dī ā' mī nī
blan dī un' tūr	blan dī an' tūr

Imperfect.

blan dī ē' bār, <i>I was flattering</i>	blan dī' rēr, <i>I should flatter</i>
blan dī ē' bā' rīs	blan dī rē' rīs
blan dī ē' bā' tūr	blan dī rē' tūr
blan dī ē' bā' mūr	blan dī rē' mūr
blan dī ē' bā' mī nī	blan dī rē' mī nī
blan dī ē' ban' tūr	blan dī ren' tūr

Future.

blan' dī ār, <i>I shall flatter</i>	{ sīm sīs sīt }	{ be about to flatter }
blan dī ē' rīs		
blan dī ē' tūr	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs }	{ }
blan dī ē' mūr		
blan dī ē' mī nī	{ sint }	{ }
blan dī en' tūr		

blan dī tū' rūš, -ǎ, -ūm
 blan dī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ

INDICATIVE.

I (have) flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sūm
		ēs
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	est
		sū' mūs
		e' stīs
		sunt

I had flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām
		ě' rās
		ě' rāt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě rā' mūs
		ě rā' tīs
		ě' rant

I shall have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rō
		ě' rīs
		ě' rīt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs
		ě' rī tīs
		ě' runt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I may have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sīm
		sīs
		sīt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sī' mūs
		sī' tīs
		sint

Pluperfect.

I should have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm
		es' sēs
		es' sēt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es sē' mūs
		es sē' tīs
		es' sent

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. blan dī' rě, flatter thou	blan dī' mī nī, flatter ye
Fut. blan dī' tōr, thou shalt flatter	
blan dī' tōr, he shall flatter	blan dī un' tōr, they shall flatter

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	blan dī' rī, to flatter		
Perf. Sing.	Nom.	blan dī' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	} to have flattered
	Acc.	blan dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm	
Plur.	Nom.	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ǎ	} to be about to flatter
	Acc.	blan dī' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	blan dī tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ūm	} to be about to flatter
	Acc.	blan dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	
Plur.	Nom.	blan dī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	} to be about to flatter
	Acc.	blan dī tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	blan' dī ens, blan dī en' tīs, <i>flattering</i>
Perfect.	blan dī' tūs, blan dī' tǎ, blan dī' tūm, <i>having flattered</i>
Fut. Act.	blan dī tū' rūš, blan dī tū' ră, blan dī tū' rūm, <i>about to flatter</i>
Gerundive.	blan dī en' dūs, blan dī en' dǎ, blan dī en' dūm, <i>to be flattered</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	blan dī en' dī, <i>of flattering</i>	
Dat.	blan dī en' dō, <i>for flattering</i>	
Acc.	blan dī en' dūm, <i>flattering</i>	blan dī' tūm } <i>to flatter</i> blan dī' tū }
Abl.	blan dī en' dō, <i>by flattering</i>	

Examples for Practice:

largiōr, -īrī, <i>to bestow</i>	partīōr, -īrī, <i>to share, divide</i>
mentiōr, -īrī, <i>to lie</i>	pōtiōr, -īrī, <i>to possess one's self</i>
mōliōr, -īrī, <i>to strive</i>	sortiōr, -īrī, <i>to draw lots</i>

[167. 168.]

Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs in iō.

331. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **ī** before the ending of the Present, as: cǎpĕrĕ, *to take*; cǎpiō, *I take*. This **ī** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **ī** or **ĕ**, except in the third person of the future active: cǎpiĕt, *he will take*.

Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
cǎpiō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to take</i>	cĕpī	captūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I take
cǎ' pī ō
cǎ' pīs
cǎ' pīt
cǎ' pī mūs
cǎ' pī tīs
cǎ' pī unt

Present.

I may take
cǎ' pī ām
cǎ' pī ās
cǎ' pī āt
cǎ pī ā' mūs
cǎ pī ā' tīs
cǎ' pī ant

INDICATIVE.

I was taking

că pī ē' bām
că pī ē' bās
că pī ē' bāt
că pī ē bā' mūs
că pī ē bā' tīs
că pī ē' bant

I shall take

că' pī ām
că' pī ēs
că' pī ēt
că pī ē' mūs
că pī ē' tīs
că' pī ent

Imperfect.

I might take

că' pē rēm
că' pē rēs
că' pē rēt
că pē rē' mūs
că pē rē' tīs
că' pē rent

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

I may be about to take

cap tū' rū̄s,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right.$
-ă, -ū̄m	
cap tū' rī,	
-ae, -ă	sint

Perfect.

I have taken or I took
cē' pī (like lēgī)

I may have taken
cē' pē rīm (like lēgērīm)

Pluperfect.

I had taken
cē' pē rām (like lēgērām)

I might have taken
cē pis' sēm (like lēgissēm)

Future Perfect.

I shall have taken
cē' pē rō (like lēgērō)

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. că' pē, *take thou*
Fut. că' pī tō, *thou shalt take*
că' pī tō, *he shall take*

că' pī tē, *take ye*
că pī tō' tē, *ye shall take*
că pī un' tō, *they shall take*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. că' pē rē, *to take*
Perf. cē pis' sē, *to have taken*
Fut. Sing. Nom. cap tū' rū̄s, -ă, -ū̄m es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rū̄m, -ām, -ū̄m es' sē
Plur. Nom. cap tū' rī, -ae, -ă es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rōs, -ās, -ă es' sē

} *to be about to take*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. că' pīens, -tīs, *taking*

Future. cap tū' rū̄s, -ă, -ū̄m, *about to take*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	că pī en' dī, <i>of taking</i>	
Dat.	că pī en' dō, <i>for taking</i>	
Acc.	că pī en' dūm, <i>taking</i>	cap' tūm } <i>to take</i>
Abl.	că pī en' dō, <i>by taking</i>	cap' tū }

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I am taken

I may be taken

că' pī ōr
că' pē rīs
că' pī tūr
că' pī mūr
că pī' mī nī
că pī un' tūr

că' pī ār
că pī ā' rīs
că pī ā' tūr
că pī ā' mūr
că pī ā' mī nī
că pī an' tūr

Imperfect.

I was taken

I might be taken

că pī ē' bār
că pī ē' bā' rīs
că pī ē' bā' tūr
că pī ē' bā' mūr
că pī ē' bā' mī nī
că pī ē' ban' tūr

că' pē rēr
că pē rē' rīs
că pē rē' tūr
că pē rē' mūr
că pē rē' mī nī
că pē ren' tūr

Future.

I shall be taken

(wanting)

că' pī ār
că pī ē' rīs
că pī ē' tūr
că pī ē' mūr
că pī ē' mī nī
că pī en' tūr

Perfect.

I was or have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm sūm, &c.

I may have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm sīm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm ē' rām, &c.

I might have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm es' sēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm ē' rō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	că' pĕ rĕ, <i>be thou taken</i>	că pĭ' mĭ nĭ, <i>be ye taken</i>
Fut.	că' pĭ tōr, <i>thou shalt be taken</i>	
	că' pĭ tōr, <i>he shall be taken</i>	că pĭ un' tōr, <i>they shall be taken</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	că' pĭ, <i>to be taken</i>	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	cap' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	es' sĕ
“ Acc.	cap' tŭm, -ăm, -ŭm	es' sĕ
Plur. Nom.	cap' tĭ, -ae, -ă	es' sĕ
“ Acc.	cap' tōs, -ās, -ă	es' sĕ
Fut.	cap' tŭm ĭ' rĭ, <i>to be about to be taken</i>	

} *to have been taken*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	cap' tūs, -ă, -ŭm, <i>taken</i>
Gerundive.	că pĭ en' dŭs, că pĭ en' dă, că pĭ en' dŭm, <i>to be taken</i>

332. Verbs of the **Third Conjugation** ending in **ĭō, ĭōr**, are the following:

Active Verbs.

căpĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to take</i>	jăcĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to throw</i>
cŭpĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to desire</i>	păriō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to bring forth</i>
făcĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to make</i>	quătĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to shake</i>
fōdĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to dig</i>	răpĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to seize</i>
fŭgĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to flee</i>	săpĭō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to be wise</i>

and Compounds of the obsolete

[-lăcĭō, *I entice*]

[-spĕcĭō, *I see*]

Deponent Verbs.

grădĭōr, -ĭ, <i>to go</i>	pătĭōr, -ĭ, <i>to suffer</i>
mōriōr, -ĭ, <i>to die</i>	

[137. 138.]

For their Principal Parts see **368**.

Special Forms in Conjugation.

333. The following **Special Forms** are found in many verbs:

Perfects in **ăvĭ, ĕvĭ, ĭvĭ**, and the tenses derived from them, drop the **v** before **s** or **r**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **ĭvĭ**, which do not admit the contraction of **i-e** before **r**. In like manner **nōvĭ**, *I know*, and its compounds are contracted.

	āvī		ēvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	āmāvistī	āmāstī	dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
	āmāvistīs	āmāstīs	dēlēvistīs	dēlēstīs
	āmāvērunt	āmārunt	dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
SUBJ.	āmāvērīm	āmārīm, &c.	dēlēvērīm	dēlērīm, &c.
INF.	āmāvissē	āmāssē	dēlēvissē	dēlēssē

Pluperfect.

IND.	āmāvērām	āmārām, &c.	dēlēvērām	dēlērām, &c.
SUBJ.	āmāvissēm	āmāssēm, &c.	dēlēvissēm	dēlēssēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

IND.	āmāvērō	āmārō, &c.	dēlēvērō	dēlērō, &c.
------	---------	------------	----------	-------------

	ivī		ōvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	audīvistī	audīstī	nōvistī	nōstī
	audīvistīs	audīstīs	nōvistīs	nōstīs
	audīvērunt	audīērunt	nōvērunt	nōrunt
SUBJ.	audīvērīm	audīērīm, &c.	nōvērīm	nōrīm, &c.
INF.	audīvissē	audīssē	nōvissē	nōssē

Pluperfect.

IND.	audīvērām	audīērām, &c.	nōvērām	nōrām, &c.
SUBJ.	audīvissēm	audīssēm, &c.	nōvissēm	nōssēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

IND.	audīvērō	audīērō, &c.	nōvērō	—
------	----------	--------------	--------	---

Mark that the Future Perfect of nōvī is nōvērō uncontracted.

334. In the Perfect Ind. Act. (3rd pers. plur.) ērē for ērunt is often found, thus:

āmāvērē for āmāvērunt, *they (have) loved*
 mōnūērē “ mōnūērunt, *they (have) advised*
 lēgērē “ lēgērunt, *they (have) read*
 audīvērē “ audīērunt, *they (have) heard*

335. In the second person of the **Passive** we often find **rě** for **rīs**, thus:

- ămērě for ămērīs, *thou mayest be loved*
ămābārě “ ămābārīs, *thou wast loved*
ămārērě “ ămārērīs, *thou mightest be loved*
ămābērě “ ămābērīs, *thou will be loved*

This ending, however, is rarely used in the Present Indicative, but almost exclusively in the Future.

336. The **Imperatives** of *dīcērě, to say; dūcērě, to lead; făcērě, to make, and ferrě, to bear,* are: *dīc, dūc, făc, fěr,* respectively. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *făciō* which change **ă** into **ī**, as: *perfīcě, achieve thou* (see **368.**).

337. The **Gerund** and **Gerundive** of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of *endī, endūs,* may end in **undī** and **undūs**, especially after **ī**, as:

- căpiundūs, to be taken; rěpētundūs, to be reclaimed.*

338. For the **Imperative** of *scīō, I know,* the future form *scītō* is always used in the singular, and *scītōtě* in the plural.

[169. 170.]

Formation of the Principal Parts.

339. In forming the principal parts of any verb, we take for a starting point its stem, which is either a **Vowel-stem** or a **Consonant-stem**, according as it ends either in a vowel or a consonant.

340. The **First Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ă**, as: *ămă-rě, Stem: ămă.*

341. The **Second Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**, as: *mōnē-rě, Stem: mōnē.*

342. The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ī**, as: *audī-rě, Stem: audī.*

343. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, as: *lěg-ěrě, Stem: lěg;* or in **u (v)**, as: *stătŭ-ěrě, Stem: stătŭ.* Stems in **u** follow the Consonant-conjugation.

344. As a rule, **Vowel-stems** undergo no change except in some cases the contracting of the final

vowel with the termination, as: *āmō* contracted from *āmā-ō*; they form the Perfect and Supine by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
I. <i>āmā-rě, to love</i>	<i>āmā-vī</i>	<i>āmā-tūm</i>
II. <i>dělē-rě, to destroy</i>	<i>dělē-vī</i>	<i>dělē-tūm</i>
IV. <i>audī-rě, to hear</i>	<i>audī-vī</i>	<i>audī-tūm</i>

345. Consonant-stems are liable to various changes which will be considered below under Third Conjugation.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

346. As already explained, the **First Conjugation** contains all the vowel-stems in **ā**, and forms the **Perfect** and **Supine** by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem. Or, in other words, in the First Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>-ō</i>	<i>-āvī</i>	<i>-ātūm</i>
<i>āmō</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmātūm</i>

Those **Verbs** of the **First Conjugation** which form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently are the following:

347. Perfect in ūī, Supine in Itūm (tūm).

<i>crēpō, -ārě, to creak</i>	<i>crēpūī</i>	<i>crēpītūm</i>
<i>incrēpō, -ārě, to scold</i>	<i>incrēpūī</i>	<i>incrēpītūm</i>
<i>discrēpō, -ārě, to disagree</i>	<i>discrēpūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>cūbō, -ārě, to lie down</i>	<i>cūbūī</i>	<i>cūbītūm</i>
<i>incūbō, -ārě, to lie upon</i>	<i>incūbūī</i>	<i>incūbītūm</i>
<i>accūbō, -ārě, to lie near</i>	<i>accūbūī</i>	<i>accūbītūm</i>

Some Compounds insert **m**, and are of the **Third Conjugation**.

<i>dōmō, -ārě, to tame</i>	<i>dōmūī</i>	<i>dōmītūm</i>
<i>sōnō, -ārě, to sound</i>	<i>sōnūī</i>	<i>sōnītūm, sōnātūrūs</i>
<i>rēsōnō, -ārě, to resound</i>	<i>rēsōnāvī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>tōnō, -ārě, to thunder</i>	<i>tōnūī</i>	<i>tōnītūm</i>
<i>větō, -ārě, to forbid</i>	<i>větūī</i>	<i>větītūm</i>
<i>fricō, -ārě, to rub</i>	<i>fricūī</i>	<i>fricātūm, frictūm</i>
<i>mīcō, -ārě, to shine</i>	<i>mīcūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēmīcō, -ārě, to shine forth</i>	<i>ēmīcūī</i>	<i>ēmīcātūm</i>
<i>dīmīcō, -ārě, to fight</i>	<i>dīmīcāvī</i>	<i>dīmīcātūm</i>

[plicō, *I fold*] *

applicō, -ārē, to apply	{ applicāvī applicūī	applicātūm applicītūm
explicō, -ārē, to unfold	{ explicāvī explicūī	explicātūm explicītūm
implicō, -ārē, to involve	{ implicāvī implicūī	implicātūm implicītūm

Compounds in -plicō from nouns in -plex are regular, as: multīplicō, -ārē, to multiply, from multīplex.

pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtāvī	pōtūm
sēcō, -ārē, to cut	sēcūī	sectūm, sēcātūrūs
dēsēcō, -ārē, to cut down	dēsēcūī	dēsectūm
ēnēcō, -ārē, to slay	{ ēnēcāvī ēnēcūī	ēnēcātūm ēnectūm

348. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm

with lengthened stem-vowel.

jūvō, -ārē	} to assist	jūvī	jūtūm
adjūvō, -ārē		adjūvī	adjūtūm
Fut. Participles: jūvātūrūs, but adjūtūrūs or adjūvātūrūs			
lāvō, -ārē, to wash		lāvī	lāvātūm (lautūm, lōtūm)

349. With Reduplicated Perfect.

Some Verbs of the *First, Second and Third Conjugations* repeat in the *Perfect* the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it, or with *ē*. Compound Verbs omit the reduplication, but Compounds of *dō, I give; stō, I stand; discō, I learn; poscō, I demand*, and some of those of *currō, I run*, retain it.

dō, -ārē, to give	dēdī	dātūm
circumdō, -ārē, to surround	circumdēdī	circumdātūm
pessumdō, -ārē, to ruin	pessumdēdī	pessumdātūm
sātsisdō, -ārē, to give bail	sātsisdēdī	sātsisdātūm
vēnumdō, -ārē, to sell	vēnumdēdī	vēnumdātūm

a is everywhere short, except in **dās**, thou givest; **dā**, give thou.

Like **dō**, are conjugated the Compounds with words of *two syllables*, as: *circumdō, I surround*. The Compounds with words of *one syllable* pass over into the **3d Conjugation**.

* Obsolete forms are inclosed within brackets [].

stō, stārē, to stand	stētī	stātūm
antistō, -ārē, to excel	antistētī	wanting
circumstō, -ārē, to stand around	circumstētī	wanting
constō, -ārē, to consist	constītī	wanting
praestō, -ārē, to afford	praestītī	wanting
distō, -ārē, to be distant	wanting	wanting
exstō, -ārē, to exist	wanting	wanting

Like **antistō**, all Compounds of **stārē** with prepositions of two syllables have **stētī** in the Perfect, but no **Supine**. Those compounded with prepositions of one syllable have **stītī** in the Perfect, and likewise no **Supine**. **distō** and **exstō** have neither Perfect nor **Supine**. [123. 124.]

350. More than half of all **Deponents** in the language are of the **First Conjugation**, and all of these are regular (see **327**).

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

351. The **Second Conjugation**, as we have seen, includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**. In these the **Perfect** and **Supine** regularly add **vī**, **tūm** to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
dēlē-rē, to destroy	dēlē-vī	dēlē-tūm

352. However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the stem-vowel **ē** in the **Perfect**, **vī** becomes **ūī**, and in the **Supine I** is inserted before **tūm**; thus:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ēō -ērē	-ūī	-ītūm
mōnēō mōnērē, to advise	mōnūī	mōnītūm

This is considered the **Regular** formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

353. Many verbs with a regular Perfect in **ūī** want the **Supine**. Such are:

arcēō, -ērē, to keep off	horrēō, -ērē, to shudder
ārēō, -ērē, to be dry	languēō, -ērē, to be weary
callēō, -ērē, to be versed	lātēō, -ērē, to be hid
candēō, -ērē, to shine	liquēō, -ērē, to be fluid
ēgēō, -ērē	mādēō, -ērē, to be wet
indīgēō, -ērē } to be in want	nītēō, -ērē, to glitter
ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent	ōlēō, -ērē, to smell
flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom	pallēō, -ērē, to look pale

pătěō, -ērě, to stand open	stūděō, -ērě, to busy one's self
rīgěō, -ērě, to be stiff	stūpěō, -ērě, to be amazed
rūběō, -ērě, to be red	succensěō, -ērě, to be angry
sīlēō, -ērě, to be silent	tīměō, -ērě, to fear
sorběō, -ērě, to sip	torpěō, -ērě, to be numb
sorděō, -ērě, to be dirty	tūměō, -ērě, to swell
splenděō, -ērě, to gleam	vīgěō, -ērě, to be vigorous
vīřěō, -ērě, to be green	

354. Some verbs, derived mostly from Adjectives, want both **Perfect** and **Supine**:

alběō, -ērě, to be white	flāvěō, -ērě, to be golden yellow
āvěō, -ērě, to long for	hěběō, -ērě, to be blunt
calvěō, -ērě, to be bald	pollěō, -ērě, to be powerful
hūměō, -ērě, to be moist	maerěō, -ērě, to grieve
immīněō, -ērě, to threaten	rěniděō, -ērě, to shine
līvěō, -ērě, to be pale	scătěō, -ērě, to gush
căněō, -ērě, to be gray	squālěō, -ērě, to be filthy

[125. 126.]

355. A great many **Verbs** of the **Second Conjugation** deviate from the regular formation mentioned in **352**.

356. Perfect in **ēvī**, Supine in **ētŭm** (**ītŭm**, **tŭm**):

dělěō, -ērě, to destroy	dělēvī	dělētŭm
flěō, -ērě, to weep	flēvī	flētŭm
něō, -ērě, to spin	nēvī	nētŭm
[plěō, I fill]		
complěō, -ērě	complēvī	complētŭm
implěō, -ērě	implēvī	implētŭm
rěplěō, -ērě	rěplēvī	rěplētŭm
} to fill (up)		
[ōlēō, I grow]		
obsōlēō, -ērě, to go out of use	obsōlēvī	obsōlētŭm
ābōlēō, -ērě, to abolish	ābōlēvī	ābōlītŭm
ādōlēō, -ērě, to grow up	ādōlēvī	ādultŭm

357. Perfect in **ī**, Supine in **tŭm**:

cāvěō, -ērě, to be on one's guard	cāvī	cautŭm
fāvěō, -ērě, to favor	fāvī	fautŭm
fōvēō, -ērě, to cherish	fōvī	fōtŭm
mōvěō, -ērě, to move, trouble	mōvī	mōtŭm
vōvěō, -ērě	vōvī	vōtŭm
děvōvěō, -ērě	děvōvī	děvōtŭm
} to vow, devote		

pāvĕō, -ĕrĕ, to quake for fear	pāvī	wanting
fervĕō, -ĕrĕ, to glow	{ fervī } { ferbūī }	wanting
cōnivĕō, -ĕrĕ, to shut the eyes	{ cōnivī } { cōnixī }	wanting

358. Dropping the ĩ of the Supine:

dōcĕō, -ĕrĕ, to teach	dōcūī	doctūm
tĕnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hold	tĕnūī	(tentūm)
obtĭnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to occupy	obtĭnūī	obtentūm
attĭnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to belong	attĭnūī	wanting
pertĭnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to pertain	pertĭnūī	wanting
abstĭnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to abstain	abstĭnūī	wanting
contĭnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hold together	contĭnūī	wanting
miscĕō, -ĕrĕ, to mix, mingle	miscūī	{ mixtūm } { mistūm }
torrĕō, -ĕrĕ, to roast	torrūī	tostūm
censĕō, -ĕrĕ, to value, think	censūī	censūm
rĕcensĕō, -ĕrĕ, to review	rĕcensūī	{ rĕcensūm } { rĕcensĭtūm }
percensĕō, -ĕrĕ, to survey	percensūī	wanting

359. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

augĕō, -ĕrĕ, to increase	auxī	auctūm
indulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to indulge	indulsī	indultūm
torquĕō, -ĕrĕ, to torture	torsī	tortūm
lūcĕō, -ĕrĕ, to shine	luxī	wanting
lūgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to mourn	luxī	wanting
frīgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be cold	frixī	wanting

[129. 130.]

360. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

ardĕō, -ĕrĕ, to burn	arsī	arsūm
haerĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hang	haesī	haesūm
ādhaerĕō, -ĕrĕ } cōhaerĕō, -ĕrĕ } to stick	ādhaesī cōhaesī	ādhaesūm cōhaesūm
jūbĕō, -ĕrĕ, to order	jussī	jussūm
mānĕō, -ĕrĕ, to stay, remain	mansī	mansūm
rĕmānĕō, -ĕrĕ, to remain	rĕmansī	rĕmansūm
mulcĕō, -ĕrĕ, to soothe	mulsi	mulsūm
permulcĕō, -ĕrĕ, to appease	permulsi	permulsūm
mulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to milk	mulsi	mulsūm

rīdēō, -ērē, to laugh	rīsī	rīsūm
arrīdēō, -ērē, to smile upon	arrīsī	arrīsūm
dērīdēō, -ērē, to laugh at	dērīsī	dērīsūm
suādēō, -ērē, to advise	suāsī	suāsūm
dissuādēō, -ērē, to dissuade	dissuāsī	dissuāsūm
persuādēō, -ērē, to persuade	persuāsī	persuāsūm
tergēō, -ērē } to wipe	tersī	tersūm
tergō, -ērē }		
abstergēō, -ērē, to wipe off	abstersī	abstersūm

Compounds only take the *Second Conjugation*.

algēō, -ērē, to be cold	alsī	wanting
fulgēō, -ērē, to shine	fulsī	wanting
turgēō, -ērē, to swell	tursī	wanting
urgēō, -ērē, to urge	ursī	wanting

361. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm:

prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast	prandī	pransūm
Participle pransūs, in an active sense, <i>having breakfasted</i>		
sēdēō, -ērē, to sit	sēdī	sessūm
circumsēdēō, -ērē, to sit around	circumsēdī	circumsessūm
sūpersēdēō, -ērē, to forbear	sūpersēdī	sūpersessūm
assīdēō, -ērē, to sit by	assēdī	assessūm
insīdēō, -ērē, to sit upon	insēdī	inssessūm
obsīdēō, -ērē, to besiege	obsēdī	obsessūm
possīdēō, -ērē, to possess	possēdī	possessūm
dissīdēō, -ērē, to disagree	dissēdī	wanting
praesīdēō, -ērē, to preside	praesēdī	wanting
rēsīdēō, -ērē, to remain behind	rēsēdī	wanting
vīdēō, -ērē, to see	vīdī	vīsūm
invīdēō, -ērē, to envy	invīdī	invisūm
prōvīdēō, -ērē, to provide	prōvīdī	prōvisūm
strīdēō, -ērē, to whiz, creak	strīdī	wanting

With Reduplication:

mordēō, -ērē, to bite	mōmordī	morsūm
pendēō, -ērē, to hang	pēpendī	pensūm
dēpendēō, -ērē, to hang down	wanting	wanting
impēndēō, -ērē, to hang over	wanting	wanting
spondēō, -ērē, to pledge	spōpondī	sponsūm
respondēō, -ērē, to answer	respondī	responsūm
despondēō, -ērē, to promise	despondī	desponsūm
tondēō, -ērē, to shear	tōtondī	tonsūm

Reduplication, or the repetition of the initial consonant with the following vowel, is generally dropped in Compounds, as: re-*spōndī*.

362. Mark the solitary verb:

<i>cīcō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> } <i>to rouse</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	} 4th Con- jugation.
<i>cīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> }	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	
<i>accīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> , <i>to call in</i>	<i>accīvī</i>	<i>accītūm</i>	
<i>concīō</i> , - <i>īrē</i> , <i>to call together</i>	<i>concīvī</i>	<i>concītūm</i>	

363. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation form the tenses of completed action like the Passive; they are called **Semi-Deponents** (see 277):

<i>audēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to dare</i>	<i>ausūs sūm</i> , <i>I dared</i>
<i>gaudēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to rejoice</i>	<i>gāvīsūs sūm</i> , <i>I rejoiced</i>
<i>sōlēō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , <i>to be wont</i>	<i>sōlītūs sūm</i> , <i>I was wont</i>

[131. 132.]

364. Deponent Verbs.

Pres. Ind. & Inf.	Perfect.
<i>fātēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to confess</i>	<i>fassūs sūm</i>
<i>confitēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to confess</i>	<i>confessūs sūm</i>
<i>diffitēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to disavow</i>	<i>diffessūs sūm</i>
<i>mēdēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to cure</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>mīsērēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to have pity</i>	<i>mīsērītūs</i> , <i>mīsértūs sūm</i>
<i>rēōr</i> , - <i>ērī</i> , <i>to think</i>	<i>rātūs sūm</i>

[163. 164.]

· VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

365. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs with stems ending in **u** (**v**), or one of the consonants. The **Regular Forms** of the Third Conjugation are seen in the following:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>ācū-ērē</i> , <i>to sharpen</i>	<i>ācū-ī</i>	<i>ācū-tūm</i>
<i>ēd-ērē</i> , <i>to eat</i>	<i>ēd-ī</i>	<i>ē-sūm</i>
<i>carp-ērē</i> , <i>to pluck</i>	<i>carp-sī</i>	<i>carp-tūm</i>

Stems in **u** take **ī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*. Consonant-stems take in the *Perfect* partly **ī**, partly **sī**; and in the *Supine* partly **tūm**, partly **sūm**.

A few verbs in **ūō** belong to the *First Conjugation*, as: *fluctū-ō*, -*ārē*, *to wave*.

STEMS in u (v).

366. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm:

ācūō, -ērē, to sharpen	ācūī	ācūtūm
Perf. Part. wanting; ācūtūs, sharp, is adjective only.		
argūō, -ērē, to accuse	argūī	(argūtūm)
cōargūō, -ērē, to convict	cōargūī	wanting
rēdargūō, -ērē, to refute	rēdargūī	wanting
imbūō, -ērē, to dip, dye	imbūī	imbūtūm
indūō, -ērē, to put on	indūī	indūtūm
exūō, -ērē, to put off	exūī	exūtūm
lūō, -ērē, to atone for	lūī	(lūtūm)
lūō, -ērē, to wash	lūī	lūtūm
ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off)	ablūī	ablūtūm
mīnūō, -ērē	mīnūī	mīnūtūm
immīnūō, -ērē } to lessen, weaken	immīnūī	immīnūtūm
[nūō, I nod]		
abnūō, -ērē, to dissent	abnūī	wanting
adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent	adnūī	wanting
rūō, -ērē, to rush forth	rūī	rūtūm
corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground	corrūī	wanting
dīrūō, -ērē, to destroy	dīrūī	dīrūtūm
ērūō, -ērē, to dig out	ērūī	ērūtūm
obrūō, -ērē, to cover	obrūī	obrūtūm
spūō, -ērē, to spit	spūī	spūtūm
stātūō, -ērē, to set, place	stātūī	stātūtūm
restītūō, -ērē, to restore	restītūī	restītūtūm
sūō, -ērē, to sew	sūī	sūtūm
tribūō, -ērē, to give, confer on	tribūī	tribūtūm
contribūō, -ērē, to contribute	contribūī	contribūtūm
distribūō, -ērē, to distribute	distribūī	distribūtūm
solvō, -ērē, to loose	solvī	sōlūtūm
absolvō, -ērē, to acquit	absolvī	absōlūtūm
volvō, -ērē, to roll, turn	volvī	vōlūtūm
[grūō or rūō ?]		
ingrūō, -ērē, to rush	ingrūī	wanting
congrūō, -ērē, to agree	congrūī	wanting
mētūō, -ērē, to fear	mētūī	wanting
plūō, -ērē, to rain	plūī	wanting
sternūō, -ērē, to sneeze	sternūī	wanting

367. The following stems in **u**, **v** form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently:

vívō, -ěřě, to live	vixī	victūm
strūō, -ěřě, to build	struxī	structūm
constrūō, -ěřě, to construct	construxī	constructūm
instrūō, -ěřě, to instruct	instruxī	instructūm
flūō, -ěřě, to flow	fluxī	fluxūm
rěflūō, -ěřě, to flow back	rěfluxī	rěfluxūm

[135. 136.]

VERBS in **īō**.

368. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **ī** before the ending of the Present, as: cāpěřě, to take; cāpīō, I take. This **ī** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **ī** or **ě**, except in the third person of the future active: capīēt, he will take (see **331**).

cāpīō, -ěřě, to take	cēpī	captūm
accipīō, -ěřě, to receive	accēpī	acceptūm
dēcipīō, -ěřě, to deceive	dēcēpī	dēceptūm
incipīō, -ěřě, to begin	incēpī	inceptūm
fācīō, -ěřě, to do, make	fēcī	factūm
pātěfācīō, -ěřě, to open	pātěfēcī	pātěfactūm
confīcīō, -ěřě, to make	confēcī	confectūm
interfīcīō, -ěřě, to kill	interfēcī	interfectūm
perfīcīō, -ěřě, to finish	perfēcī	perfectūm

The verb **fācěřě**, to do, make, deserves special notice:

It has for its **Passive** fīō, factūs sūm, fīěri, to be made, become (see **411**). Its **Imperative** is fāc, do.

The same rule applies to those Compounds of fācīō, which retain **ā**, as: pātěfācīō, I open; **Pass.** pātěfīō, I am opened; **Imperat.** pātěfāc, open. The Compounds of fācīō with **Prepositions** change **ā** to **ī**, and are inflected regularly, as: interfīcīō, I kill; **Pass.** interfīcīōr; **Imperat.** interfīcě.

jācīō, -ěřě, to throw, cast	jēcī	jactūm
objīcīō, -ěřě, to throw to	objēcī	objectūm
subjīcīō, -ěřě, to subject	subjēcī	subjectūm
[lācīō, I entice]		
allīcīō, -ěřě } to allure,	allexī	(allectūm)
pellīcīō, -ěřě } entice	pellexī	pellectūm
ělīcīō, -ěřě, to entice out	ělīcūī	ělīcītūm

[spēcīō, *I see*]

aspicīō, -ērē, *to look*
 despiciō, -ērē, *to despise*
 respiciō, -ērē, *to consider*
 cūpīō, -ērē, *to wish, desire*
 fōdīō, -ērē, *to dig*
 confōdīō, -ērē, *to pick out*
 effōdīō, -ērē, *to dig out*
 fūgīō, -ērē, *to flee or fly*
 pārīō, -ērē, *to bring forth*

quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*
 concūtīō, -ērē, *to shake*
 rāpīō, -ērē, *to snatch away*
 arrīpīō, -ērē, *to seize*
 sāpīō, -ērē, *to be wise*
 dēsīpīō, -ērē, *to be foolish*

aspexi
 despexi,
 respexi
 cūpīvi
 fōdī
 confōdī
 effōdī
 fūgī
 pēpēri

aspectum
 despectum
 respectum
 cūpītum
 fossum
 confossūm
 effossūm
 fūgītum
 partum
 Fut. Part. pārītūrus
 quassūm
 concussūm
 raptum
 arreptum
 wanting
 wanting
 wanting

[137. 138.]

STEMS in **d**, **t**.

369. As a rule, stems in **d**, **t** have **sī** in the Perfect, **sūm** in the Supine. Before the **s** of the Perfect and Supine, **d** and **t** are dropped or become by assimilation **ss**.

370. The repetition of the initial consonant with the vowel following it or with **ē** (**Reduplication**) is especially common in the formation of the Perfect of the 3d Conjugation; as:

pendō, *I weigh*, pēpendī; cādō, *I fall*, cēcīdī.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **ī**.

Compound verbs omit the reduplication, but the Compounds of dō, *I give*; stō, *I stand*; discō, *I learn*; poscō, *I demand*, and some of those of currō, *I run*, retain it.

371. Perfect in **sī**, Supine in **sūm**.

claudō, -ērē, *to shut, close*
 concludō, -ērē, *to shut up*
 dividō, -ērē, *to divide, separate*
 laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*
 allidō, -ērē, *to dash against*
 collidō, -ērē, *to dash together*
 elidō, -ērē, *to strike out*

clausī
 conclusī
 divisī
 laesī
 allisī
 collisī
 elisī

clausūm
 conclusūm
 divisūm
 laesūm
 allisūm
 collisūm
 elisūm

<i>lūdō, -ĕrĕ, to play</i>	<i>lūsī</i>	<i>lūsūm</i>
<i>illūdō, -ĕrĕ, to mock</i>	<i>illūsī</i>	<i>illūsūm</i>
<i>plaudō, -ĕrĕ, to applaud</i>	<i>plausī</i>	<i>plausūm</i>
<i>applaudō, -ĕrĕ, to applaud</i>	<i>applausī</i>	<i>applausūm</i>
<i>explōdō, -ĕrĕ, to hiss off</i>	<i>explōsī</i>	<i>explōsūm</i>
<i>rādō, -ĕrĕ, to scrape</i>	<i>rāsī</i>	<i>rāsūm</i>
<i>rōdō, -ĕrĕ, to gnaw</i>	<i>rōsī</i>	<i>rōsūm</i>
<i>trūdō, -ĕrĕ, to thrust</i>	<i>trūsī</i>	<i>trūsūm</i>
<i>vādō, -ĕrĕ, to go</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ĕvādō, -ĕrĕ, to turn out</i>	<i>ĕvāsī</i>	<i>ĕvāsūm</i>

With Reduplication:

<i>cādō, -ĕrĕ, to fall</i>	<i>cĕcīdī</i>	<i>cāsūm</i>
<i>occīdō, -ĕrĕ, to set</i>	<i>occīdī</i>	<i>occāsūm</i>
<i>incīdō, -ĕrĕ, to fall into</i>	<i>incīdī</i>	<i>wanting</i>

Other Compounds of *cādō* want the *Supine*.

<i>caedō, -ĕrĕ, to fell</i>	<i>cĕcīdī</i>	<i>caesūm</i>
<i>dĕcīdō, -ĕrĕ, to cut down</i>	<i>dĕcīdī</i>	<i>dĕcīsūm</i>
<i>excīdō, -ĕrĕ, to hew out</i>	<i>excīdī</i>	<i>excīsūm</i>
<i>incīdō, -ĕrĕ, to engrave</i>	<i>incīdī</i>	<i>incīsūm</i>
<i>occīdō, -ĕrĕ, to kill</i>	<i>occīdī</i>	<i>occīsūm</i>
<i>pendō, -ĕrĕ, to weigh</i>	<i>pĕpendī</i>	<i>pensūm</i>
<i>suspendō, -ĕrĕ, to hang</i>	<i>suspendī</i>	<i>suspensūm</i>
<i>tendō, -ĕrĕ, to spread</i>	<i>tĕtendī</i>	<i>tensūm & tentūm</i>
<i>attendō, -ĕrĕ, to attend to</i>	<i>attendī</i>	<i>attentūm</i>
<i>contendō, -ĕrĕ, to exert</i>	<i>contendī</i>	<i>contentūm</i>
<i>extendō, -ĕrĕ, to stretch out</i>	<i>extendī</i>	<i>extensūm & extentūm</i>
<i>ostendō, -ĕrĕ, to show</i>	<i>ostendī</i>	<i>ostensūm</i>
<i>tundō, -ĕrĕ, to thump</i>	<i>tūtūdī</i>	<i>tūsūm & tunsūm</i>
<i>contundō, -ĕrĕ, to break down</i>	<i>contūdī</i>	<i>contūsūm</i>
<i>obtundō, -ĕrĕ, to stun</i>	<i>obtūdī</i>	<i>obtūsūm</i>

372. Compounds of *dārĕ* with *monosyllabic* words pass over into the *Third Conjugation*:

<i>crĕdō, -ĕrĕ, to believe</i>	<i>crĕdīdī</i>	<i>crĕditūm</i>
<i>vendō, -ĕrĕ, to sell</i>	<i>vendīdī</i>	<i>venditūm</i>
<i>condō, -ĕrĕ, to build</i>	<i>condīdī</i>	<i>conditūm</i>

abscondō, -ērē, to hide	abscondī	absconditūm
ēdō, -ērē, to give out	ēdīdī	ēditūm
perdō, -ērē, to ruin	perdīdī	perditūm
reddō, -ērē, to give back	reddīdī	redditūm
trādō, -ērē, to deliver	trādīdī	trāditūm

[139. 140.]

373. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm.

The Stem of many verbs of this class appears in the *Present* strengthened by **n**, as: fundō, Stem fūd. Stems in **nd** take **ī** in the *Perfect*.

[candō, I burn]		
accendō, -ērē, to kindle	accendī	accensūm
cūdō, -ērē, to forge	cūdī	cūsūm
ēdō, -ērē, to eat	ēdī	ēsūm
[fendō, I fend]		
dēfendō, -ērē, to defend	dēfendī	dēfensūm
offendō, -ērē, to offend	offendī	offensūm
mandō, -ērē, to chew	mandī	mansūm
prēhendō, -ērē, to seize	prēhendī	prēhensūm
scandō, -ērē, to climb	scandī	scansūm
ascendō, -ērē, to ascend	ascendī	ascensūm
fundō, -ērē, to pour	fūdī	fūsūm
circumfundō, -ērē, to surround	circumfūdī	circumfūsūm
diffundō, -ērē, to pour forth	diffūdī	diffūsūm
effundō, -ērē, to pour out	effūdī	effūsūm
vertō, -ērē, to turn	vertī	versūm
ēvertō, -ērē, to overthrow	ēvertī	ēversūm
stertō, -ērē, to snore	stertūī	wanting

The only **Semi-Deponent** Verb of the Third Conjugation belongs to this class:

fīdō, -ērē	} to trust, confide	fīsūs sūm
confīdō, -ērē		confīsūs sūm

374. Various Irregularities:

cēdō, -ērē, to yield	cessī	cessūm
accēdō, -ērē, to approach	accessī	accessūm
findō, -ērē, to split, cleave	fīdī	fissūm

scindō, -ērē, to cut	scīdī	scissūm
discindō, -ērē, to split	discīdī	discissūm
excindō, -ērē, to destroy	excīdī	excisūm
abscindō, -ērē, to tear off	abscīdī	abscisūm
excindō takes Perfect and Supine from caedō, abscindō the Supine .		
mētō, -ērē, to reap	messūī	messūm
mittō, -ērē, to send	mīsī	missūm
āmittō, -ērē, to lose	āmīsī	āmissūm
admittō, -ērē, to admit	admīsī	admissūm
committō, -ērē, to commit	commīsī	commissūm
permittō, -ērē, to permit	permīsī	permissūm
prōmittō, -ērē, to promise	prōmīsī	prōmissūm
pandō, -ērē, to spread	pandī	passūm
pētō, -ērē, to seek	pētīvī, pētīī	pētītūm
rēpētō, -ērē, to repeat	rēpētīvī	rēpētītūm
sīdō, -ērē, to sit down	sēdī	wanting
assīdō, -ērē, to sit down	assēdī	assessūm
consīdō, -ērē, to settle	consēdī	consessūm
sistō, -ērē, to stop	stītī	stātūm
obsistō, -ērē, to oppose	obstītī	obstītūm

Other Compounds want **Supine**:

absistō, -ērē, to cease	abstītī	wanting
adsistō, -ērē, to stand by	adstītī	wanting
existō, -ērē, to come forth	exstītī	wanting

[141. 142.]

STEMS in **b, p**.

375. Stems in **b, p** take **sī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*; at the same time **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**, as: nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm. The stem of many verbs appears in the *Present* strengthened by **m**, as: rumpō, rūpī.

glūbō, -ērē, to peel	(glupsī)	gluptūm
dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin	(dēglupsī)	dēgluptūm
nūbō, -ērē, to marry	nupsī	nuptūm
scribō, -ērē, to write	scripsī	scriptūm
conscribō, -ērē, to frame	conscripsī	conscriptūm
describō, -ērē, to describe	descripsī	descriptūm
praescribō, -ērē, to prescribe	praescripsī	praescriptūm
carpō, -ērē, to pluck	carpsī	carptūm
dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck	dēcerpsī	dēcerptūm
discerpō, -ērē, to tear asunder	discerpsī	discerptūm

rēpō, -ērē, to creep, crawl
 irrēpō, -ērē, to creep into
 scalpō, -ērē, to carve
 sculpō, -ērē, to chisel
 serpō, -ērē, to creep

repsī
 irrepsī
 scalpsī
 sculpsī
 serpsī

reptūm
 irreptūm
 scalptūm
 sculptūm
 (serptūm)

376.

Irregular:

accumbō, -ērē, to recline at table
 bibō, -ērē, to drink
 rumpō, -ērē, to break
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt
 ērumpō, -ērē, to break out
 perrumpō, -ērē, to break through
 strēpō, -ērē, to make a noise
 lambō, -ērē, to lick
 scābō, -ērē, to scratch

accūbūī
 bibī
 rūpī
 corrūpī
 ērūpī
 perrūpī
 strēpūī
 lambī
 scābī

accūbitūm
 bibitūm
 ruptūm
 corruptūm
 ēruptūm
 perruptūm
 strēpitūm
 (lambītūm)
 wanting

[143. 144.]

STEMS in c, g, q, h, ct.

377.

c, g, q, and h with s become x
 g, h, and q before t become c.

dūc-ō — duxī = ducī
 rēg-ō — rexī = regī
 cōqu-ō — coxī = coqsī
 trāh-ō — traxī = trahī

rēgō — rectūm = regtūm
 trāhō — tractūm = trahtūm
 coquō — coctūm = coqtūm

378.

Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

cingō, -ērē, to gird
 [flīgō, -ērē, to strike
 affligō, -ērē, to dash
 confligō, -ērē, to fight
 prōflīgō, -ārē, to strike down
 jungō, -ērē, to join
 adjungō, -ērē, to join (to)
 plangō, -ērē, to beat, lament
 rēgō, -ērē, to rule, govern
 corrigō, -ērē, to correct
 dīrigō, -ērē, to direct
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ērē, to rise
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, to go on
 sūgō, -ērē, to suck
 tēgō, -ērē, to cover
 dētēgō, -ērē, to discover
 prōtēgō, -ērē, to protect

cingī
 flixī
 afflixī
 conflixī
 prōflīgāvī
 junxī
 adjunxī
 planxī
 rexī
 correxī
 dīrexī
 surrexī
 perrexī
 suxī
 texī
 dētēxī
 prōtexī

cingtūm
 flictūm]
 afflictūm
 conflictūm
 prōflīgātūm
 junctūm
 adjunctūm
 planctūm
 rectūm
 correctūm
 directūm
 surrectūm
 perrectūm
 suctūm
 tectūm
 dētectūm
 prōtectūm

tingō (tingūō), -ērē, to stain	tinxī	tinctūm
ungō (ungūō), -ērē, to anoint	unxī	unctūm
[stingūō, I put out]		
exstingūō, -ērē, to put out	exstinxī	exstinctūm
distingūō, -ērē, to distinguish	distinxī	distinctūm
trāhō, -ērē, to draw	traxī	tractūm
contrāhō, -ērē, to contract	contraxī	contractūm
vēhō, -ērē, to carry	vexī	vectūm
dīcō, -ērē, to say, tell	dixī	dictūm
praedicō, -ērē, to predict	praedixī	praedictūm
indicō, -ērē, to declare	indixī	indictūm
dūcō, -ērē, to lead	duxī	ductūm
ēducō, -ērē, to lead forth	ēduxī	ēductūm

The Imperatives of dīcērē, to say, dūcērē, to lead, are: dīc, dūc; compounds follow the simple verbs: ēduc, praedic.

coquō, -ērē, to cook, bake	coxī	coctūm
----------------------------	------	--------

379. The Supine is irregular:

fiŋō, -ērē, to fashion	fiŋxī	fictūm
pingō, -ērē, to paint	pinxī	pictūm
stringō, -ērē, to bind	strinxī	strictūm
fiġō, -ērē, to fix	fixī	fixūm

380. Present strengthened by t:

flectō, -ērē, to bend	flexī	flexūm
nectō, -ērē, to tie	nexī-nexūī	nexūm
pectō, -ērē, to comb	pexī	pexūm
plectō, -ērē, to beat (only Passive)	wanting	wanting

381. The Supine is wanting:

angō, -ērē, to torment, vex	anxī	_____
ningō, -ērē, to snow	ninxī	_____
clangō, -ērē, to clang	wanting	_____

382. With Reduplication:

pareō, -ērē, to spare	pēpercī	parsūm
pungō, -ērē, to pierce, sting	pūpūgī	punctūm
tangō, -ērē, to touch	tētīgī	tactūm
attingō, -ērē, to touch	attīgī	attactūm
pangō, -ērē, to strike, drive	panxī	panctūm
pangō, -ērē, to bargain	pēpīgī	pactūm
compingō, -ērē, to drive tight	compēgī	compactūm

383. With lengthened Stem-vowel.

Many Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take **i** in the Perfect, before which the stem-vowel is lengthened, and **ā** becomes **ē**.

āgō , - ērē , to drive, do	ēgī	actūm
pērāgō , - ērē , to accomplish	pērēgī	pēractūm
ābīgō , - ērē , to drive away	ābēgī	ābactūm
sūbīgō , - ērē , to subdue	sūbēgī	sūbactūm
cōgō , - ērē , to force (cō-āgō)	cōēgī	cōactūm
dēgō , - ērē , to spend (dē-āgō)	dēgī	wanting
ambīgō , - ērē , to contend	wanting	wanting
frangō , - ērē , to break	frēgī	fractūm
confringō , - ērē , to break in two	confrēgī	confractūm
effringō , - ērē , to break open	effrēgī	effractūm
lēgō , - ērē , to read	lēgī	lectūm
allēgō , - ērē , to choose	allēgī	allectūm
perlēgō , - ērē , to read through	perlēgī	perlectūm
rēlēgō , - ērē , to read over	rēlēgī	rēlectūm
collīgō , - ērē , to collect	collēgī	collectūm
dēlīgō , - ērē , to choose	dēlēgī	dēlectūm
ēlīgō , - ērē , to elect	ēlēgī	ēlectūm
dīlīgō , - ērē , to love	dīlexī	dīlectūm
intellēgō , - ērē , to understand	intellexī	intellectūm
neglēgō , - ērē , to neglect	neglexī	neglectūm
icō , - ērē , to strike	icī	ictūm
vincō , - ērē , to conquer	vīcī	victūm
linquō , - ērē , to leave	liquī	wanting
rēlinquō , - ērē , to leave (behind)	rēliquī	rēlictūm

384. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

mergō , - ērē , to dip in, plunge	mersī	mersūm
spargō , - ērē , to scatter	sparsī	sparsūm
conspergō , - ērē , to sprinkle	conspersī	conspersūm
tergō , - ērē , to wipe	tersī	tersūm
vergō , - ērē , to verge	wanting	wanting

[145. 146.]

STEMS in **l, m, n, r.**

385. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm.

m is sometimes strengthened with **p**, as : **sūmō**, **sumpsī**.

cōmō , - ērē , to adorn	compsī	comptūm
dēmō , - ērē , to take away	dempsi	demptūm

prōmō, -ērē, <i>to take out</i>	prompsī	promptūm
sūmō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	sumpsī	sumptūm
absūmō, -ērē, <i>to use up</i>	absumpsī	absumptūm
consūmō, -ērē, <i>to consume</i>	consumpsī	consumptūm
[temnō, <i>I despise</i>]		
contemnō, -ērē, <i>to despise</i>	contempsī	contemptūm

386. According to the Analogy of the 2d Conjugation:

ālō, -ērē, <i>to nourish</i>	ālūī	{ altūm ālītūm
cōlō, -ērē, <i>to cultivate</i>	cōlūī	cultūm
incōlō, -ērē, <i>to inhabit</i>	incōlūī	incultūm
consūlō, -ērē, <i>to counsel</i>	consūlūī	consultūm
mōlō, -ērē, <i>to grind</i>	mōlūī	molītūm
occūlō, -ērē, <i>to conceal</i>	occūlūī	occultūm
frēmō, -ērē, <i>to growl</i>	frēmūī	frēmītūm
gēmō, -ērē, <i>to groan</i>	gēmūī	gēmītūm
trēmō, -ērē, <i>to tremble</i>	trēmūī	wanting
vōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit</i>	vōmūī	vōmītūm
ēvōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit up</i>	ēvōmūī	ēvōmītūm
gignō, -ērē, <i>to beget</i>	gēnūī	gēnītūm
pōnō, -ērē, <i>to place</i>	pōsūī	pōsītūm
antēpōnō, -ērē, <i>to prefer</i>	antēpōsūī	antēpōsītūm
oppōnō, -ērē, <i>to oppose</i>	oppōsūī	oppōsītūm
[cellō, <i>I impel</i>]		
percellō, -ērē, <i>to beat down</i>	percūī	perculsūm
antēcellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting
praecellō, -ērē, } <i>to excel</i>	wanting	wanting
excellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting

387.

With Reduplication:

cānō, -ērē, <i>to sing</i>	cēcīnī	cantūm
concīnō, -ērē, <i>to sound together</i>	concīnūī	wanting
praecīnō, -ērē, <i>to sing to one</i>	praecīnūī	wanting
currō, -ērē, <i>to run</i>	cūcurrī	cursūm
accurrō, -ērē, <i>to run to</i>	{ accūcurrī }	accursūm
	{ accurrī }	
concurrō, -ērē, <i>to run together</i>	{ concūcurrī }	conkursūm
	{ concurrī }	
occurrō, -ērē, <i>to meet</i>	occurrī	ockursūm

rēcurrō, -ērē, to run back
 succurrō, -ērē, to succor
 fallō, -ērē, to cheat
 rēfellō, -ērē, to refute
 pellō, -ērē, to drive (away)
 dēpellō, -ērē, to dispel
 rēpellō, -ērē, to repel

rēcurre
 succurre
 fēfellī
 rēfellī
 pēpūlī
 dēpūlī
 rēpūlī

rēcursūm
 succursūm
 falsūm
 wanting
 pulsūm
 dēpulsūm
 rēpulsūm

[147. 148.]

388.

Perfect in vī:

cernō, -ērē, to see, discern
 dēcernō, -ērē, to determine
 discernō, -ērē, to distinguish
 līnō, -ērē, to smear
 allīnō, -ērē, to besmear
 illīnō, -ērē, to bedaub
 sīnō, -ērē, to let
 dēsīnō, -ērē, to leave off
 spernō, -ērē, to despise
 sternō, -ērē, to strew
 prosternō, -ērē, to overthrow
 sērō, -ērē, to sow
 consērō, -ērē, to plant
 insērō, -ērē, to plant in
 sērō, -ērē, to join
 dēsērō, -ērē, to forsake
 dissērō, -ērē, to discourse
 insērō, -ērē, to insert
 tērō, -ērē, to rub, wear out
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off
 dētērō, -ērē, to wear away

(crēvī)
 dēcrevī
 discrēvī
 lēvī (livī)
 allēvī
 illēvī
 sīvī
 dēsīvī, dēsī
 sprēvī
 strāvī
 prostrāvī
 sēvī
 consēvī
 insēvī
 sērūī
 dēsērūī
 dissērūī
 insērūī
 trīvī
 contrīvī
 dētrīvī

(crētūm)
 dēcretūm
 discretūm
 litūm
 allitūm
 illitūm
 sitūm
 dēsītūm
 sprētūm
 strātūm
 prostrātūm
 sātūm
 consītūm
 insītūm
 sertūm
 dēsertūm
 dissertūm
 insertūm
 tritūm
 contritūm
 dētritūm

389.

Various Irregularities:

vellō, -ērē, to pluck, pull
 āvellō, -ērē, to pull down
 prēmō, -ērē, to press
 comprīmō, -ērē, to press together
 exprīmō, -ērē, to press out
 supprīmō, -ērē, to keep back
 psallō, -ērē, to play on the cithern
 ěmō, -ērē, to buy
 cōěmō, -ērē, to buy together

vellī (vulsī)
 āvellī
 pressī
 compressī
 expressī
 suppressī
 psallī
 ěmī
 cōěmī

vulsūm
 āvulsūm
 pressūm
 compressūm
 expressūm
 suppressūm
 wanting
 emptūm
 cōemptūm

rēdimō, -ērē, to buy back	rēdēmī	rēdemptūm
ādīmō, -ērē, to take away	ādēmī	ādemptūm
pērīmō, -ērē, to slay	pērēmī	pēremptūm
gērō, -ērē, to carry on	gessī	gestūm
congērō, -ērē, to bring together	congressī	congestūm
ūrō, -ērē, to burn	ussī	ustūm
combūrō, -ērē, to burn (wholly)	combussī	combustūm
verrō, -ērē, to sweep	verrī	versūm
quaerō, -ērē, to seek, desire	quaesivī	quaesitūm
acquirō, -ērē, to acquire	acquisivī	acquisitūm
anquirō, -ērē, to search after	anquisivī	anquisitūm
inquirō, -ērē, to inquire	inquisivī	inquisitūm
fērō, ferrē, to bear (403)	tūlī	lātūm
fūrō, -ērē, to rage	wanting	wanting
tollō, -ērē, to lift, take away	sustulī	sublātūm

[149. 150.]

STEMS in s, x (es).

390. There is only one stem in s preceded by a *Vowel*, viz. *vīsō*; all the rest are in s preceded by a *Consonant*.

vīsō, -ērē, to visit	vīsī	wanting
depsō, -ērē, to knead	depsūī	depstūm
pinsō, -ērē, to pound	{ pinsūī	pinsitūm
	{ pinsī	pistūm
texō, -ērē, to weave	texūī	textūm

According to the Analogy of the 4th Conjugation:

arcessō, -ērē, to summon	arcessivī	arcessitūm
cāpessō, -ērē, to lay hold of	cāpessivī	cāpessitūm
fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish	fācessivī	fācessitūm
lācessō, -ērē, to excite	lācessivī	lācessitūm
incessō, -ērē, to fall upon	incessivī (-ī)	wanting

STEMS in sc.

391. Stems strengthened by *sc* have generally an inchoative meaning, i. e., they denote the beginning of an action — **Inchoative** or **Inceptive Verbs**. When formed from verbs (by adding *sc* to Vowel-stems, and *isc* to Consonant-stems) they are called *Verbal Inceptives*; when from substantives and adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

Verbal Inceptives.

392. Verbal Inceptives take the **Perfect** and **Supine** of their *Primitives*, if such Perfect and Supine *actually* exist.

393. Many Verbs in *scō* are no longer used as *Inchoatives*, but in the sense of their *Primitives* which have been disused:

<i>crescō, -ěřě, to grow</i>	<i>crēvī</i>	<i>crētūm</i>
<i>noscō, -ěřě, to (learn to) know</i>	<i>nōvī</i>	<i>nōtūm</i>
<i>agnoscō, -ěřě, to acknowledge</i>	<i>agnōvī</i>	<i>agnītūm</i>
<i>cognoscō, -ěřě, to know</i>	<i>cognōvī</i>	<i>cognītūm</i>
<i>pascō, -ěřě, to graze</i>	<i>pāvī</i>	<i>pastūm</i>
<i>quiescō, -ěřě</i>	<i>quiēvī</i>	<i>quītūm</i>
<i>rēquiescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>to rest</i>	<i>rēquiēvī</i>	<i>rēquītūm</i>
<i>suescō, -ěřě, to become used</i>	<i>suēvī</i>	<i>suētūm</i>
<i>assuescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>to be accus-</i>	<i>assuēvī</i>	<i>assuētūm</i>
<i>consuescō, -ěřě</i> } <i>tomed</i>	<i>consuēvī</i>	<i>consuētūm</i>
<i>compescō, -ěřě, to restrain</i>	<i>compescūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>discō, -ěřě, to learn</i>	<i>dīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēdiscō, -ěřě, to unlearn</i>	<i>dēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēdiscō, -ěřě, to learn by heart</i>	<i>ēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>poscō, -ěřě, to demand</i>	<i>pōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēposcō, -ěřě, to request</i>	<i>dēpōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>exposcō, -ěřě, to request earnestly</i>	<i>expōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>rēposcō, -ěřě, to demand back</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>gliscō, -ěřě, to grow up</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>

[151, 152]

394. But the great majority of Verbal Inceptives are from *Primitives* which actually exist.

With the Perfect and Supine of their *Primitives*:

<i>ābōlescō, -ěřě, to disappear</i>	<i>ābōlēvī</i>	<i>ābōlītūm</i>
<i>ābōlēō</i>		
<i>ādōlescō, -ěřě, to grow up</i>	<i>ādōlēvī</i>	<i>ādultūm</i>
<i>ādōlēō</i>		
<i>obsōlescō, -ěřě, to become obsolete</i>	<i>obsōlēvī</i>	<i>obsōlētūm</i>
<i>obsōlēō</i>		
<i>cōālescō, -ěřě, to grow together</i>	<i>cōālūī</i>	<i>cōālītūm</i>
<i>ālō</i>		
<i>concupiscō, -ěřě, to covet</i>	<i>concupīvī</i>	<i>concupītūm</i>
<i>cūpīō</i>		
<i>convālescō, -ěřě, to recover</i>	<i>convālūī</i>	<i>convālītūm</i>
<i>vālēō</i>		
<i>exardescō, -ěřě, to take fire</i>	<i>exarsī</i>	<i>exarsūm</i>
<i>ardēō</i>		
<i>obdormiscō, -ěřě, to fall asleep</i>	<i>obdormīvī</i>	<i>obdormītūm</i>
<i>dormīō</i>		

rēviviscō, -ērē, <i>to revive</i>	rēvixī	rēvictūm
vīvō		
sciscō, -ērē, <i>to decree</i>	scīvī	scītūm
consciscō, -ērē, <i>to bring upon</i>	conscīvī	conscītūm
sciō		
condōlescō, -ērē, } <i>to feel pain</i>	condōlūī	condōlītūm
indōlescō, -ērē, }	indōlūī	indōlītūm
dōlēō		
invētērascō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	invētērāvī	invētērātūm
invētērō		

With the Perfect of their Primitives:

ācescō, -ērē, <i>to turn sour</i>	ācūī
ācēō	
ārescō, -ērē, <i>to become dry</i>	ārūī
ārēō	
cālescō, -ērē, <i>to become warm</i>	cālūī
cālēō	
contīcescō, -ērē, <i>to become still</i>	contīcūī
tācēō	
dēlītescō, -ērē, <i>to hide away</i>	dēlītūī
lātēō	
effervescō, -ērē, <i>to boil up</i>	effervūī & efferbūī
fervēō	
efflōrescō, -ērē, <i>to begin to bloom</i>	efflōrūī
flōrēō	
extītescō, -ērē, <i>to fear</i>	extīmūī
tīmēō	
ērūbescō, -ērē, <i>to turn red</i>	ērūbūī
rūbēō	
horrescō, -ērē, <i>to stand on end</i>	horrūī
horrēō	
illūcescō, -ērē, <i>to grow light</i>	illuxī
lūcēō	
intūtescō, -ērē, <i>to swell</i>	intūmūī
tūmēō	
pallescō, -ērē, <i>to turn pale</i>	pallūī
pallēō	
pūtrescō, -ērē, <i>to rot</i>	pūtrūī
pūtrēō	
sēnescō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	sēnūī
sēnēō	

rēsīpiscō, -ērē, to come to one's	rēsīpūī
sāpīō	[senses
ingēmiscō, -ērē, to groan	ingēmūī
gēmō	
contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble	contrēmūī
trēmō	

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

hiscō, -ērē, to yawn	flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow
hīō	flāvēō
augescō, -ērē, to augment	hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull
augēō	hēbēō

Denominative Inceptives.

395. Most Denominative Inceptives want both **Perfect** and **Supine**; some have the **Perfect** in **ūī**.

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick	plūmescō, -ērē, to get feathers
aegēr, sick	plūmā, a feather
dītescō, -ērē, to grow rich	pūērascō, -ērē, to become a
dīvēs, rich	pūēr, a child [child
dulcescō, -ērē, to become sweet	jūvenescō, -ērē, to grow young
dulcīs, sweet	jūvenīs, young
grandescō, -ērē, to grow large	grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy
grandīs, large	grāvīs, heavy
mītescō, -ērē, to become mild	intēgrascō, -ērē, to begin anew
mītīs, mild	intēgēr, fresh
pinguescō, -ērē, to grow fat	tēnērescō, -ērē, to grow tender
pinguīs, fat	tēnēr, tender

With the Perfect in ūī.

crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent (crēbēr, frequent)	crēbrūī
dūrescō, -ērē, to grow hard (dūrūs, hard)	dūrūī
ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish (vānūs, empty)	ēvānūī
innōtescō, -ērē, to become known (nōtūs, known)	innōtūī
mācrescō, -ērē, to grow meager (mācēr, meager)	mācrūī
mātūrescō, -ērē, to ripen (mātūrūs, ripe)	mātūrūī
nīgrescō, -ērē, to become black (nīgēr, black)	nīgrūī
obmūtescō, -ērē, to become dumb (mūtūs, dumb)	obmūtūī
rēcrrūdescō, -ērē, to break open afresh (crūdūs, fresh)	rēcrrūdūī
vīlescō, -ērē, to become vile (vīlīs, vile)	vīlūī

396.

Deponent Verbs.

frūōr, -ī, to enjoy
 perfrūōr, -ī, to enjoy fully
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge
 defungōr, -ī, to discharge
 grādīōr, -ī, to step
 aggrēdīōr, -ī, to attack
 lābōr, -ī, to glide, roll on
 dilābōr, -ī, to fall asunder
 lōquōr, -ī, to speak
 allōquōr, -ī, to address
 mōrīōr, -ī, to die
 nītōr, -ī, to stay one's self on
 pātīōr, -ī, to suffer
 perpētīōr, -ī, to endure
 [plectōr]
 amplectōr, -ī, to embrace
 quērōr, -ī, to complain
 sēquōr, -ī, to follow
 assēquōr, -ī, to pursue
 ūtōr, -ī, to use
 ābūtōr, -ī, to use, abuse
 rēvertōr, -ī, to turn back

frūītūs & fructūs sūm
 perfructūs sūm
 functūs sūm
 defunctūs sūm
 gressūs sūm
 aggressūs sūm
 lapsūs sūm
 dilapsūs sūm
 lōcūtūs sūm
 allōcūtūs sūm
 mortūūs sūm—F.Part. mōrītūrūs
 nīsūs & nixūs sūm
 passūs sūm
 perpassūs sūm

 amplexūs sūm
 questūs sūm
 sēcūtūs sūm
 assēcūtūs sūm
 ūsūs sūm
 ābūsūs sūm
 rēvertī, active — Part. rēversūs

With stems in sc.

[āpiscōr, -ī, to reach after
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, to obtain
 defētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake
 īrascōr, -ī, to grow angry
 [mīniscōr, I recollect]
 commīniscōr, -ī, to devise
 rēmīniscōr, -ī, to remember
 nanciscōr, -ī, to get
 nascōr, -ī, to be born
 oblīviscōr, -ī, to forget
 pāciscōr, -ī, to strike a bargain
 pascōr, -ī, to feed
 prōfīciscōr, -ī, to set out, start
 ulciscōr, -ī, to avenge
 vescōr, -ī, to feed upon, eat

aptūs sūm]
 ādeptūs sūm
 defessūs sūm
 experrectūs sūm
 (īrātūs sūm) — īrātūs, angry

 commentūs sūm
 wanting
 nactūs & nanctūs sūm
 nātūs sūm—Fut. Part. nascītūrūs
 oblītūs sūm
 pactūs sūm
 pastūs sūm
 prōfectūs sūm
 ultūs sūm
 wanting

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

397. The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs with vowel-stems in **ī**. Their **Perfect** and **Supine** are formed by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, according to the rule already given (**344**). Or, in other words, in the Fourth Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-īō -īrē	-īvī	-ītūm
audīō audīrē, <i>to hear</i>	audīvī	audītūm

398. The following **Verbs** of the **Fourth Conjugation** vary from the usual mode of formation:

farcīō, -īrē, <i>to stuff</i>	farsī	fartūm
rēfercīō, -īrē, <i>to cram</i>	rēfersī	rēfertūm
fulcīō, -īrē, <i>to support</i>	fulsī	fultūm
haurīō, -īrē, <i>to draw</i>	hausī	haustūm
exhaurīō, -īrē, <i>to exhaust</i>	exhausī	exhaustūm
saepīō, -īrē, <i>to hedge in</i>	saepsī	saeptūm
sālīō, -īrē, <i>to leap</i>	sālūī	saltūm
dissīlīō, -īrē, <i>to burst asunder</i>	dissīlūī	wanting
sancīō, -īrē, <i>to sanction</i>	s anxī	sanctūm, sancītūm
sarcīō, -īrē, <i>to mend</i>	sarsī	sartūm
sentīō, -īrē, <i>to feel, perceive</i>	sensī	sensūm
sēpēlīō, -īrē, <i>to bury</i>	sēpēlīvī	sēpultūm
vēnīō, -īrē, <i>to come</i>	vēnī	ventūm
invēnīō, -īrē, <i>to find out</i>	invēnī	inventūm
vincīō, -īrē	vinxī	vinctūm
dēvincīō, -īrē } <i>to bind</i>	dēvinxī	dēvinctūm
āmicīō, -īrē, <i>to clothe</i>	wanting	āmictūm
pārīō, -ērē, <i>to bring forth (3d Conjugation)</i>		
āpērīō, -īrē, <i>to open</i>	āpērūī	āpērtūm
rēpērīō, -īrē, <i>to find</i>	rēpērūī	rēpērtūm

Wanting Perfect and Supine:

fērīō, -īrē, <i>to strike, beat</i>	and Desideratives
fērōcīō, -īrē, <i>to be unruly</i>	in ūrīō, as:
sūpērbīō, -īrē, <i>to be proud</i>	ēsūrīō, -īrē, <i>to want to eat</i>

[159, 160.]

399. Deponent Verbs.

assentīōr, -īrī, <i>to assent</i>	assensūs sūm
mētīōr, -īrī, <i>to measure</i>	mensūs sūm

ordīōr, -īrī, *to begin*
 expērīōr, -īrī, *to try, exercise*
 oppērīōr, -īrī, *to await*
 ōrīōr, -īrī, *to rise, appear*

Pres. Ind. { ōrīōr ōrērīs ōrītūr } 3d Conjugation.
 { ōrīmūr ōrīmīnī ōrīuntūr }

Imperf. Subj. ōrīrēr or ōrērēr Gerundive. ōrīundūs, -ā, -ūm

Fut. Part. orītūrūs, -ā, -ūm

ādōrīōr, -īrī, *to attack*

orsūs sūm
 expertūs sūm
 oppertūs sūm
 ortūs sūm

ādortūs sūm

The **Compounds** of ōrīōr follow the conjugation of the simple verb, except ādōrīrī, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout. [167. 168.]

Irregular Conjugation.

400. A few verbs are **irregular** in the Conjugation of the **Present** and the forms derived from it. These are:

sūm, I am, and its **Compounds.**

The conjugation of sūm has already been given (**303**); its Compounds are conjugated in the same way except possē, *to be able*.

401. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf. Perfect. Supine.
 possūm possē, *to be able* pōtūī —

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

pos' sūm, *I can*
 pō' tēs, *thou canst*
 pō' test, *he can*
 pos' sū mūs, *we can*
 pō te' stīs, *you can*
 pos' sunt, *they can*

pos' sīm, *I may be able*
 pos' sīs, *thou mayest be able*
 pos' sīt, *he may be able*
 pos sī' mūs, *we may be able*
 pos sī' tīs, *you may be able*
 pos' sint, *they may be able*

Imperfect.

pō' tē rām, *I could, was able*
 pō' tē rās, *thou couldst*
 pō' tē rāt, *he could*
 pō tē rā' mūs, *we could*
 pō tē rā' tīs, *you could*
 pō' tē rant, *they could*

pos' sēm, *I might be able*
 pos' sēs, *thou mightest be able*
 pos' sēt, *he might be able*
 pos sē' mūs, *we might be able*
 pos sē' tīs, *you might be able*
 pos' sent, *they might be able*

INDICATIVE.

põ' tẽ rõ, *I shall be able*
 põ' tẽ rĩs, *thou wilt be able*
 põ' tẽ rĩt, *he will be able*
 põ tẽ' rĩ mūs, *we shall be able*
 põ tẽ' rĩ tĩs, *you will be able*
 põ' tẽ runt, *they will be able*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

(wanting)

põ' tũ ĩ, *I have been able*
 põ tũ ĩ' stĩ
 põ' tũ ĩt
 põ tũ' ř mūs
 põ tũ ĩ' stĩs
 põ tũ ě' runt

Perfect.

põ tũ' ě rĩm, *I may have been able*
 põ tũ' ě rĩs
 põ tũ' ě rĩt
 põ tũ ě rĩ mūs
 põ tũ ě rĩ tĩs
 põ tũ' ě rint

Pluperfect.

põ tũ' ě rãm, <i>I had been able</i>	põ tũ is' sēm, <i>I might have been able</i>
põ tũ' ě rās	põ tũ is' sēs
põ tũ' ě rāt	põ tũ is' sēt
põ tũ ě rã' mūs	põ tũ is sē' mūs
põ tũ ě rã' tĩs	põ tũ is sē' tĩs
põ tũ' ě rant	põ tũ is' sent

Future Perfect.

põ tũ' ě rõ, <i>I shall have been able</i>	(wanting)
põ tũ' ě rĩs	
põ tũ' ě rĩt	
põ tũ ě rĩ mūs	
põ tũ ě rĩ tĩs	
põ tũ' ě rint	

INFINITIVE.

Present. pos' sě, <i>to be able</i>	Perfect. põ tũ is' sě, <i>to have been able</i>
-------------------------------------	---

402. The verb sũm is joined with the adjective põtĩs, *able*, making the compound (pot-sũm) possũm, *I can, am able*. This is conjugated like sũm, but observe:

that the **t** of põt is assimilated before **s**, thus: possũm instead of potsũm;

that the **f** is dropped in fũĩ, fũěrãm, etc., thus: põtũĩ for potfũĩ;

that põtessě and põtessēm are contracted into possě, possēm.

Participle, Imperative, and Gerund are wanting; põtens, *mighty*, is simply an adjective.

403.	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf. fě'rō ferrě, <i>to bear</i>	Perfect. tŭlī	Supine. lātŭm
-------------	---	------------------	------------------

Active.

INDICATIVE.

fě'rō, *I bear*
fers
fert
fě' rī mŭs
fer' tīs
fě' runt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fě' rām, *I may bear*
fě' rās
fě' rāt
fě rā' mŭs
fě rā' tīs
fě' rant

Imperfect.

fě rē' bām, <i>I was bearing</i>	fer' rēm, <i>I should bear</i>
fě rē' bās	fer' rēs
fě rē' bāt	fer' rēt
fě rē bā' mŭs	fer rē' mŭs
fě rē bā' tīs	fer rē' tīs
fě rē' bant	fer' rent

Future.

fě' rām, <i>I shall bear</i>	lā tŭ'rŭs,	}	<i>may be about to bear</i>
fě' rēs	-ā, -ŭm		
fě' rēt			
fě rē' mŭs	lā tŭ' rī,	}	<i>may be about to bear</i>
fě rē' tīs	-ae, -ā		
fě' rent			

Perfect.

tŭ' lī, <i>I bore or have borne</i>	tŭ' lě rīn, <i>I may have borne</i>
tŭ li' stī	tŭ' lě rīs
tŭ' līt	tŭ' lě rīt
tŭ' lī mŭs	tŭ lě rī mŭs
tŭ li' stīs	tŭ lě rī tīs
tŭ lē' runt	tŭ' lě rint

Pluperfect.

tŭ' lě rām, <i>I had borne</i>	tŭ lis' sēm, <i>I should have borne</i>
tŭ' lě rās	tŭ lis' sēs
tŭ' lě rāt	tŭ lis' sēt
tŭ lě rā' mŭs	tŭ lis sē' mŭs
tŭ lě rā' tīs	tŭ lis sē' tīs
tŭ' lě rant	tŭ lis' sent

INDICATIVE.

tū' lē rō, *I shall have borne*
 tū' lē rīs
 tū' lē rīt
 tū lē rī mūs
 tū lē rī tīs
 tū' lē rint

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing.	fēr, <i>bear thou</i>	Plur.	fer' tē, <i>bear ye</i>
Fut. "	fer' tō, <i>thou shalt bear</i>	"	fer tō' tē, <i>ye shall bear</i>
"	fer' tō, <i>he shall bear</i>	"	fē run' tō, <i>they shall bear</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rē, *to bear*
 Perf. tū lis' sē, *to have borne*
 Fut. lā tū' rūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., *to be about to bear*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fē' rens, fē ren' tīs, *bearing*
 Fut. lā tū' rūs, lā tū' rā, lā tū' rūm, *about to bear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	fē ren' dī, <i>of bearing</i>	
Dat.	fē ren' dō, <i>for bearing</i>	
Acc.	fē ren' dūm, <i>bearing</i>	lā' tūm } <i>to bear</i> lā' tū }
Abl.	fē ren' dō, <i>by bearing</i>	

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fē' rōr, <i>I am borne</i>	fē' rār, <i>I may be borne</i>
fer' rīs	fē rā' rīs
fer' tūr	fē rā' tūr
fē' rī mūr	fē rā' mūr
fē rī' mī nī	fē rā' mīnī
fē run' tūr	fē ran' tūr

Imperfect.

fē rē' bār, <i>I was borne</i>	fer' rēr, <i>I might be borne</i>
fē rē bā' rīs	fer rē' rīs
fē rē bā' tūr	fer rē' tūr
fē rē bā' mūr	fer rē' mūr
fē rē bā' mī nī	fer rē' mī nī
fē rē ban' tūr	fer ren' tūr

INDICATIVE.

fě' rār, *I shall be borne*
 fě rē' rīs
 fě rē' tūr
 fě rē' mūr
 fě rē' mī nī
 fě ren' tūr

Futura.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, *I was or have been borne*
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, *I may have been borne*

Pluperfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ěrām, *I had been borne*
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, *I might have been borne*

Future Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ěrō, *I shall have been borne*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. fer' rě, *be thou borne* fě rī' mī nī, *be ye borne*
 Fut. fer' tōr, *thou shalt be borne*
 fer' tōr, *he shall be borne* fě run' tōr, *they shall be borne*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rī, *to be borne*
 Perf. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sě, &c., *to have been borne*
 Fut. lā' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be borne*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lā' tūs, lā' tā, lā' tūm, *borne*
 Gerundive. fě ren' dūs, fě ren' dā, fě ren' dūm, *to be borne*

Care should be taken not to confound the two verbs:
 ferrě, *to bear*, and fěrīrě, *to beat*.

404. Compounds of fěrō are conjugated like the simple verb:

adfěrō	adferrě, <i>to afford</i>	attūlī	adlātūm
aufěrō	auferrě, <i>to carry away</i>	abstūlī	ablātūm
confěrō	conferrě, <i>to bring together</i>	contūlī	collātūm
diffěrō	differrě, <i>to defer</i>	distūlī	dilātūm
effěrō	efferrě, <i>to carry out</i>	extūlī	elātūm
infěrō	inferrě, <i>to carry into</i>	intūlī	illātūm
præfěrō	præferrě, <i>to prefer</i>	praetūlī	praelātūm
rěfěrō	rěferrě, <i>to bring back</i>	rětūlī, rettūlī	rělātūm

405. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

võlõ	vellē, to be willing
nõlõ	nollē, to be unwilling
mālõ	mallē, to be more willing

Perfect.

võlūi	—
nõlūi	—
mālūi	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I am willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lõ	nõ' lõ	mālõ
vīs	nõn vīs	mā' vīs
vult	nõn vult	mā' vult
võ' lū mūs	nõ' lū mūs	mā' lū mūs
vul' tīs	nõn vul' tīs	mā vul' tīs
võ' lunt	nõ' lunt	mā' lunt

Imperfect.

I was willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lē' bām	nõ lē' bām	mā lē' bām
võ lē' bās	nõ lē' bās	mā lē' bās
võ lē' bāt	nõ lē' bāt	mā lē' bāt
võ lē bā' mūs	nõ lē bā' mūs	mā lē bā' mūs
võ lē bā' tīs	nõ lē bā' tīs	mā lē bā' tīs
võ lē' bant	nõ lē' bant	mā lē' bant

Future.

I shall be willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lām	nõ' lām	mā' lām
võ' lēs	nõ' lēs	mā' lēs
võ' lēt	nõ' lēt	mā' lēt
võ lē' mūs	nõ lē' mūs	mā lē' mūs
võ lē' tīs	nõ lē' tīs	mā lē' tīs
võ' lent	nõ' lent	mā' lent

Perfect.

I was or have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lū i	nõ' lū i	mā' lū i
võ lū i' stī	nõ lū i' stī	mā lū i' stī
võ' lū it	nõ' lū it	mā' lū it
võ lū' i mūs	nõ lū' i mūs	mā lū' i mūs
võ lū i' stīs	nõ lū i' stīs	mā lū i' stīs
võ lū ē' runt	nõ lū ē' runt	mā lū ē' runt

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lǔ' ẽ rãm	nõ lǔ' ẽ rãm	mã lǔ' ẽ rãm
võ lǔ' ẽ rās	nõ lǔ' ẽ rās	mã lǔ' ẽ rās
võ lǔ' ẽ răt	nõ lǔ' ẽ răt	mã lǔ' ẽ răt
võ lǔ ẽ rã' mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rã' mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rã' mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rã' tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rã' tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rã' tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rant	nõ lǔ' ẽ rant	mã lǔ' ẽ rant

Future Perfect.

I shall have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lǔ' ẽ rō	nõ lǔ' ẽ rō	mã lǔ' ẽ rō
võ lǔ' ẽ rīs	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīs	mã lǔ' ẽ rīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rīt	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīt	mã lǔ' ẽ rīt
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rint	nõ lǔ' ẽ rint	mã lǔ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I may be willing, unwilling, more willing

vẽ' lĩm	nõ' lĩm	mã' lĩm
vẽ' līs	nõ' līs	mã' līs
vẽ' līt	nõ' līt	mã' līt
vẽ lĩ' mūs	nõ lĩ' mūs	mã lĩ' mūs
vẽ lĩ' tīs	nõ lĩ' tīs	mã lĩ' tīs
vẽ' lint	nõ' lint	mã' lint

Imperfect.

I should be willing, unwilling, more willing

vel' lẽm	nol' lẽm	mal' lẽm
vel' lēs	nol' lēs	mal' lēs
vel' lět	nol' lět	mal' lět
vel lē' mūs	nol lē' mūs	mal lē' mūs
vel lē' tīs	nol lē' tīs	mal lē' tīs
vel' lent	nol' lent	mal' lent

Perfect.

I may have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lǔ' ẽ rĩm	nõ lǔ' ẽ rĩm	mã lǔ' ẽ rĩm
võ lǔ' ẽ rīs	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīs	mã lǔ' ẽ rīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rīt	nõ lǔ' ẽ rīt	mã lǔ' ẽ rīt
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lǔ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lǔ' ẽ rint	nõ lǔ' ẽ rint	mã lǔ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I should have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lū is' sēm	nō lū is' sēm	mā lū is' sēm
võ lū is' sēs	nō lū is' sēs	mā lū is' sēs
võ lū is' sēt	nō lū is' sēt	mā lū is' sēt
võ lū is sē' mūs	nō lū is sē' mūs	mā lū is sē' mūs
võ lū is sē' tīs	nō lū is sē' tīs	mā lū is sē' tīs
võ lū is' sent	nō lū is' sent	mā lū is' sent

IMPERATIVE.

be unwilling, &c.

<i>wanting</i>	Pres. S.	nō' lī	Pl.	nō lī' tē	<i>wanting</i>
	Fut. "	nō lī' tō	"	nō lī tō' tē	
		nō lī' tō		nō lun' tō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. vel' lē, nol' lē, mal' lē, *to be willing, &c.*

Perf. võ lū is' sē, nō lū is' sē, mā lū is' sē, *to have been willing, &c.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. vō' lens, *willing* nō' lens, *unwilling* *wanting*

GERUND.

Gen. vō len' dī nō len' dī *wanting*

Dat. vō len' dō

[175. 176.]

406. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

ěō, irě, *to go*

Perfect.

ivī

Supine.

ītūm

INDICATIVE.

ě' ō, *I go*

īs

īt

ī' mūs

ī' tīs

ě' unt

Present.

ě' ām, *I may go*

ě' ās

ě' āt

ě' ā' mūs

ě' ā' tīs

ě' ant

Imperfect.

ī' bām, *I was going*

ī' bās

ī' bāt

ī' bā' mūs

ī' bā' tīs

ī' bant

ī' rēm, *I should go*

ī' rēs

ī' rēt

ī' rē' mūs

ī' rē' tīs

ī' rent

INDICATIVE.

I shall go
 i' bō
 i' bīs
 i' bīt
 i' bī mūs
 ī' bī tīs
 i' bunt

I went or have gone
 i' vī (ī' ī)
 ī' vi' stī (ī i' stī)
 i' vīt (ī' īt)
 i' vī mūs (ī' ī mūs)
 ī' vi' stīs (ī i' stīs)
 i' vē' runt (ī ē' runt)

I had gone
 i' vē rām (ī' ē rām)
 i' vē rās, (ī' ē rās)
 i' vē rāt, (ī' ē rāt)
 i' vē rā' mūs (ī ē rā' mūs)
 i' vē rā' tīs (ī ē rā' tīs)
 i' vē rant (ī ē rant)

I shall have gone
 i' vē rō (ī' ē rō)
 i' vē rīs (ī' ē rīs)
 i' vē rīt, (ī' ē rīt)
 i' vē rī mūs (ī ē rī mūs)
 i' vē rī tīs (ī ē rī tīs)
 i' vē rint (ī' ē rint)

Singular.

Pres. i, go
 Fut. i' tō, thou shalt go
 i' tō, he shall go

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

I may be about to go
 i tū' rūš, { sīm
 -ā, -ūm { sīs
 { sīt
 i tū' rī, { sī' mūs
 -ae, -ā { sī' tīs
 { sint

Perfect.

I may have gone
 i' vē rīm (ī' ē rīm)
 i' vē rīs (ī' ē rīs)
 i' vē rīt (ī' ē rīt)
 i' vē rī mūs (ī ē rī mūs)
 i' vē rī tīs (ī ē rī tīs)
 i' vē rint (ī' ē rint)

Pluperfect.

I should have gone
 i vis' sēm (īs' sēm)
 i vis' sēs (īs' sēs)
 i vis' sēt (īs' sēt)
 i vis' sē' mūs (īs' sē' mūs)
 i vis' sē' tīs (īs' sē' tīs)
 i vis' sent (īs' sent)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Plural.

i' tē, go ye
 i tō' tē, ye shall go
 ē un' tō, they shall go

INFINITIVE.

Pres. i' rē, to go
 Perf. i vis' sē (īs' sē), to have gone
 Fut. i tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., to be about to go

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *ī' ens*, Gen. *ě un' tīs*, *going*

Fut. *ī tū' rūš*, *-ǎ*, *-ūm*, *being about to go*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. *ě un' dī*, *of going*

Dat. *ě un' dō*, *for going*

Acc. *ě un' dūm*, *going*

Abl. *ě un' dō*, *by going*

ī' tūm } *to go*
ī' tū }

[177. 178]

407. The Compounds of *ěō* are conjugated in the same way. But usually they drop the *v* of the Perfect as: *rědī* for *rědīvī*, &c., and contract the *ī ī* of the Perfect Infinitive and of the Pluperfect Subjunctive into *ī*, as: *rědīssě* for *rědī(v)issě*, &c., e. g.:

ǎběō, *-īrě*, *to go away*

praetěrěō, *-īrě*, *to pass by*

īněō, *-īrě*, *to go into, begin*

rěděō, *-īrě*, *to return*

intěrěō, *-īrě*, *to perish*

sūběō, *-īrě*, *to come or go under*

ōběō, *-īrě*, *to meet*

transěō, *-īrě*, *to pass over*

408. The Compounds *věněō*, *I am for sale*, and *pěrěō*, *I perish*, serve as Passives to *vendō*, *I sell*, and *perdō*, *I ruin*. The Compound *ambīō*, *I go about, seek*, is regular of the Fourth Conjugation.

409. *quěō* *quīrě*, *to be able* *quīvī* *quītūm*

něquěō *něquīrě*, *not to be able* *něquīvī* *něquītūm*

are conjugated like *īrě*, *to go* (406); they are, however, usual only in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

410. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

Supine.

ědō, *-ěrě*, *to eat*

ědī

ěsūm

(regular of the 3d conjugation, 373) has also some contracted forms, similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *essě*, *to be*, but always with *e* long before *s*, viz.:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ědis *ěs*, *thou eatest*

ědērēm

ěssēm, *I should eat*

ědit *ěst*, *he eats*

ědērēs

ěssēs, *thou wouldst eat*

ěditīs *ěstīs*, *you eat*

ědērēt

ěssēt, *he would eat*

ědērēmūs

ěssēmūs, *we should eat*

ědērētīs

ěssētīs, *you would eat*

ědērent

ěssēt, *they would eat*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. *ědě* *ěs*, *eat thou*

ěditě

ěstě, *eat ye*

Fut. *ěditō* *ěstō*, *thou shalt eat*

ěditōtě

ěstōtě, *ye shall eat*

ěditō *ěstō*, *he shall eat*

INFINITIVE.

ěděřě ěssě, to eat

PASSIVE. ědītūr ěstūr, is eaten—ěděřētūr ěssētūr, should be eaten

411. Pres. Ind & Pres. Inf. Perfect.
fīō, fīēri, to become factūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fī' ō, I become

fī' ām, I may become

fīs

fī' ās

fīt

fī' āt

fī' mūs

fī' ā' mūs

fī' tīs

fī' ā' tīs

fī' unt

fī' ant

Imperfect.

fī' ē' bām, I became

fī' ě rēm, I should become

fī' ē' bās

fī' ě rēs

fī' ē' bāt

fī' ě rēt

fī' ē' bā' mūs

fī' ě rē' mūs

fī' ē' bā' tīs

fī' ě rē' tīs

fī' ē' bant

fī' ě rent

Future.

fī' ām, I shall become

(wanting)

fī' ēs

fī' ět

fī' ē' mūs

fī' ē' tīs

fī' ent

Perfect.

I became or have become
factūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, &c.

I may have become
factūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had become
factūs, -ā, -ūm ěrām, &c.

I should have become
factūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have become
factūs, -ā, -ūm ěrō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī, become thou

Plur. fī' tě, become ye

		INDICATIVE.		
Perf.	<i>I have begun</i>	<i>I remember</i>	<i>I hate</i>	
	coe' pī	mě' mī nī	ō' dī	
	coe pi' stī	mě mī ni' stī	ō di' stī	
	coe' pīt	mě' mī nīt	ō' dīt	
	coe' pī mūs	mě mī' nī mūs	ō' dī mūs	
	coe pi' stīs	mě mī ni' stīs	ō di' stīs	
	coe pē' runt	mě mī nē' runt	ō dē' runt	
Pluperf.	coe' pě rām, &c.	mě mī' ně rām, &c.	ō' dē rām, &c.	
Fut. Perf.	coe' pě rō, &c.	mě mī' ně rō, &c.	ō' dē rō, &c.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Perf.	coe' pě rīm, &c.	mě mī' ně rīm, &c.	ō' dē rīm, &c.	
Pluperf.	coe pis' sēm, &c.	mě mī nis' sēm, &c.	ō dis' sēm, &c.	
IMPERATIVE.				
	(wanting)	mě men' tō	(wanting)	
		mě men tō' tē		
INFINITIVE.				
Perf.	coe pis' sě	mě mī nis' sě	ō dis' sě	
Fut.	coop tū' rūs es' sě	(wanting)	ō sū' rūs es' sě	
PARTICIPLES.				
Perf.	coop' tūs, -ǎ, -ǔm	(wanting)	(ō' sūs, -ǎ, -ǔm)	
Fut.	coop tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ǔm	(wanting)	ō sū' rūs, -ǎ, -ǔm	
PASSIVE.	coop' tūs, -ǎ, -ǔm sūm, <i>I have begun</i> (used with the Pass. Infinit.)			
	ō' sūs, -ǎ, -ǔm sūm, <i>I hate</i>			

416. ājō, *I say, say yes, affirm* — inquām, *I say, quoth I* —
fārī, *to speak*

PRES. IND.	ā' jō	PRES. SUBJ.	—	IMP. IND.	ā jē' bām
	á' is		á' jās		ā jē' bās
	ǎ' it		ǎ' jāt		ā jē' bāt
	—		—		ā jē bā' mūs
	—		—		ā jē bā' tīs
	ā' junt		ā' jant		ā jē' bant
PERF. IND.	—	—	ǎ' ít	—	—
PARTICIPLE.	ā' jens, <i>affirmative</i>				

<p>PRES. IND. in' quām in' quīs in' quīt in' quī mūs in' quī tīs in' quī unt</p> <p>IMP. IND. in quī ē' bām in quī ē' bās in quī ē' bāt in quī ē bā' mūs in quī ē bā' tīs in quī ē' bant</p> <p>PERF. IND. — in qui' stī in' quīt</p> <hr/> <p>in qui' stīs</p>	<p>PRES. SUBJ. — in' quī ās in' quī āt</p> <hr/> <p>in quī ā' tīs in' quī ant</p> <p>FUT. IND. — in' quī ēs in' quī ēt</p> <p>IMPERAT. in' quē in' quī tē in' quī tō</p>
--	---

inquām, *say*, is used only in direct quotations, as the English *quoth*.

Besides the Infinitive *fārī*, *to speak*, mark:

Pres. fātūr, <i>he speaks</i>	Imperat. fārē, <i>speak thou</i>
Fut. fābör, <i>I shall speak</i>	Gerund. fandī, <i>of speaking</i>
fābītūr, <i>he will speak</i>	fandō, <i>for speaking</i>
Perf. fātūs sūm, <i>I have spoken, &c.</i>	Supine. fātū, <i>to speak</i>
Participle. (fantīs, fantī) infans, <i>speechless</i>	
Gerundive. fandūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>to be spoken of</i>	

417. ā' vē	sal' vē	sal vē' bīs, <i>hail thou!</i>	vā' lē	} <i>fare-</i> <i>well</i>
ā vē' tē	sal vē' tē	<i>hail ye!</i>	vā lē' tē	
ā' gē	ā' gī tē	<i>come</i>	ā' pā gē, <i>be gone</i>	
cē' dō	cet' tē	<i>give</i>		

418. To these may be added:

quae' sō, <i>I beseech</i>	fō' rēm, <i>I should be</i>
quae' sū mūs, <i>we beseech</i>	fō' rēs, <i>thou shouldst be</i>
	fō' rēt, <i>he should be</i>
	fō' rent, <i>they should be</i>
	fō' rē, <i>to be about to be</i>

Impersonal Verbs.

419. Many Verbs appear only in the *third person singular* and in the *Infinitive* to express an action or condition without reference to any actor. These are called **Impersonal Verbs**.

420. The following Verbs signifying *personal conditions* are **absolutely impersonal**:

Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.
děcět, <i>it becomes</i>	děcērě	děcūit
děděcět, <i>it is unbecoming</i>	děděcērě	děděcūit
libět, <i>it pleases</i>	libērě	libūit or libitūm est
licět, <i>it is lawful, allowed</i>	licērě	licūit or licitūm est
liquět, <i>it is clear</i>	liquērě	licūit
mīsērět, <i>it excites pity</i>	mīsērērě	{ mīsērītūm } { mīsertūm } est
ōportět, <i>it is needful</i>	ōportērě	ōportūit
pīgět, <i>it grieves</i>	pīgērě	pīgūit or pīgītūm est
paenītět, <i>it causes sorrow</i>	paenītērě	paenītūit
pūdět, <i>it shames</i>	pūdērě	pūdūit or pūdītūm est
taedět, <i>it wearies</i>	taedērě	pertaesūm est

421. The Impersonals děcět, děděcět, libět, licět can have a subject, but only a neuter pronoun or adjective.

libět, licět and liquět govern the **Dative**, as mihĭ licět, *it is lawful for me*; mihĭ libět, *it pleases me*. All the other verbs mentioned in **420** govern the **Accusative**, the persons being expressed as follows:

INDICATIVE.	Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
paenītět mē , <i>I repent</i>	paenītěāt mē , <i>I may repent</i>	
paenītět tē	paenītěāt tē	
paenītět ěūm	paenītěāt ěūm	
paenītět nōs	paenītěāt nōs	
paenītět vōs	paenītěāt vōs	
paenītět ěōs	paenītěāt ěōs	
	Imperfect.	
<i>I was repenting</i>		<i>I should repent</i>
paenītěbāt mē , &c.		paenītěrět mē , &c.
	Future.	
<i>I shall repent</i>		<i>(wanting)</i>
paenītěbīt mē , &c.		

INDICATIVE.

I (have) repented
paenitūit **mē**, &c.

I had repented
paenitūērāt **mē**, &c.

I shall have repented
paenitūērīt **mē**, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I may have repented
paenitūērīt **mē**, &c.

Pluperfect.

I should have repented
paenitūissēt **mē**, &c.

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

422. Verbs describing *phenomena of nature* are almost invariably impersonal in virtue of their meaning:

plūit, *it rains*

ningīt, *it snows*

grandīnāt, *it hails*

tōnāt, *it thunders*

fulgūrāt } *it lightens*

fulmīnāt }

lūcescīt, *it becomes light*

vespērascīt, *evening comes on*

423. Verbs *impersonally* used:*

accīdīt

fīt

ēvēnīt

contingīt

constāt, *it is evident, agreed*

expēdīt, *it is useful*

convēnīt, *it is fit*

dēlectāt, *it delights*

intērest, *it concerns, it matters*

jūvāt, *it delights*

pātēt, *it is plain*

plācēt, *it pleases*

praestāt, *it is better*

rēfert, *it concerns, it matters*

restāt, *it remains*

vācāt, *there is leisure*

The **Passive** of intransitive Verbs is often used *impersonally*, thus:

vīvītūr, *people live*

sīc vīvītūr, *such is life*

pugnātūr, *there is fighting*

itūr, *some one goes*

[183. 184.]

ADVERBS.

424. **Adverbs** are words qualifying verbs and adjectives, as also other adverbs. In respect to form, they are **Primitive**, i. e. such as cannot be traced to simpler forms, or **Derivative**.

425. The majority of **Derivative Adverbs** are formed from adjectives in the following manner: Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** (ending in **ūs**, and **ēr**) form the adverb by changing the genitive ending **ī** into **ē**. Examples are:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
lentūs, <i>slow</i>	lentī	lentē, <i>slowly, leisurely</i>
rectūs, <i>right</i>	rectī	rectē, <i>rightly, correctly</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libērē, <i>freely</i>
pulchēr, <i>fine</i>	pulchrī	pulchrē, <i>finely</i>

bōnūs, *good*, makes bēné, *well*; mālūs, *bad*, makes mālě, *badly*.

426. Adjectives of the **Third Declension** form their adverbs in **tēr**, changing the genitive ending **īs** into **ītēr**; but those in **ns** and **rs** change the genitive ending **īs** into **ēr**:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
cělēr, <i>fast</i>	cělērīs	cělērītēr, <i>fast</i>
fēlix, <i>happy</i>	fēlicīs	fēlicītēr, <i>happily</i>
fortīs, <i>brave</i>	fortīs	fortītēr, <i>bravely</i>
libens, <i>willing</i>	libentīs	libentēr, <i>willingly</i>
pātiens, <i>patient</i>	pātientīs	pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>
diligens, <i>careful</i>	diligentīs	diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>
ēlēgans, <i>elegant</i>	ēlēgantīs	ēlēgantēr, <i>elegantly</i>
sollers, <i>skillful</i>	sollertīs	sollertēr, <i>skillfully</i>

[97. 98.]

427. Some Adverbs from Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** have *both* forms, as:

firmūs, <i>strong</i>	firmē, firmītēr, <i>strongly</i>
hūmānūs, <i>human</i>	hūmānē, hūmānītēr, <i>humanly</i>
largūs, <i>large</i>	largē, largītēr, <i>largely</i>
ōpūlentūs, <i>rich</i>	ōpūlentēr only, <i>richly</i>
viōlentūs, <i>violent</i>	viōlentēr “, <i>violently</i>

428. A few Adverbs differ in meaning from their adjectives, as:

sānē, <i>certainly</i>	from sānūs, <i>sound</i>
valdē, <i>very</i>	from vālīdūs, <i>strong</i>

429. The **Neuter Accusative** of some Adjectives of the 3d declension is used as an adverb, as:

fācīlē, <i>easily</i>	impūnē, <i>with impunity</i>
diffīcīlē, <i>with difficulty</i>	rēcens, <i>recently</i>

430. Certain **Cases** of *Adjectives, Nouns* and *Pronouns* are often used as Adverbs:

rārō, <i>rarely</i>	contīnūō, <i>forthwith</i>
tūtō, <i>safely</i>	falsō, <i>falsely</i>
cītō, <i>quickly, soon</i>	fortūtō, <i>by chance</i>
consultō, <i>purposely</i>	grātūtō, <i>gratuitously</i>

sēcrētō, *secretly*

sērō, *late*

vērō, *in truth*

vērē, *truly*

hāc, *this way*

spontě, *of one's own accord*

grātis, *gratis*

cētērūm, *for the rest*

nīmīs, nīmīūm, *too much*

prīmūm, *first*

tantūm, *only*

mānifestō, *clearly*

měřitō, *deservedly*

imměřitō, *undeservedly*

něcessārīō, *necessarily*

perpětūō, *perpetually*

sūbitō, *suddenly*

certō, *in fact*

certě, *assuredly*

crěbrō, *frequently*

quō, *whither*

fortě, *by chance*

noctū, *by night*

431. Some **Phrases** or **Clauses** have grown into **Adverbs**, as:

antěā, *before*

intěrěā, *meanwhile*

proptěrěā, *therefore*

hōdĕ (= hōc dĕ), *to-day*

magnōpěrě, *particularly*

obvĕām, *towards*

quōdammodō, *in a certain man-*

quōtannīs, *every year* [ner

vidělĕcĕt = viděřě lĕcĕt } *viz.*

scĕlĕcĕt = scĕřě lĕcĕt }

nūdĕs tertĕs = nunc dĕs ter-

tĕs, *the day before yesterday*

432. **Adverbs** in **ĭm** are formed from **Supines**, as:

certātĭm, *emulously*

nōmĭnātĭm, *expressly*

prĭvātĭm, *in private*

stātĭm, *steadily*

sensĭm, *little by little*

carptĭm, *by pieces*

cursĭm, *speedily*

passĭm, *here and there*

raptĭm, *hastily*

433. Similar **Adverbs** (in **ātĭm**, **ĭtĭm**) are formed from

Nouns, as:

grādātĭm, *step by step*

tribūtĭm, *by tribes*

vĭcĭssĭm. *by turns*

vĭrĭtĭm, *man by man*

434. A number of **Adverbs** come from **Nouns** by changing the **Genitive**-ending into **ĭtūs**:

antĭquĭtūs, *of old*

dĭvĭnĭtūs, *divinely*

caelĭtūs, *from heaven*

rādĭcĭtūs, *by the roots*

fundĭtūs, *from the foundation*

pĕnĭtūs, *thoroughly*

435. In respect to **Meaning**. **Adverbs** may be divided into several classes:

Adverbs of Place and Motion,

Adverbs of Time and Succession,

Adverbs of Manner and Quality.

436. Adverbs of Place are those which answer to the question *where?* **ŭbĭ?** *whither?* **quō?** *whence?* **undĕ?**

<i>ŭbĭ where?</i>	<i>ălicŭbĭ, somewhere</i>	<i>obviām, toward</i>
<i>ĭbĭ, there</i>	<i>ŭbĭquĕ, everywhere</i>	<i>ălibĭ, elsewhere</i>
<i>hic, here</i>	<i>quā? by what way?</i>	<i>fōris, outside</i>
<i>illĭc, there</i>	<i>nusquām, nowhere</i>	<i>prōcŭl, far</i>
<i>quō, whither?</i>	<i>hŭc, hither</i>	<i>retrō, backward</i>
<i>ĕō, thither</i>	<i>illŭc, thither</i>	<i>fōrās, out</i>
<i>undĕ, whence</i>	<i>istinc, thence</i>	<i>undĭquĕ, from all</i>
<i>indĕ, thence</i>	<i>illinc, then</i>	<i>sides</i>
<i>hinc, hence</i>		<i>dĕsŭpĕr, from above</i>

The following are also used as **Prepositions**:

<i>circā, around, about</i>	<i>intrā, inside</i>	<i>pōnĕ, pōst, behind</i>
<i>contrā, opposite</i>	<i>suprā, above</i>	<i>prōpĕ, near</i>
<i>extrā, outside</i>	<i>infra, below</i>	<i>cōrām, personally</i>

437. Adverbs of Time are those which answer to the question *when?* **quandō?** *how long?* **quamdiŭ?** *how often?* **quōtiĕns?**

<i>quandō? when?</i>	<i>hĕrĭ, yesterday</i>
<i>ălĭquandō, once</i>	<i>nŭdiŭs tertĭŭs, the day before</i>
<i>interdŭm, sometimes</i>	<i>yesterday</i>
<i>intĕrĭm, meanwhile</i>	<i>postrĭdĭĕ, the day after</i>
<i>intĕrĕā, in the meantime</i>	<i>crās, to-morrow</i>
<i>illĭcō, on the spot</i>	<i>pĕrendĭĕ, the day after to-mor-</i>
<i>sĭmŭl, at the same time</i>	<i>unquām, ever</i> [row
<i>jām, already</i>	<i>nunquām, never</i>
<i>tandĕm, at last</i>	<i>sempĕr, always</i>
<i>dĕmŭm, not until</i>	<i>plĕrumquĕ, commonly</i>
<i>ăliās, at other times</i>	<i>propĕdiĕm, one of these days</i>
<i>nunc, now</i>	<i>posthăc, hereafter</i>
<i>hōdiĕ, to-day</i>	<i>postĕā, afterwards</i>
<i>mōdō, just now</i>	<i>mox, soon</i>
<i>nŭpĕr, lately</i>	<i>mănĕ, early in the morning</i>
<i>prĭdĕm, long since</i>	<i>interdiŭ, by day</i>
<i>quondām, once</i>	<i>vespĕrĭ, in the evening</i>
<i>antĕā, before</i>	<i>noctŭ, by night</i>
<i>tunc, at that time</i>	<i>dĕindĕ, afterwards</i>
<i>tŭm, then</i>	<i>sŭbindĕ, presently</i>
<i>prĭdĭĕ, the day before</i>	<i>dĕinceps, in turn</i>
<i>praetĕrĕā, besides</i>	<i>ăbhinc, hereafter</i>

antĕ, before, also used as a **Preposition**.

quamdīū? *how long?*
 tamdīū, *so long*
 āliquamdīū, *some time*
 dūdūm, *a short time ago*
 quōtīens? *how often?*
 tōtīens, *so often*
 āliquōtīens, *some times*
 itērūm, *a second time*
 rursūs, *again*
 dēnūō, *anew*

usquē, *right on*
 pārumpēr } *for a short time*
 paulispēr }
 tantispēr, *so long*
 saepē, *often*
 quōtidīē, *every day*
 quōtannīs, *every year*
 sēmēl, *once*
 bīs, *twice*, and all the other
Numeral Adverbs, 241.

438. Adverbs of manner are those which answer to the question *how?* **quōmōdō?** To this class belong all **Adverbs** derived from **Adjectives**, **425**. Besides these regular **Adverbs of manner** mark the following:

quōmōdō } *how*
 quēmadmōdūm }
 ūt, ūtī, *as*
 sīc } *so*
 itā }
 ādēō, *so, to that degree*
 quām, *how, how much*
 tām, *so, so much*
 ālīter } *otherwise*
 sēcūs }
 sātīs, *enough*
 sātīūs, *rather*
 valdē } *very*
 admōdūm }
 quantōpērē, *how greatly*
 tantōpērē, *so greatly*
 nīmīs, nīmīūm, *too much*
 praecipūē, *especially*
 frustrā, *in vain*
 tēmērē, *at random*
 vix, *hardly*
 mōdō, *only*
 idēō }
 proptērēā } *therefore*
 idcirco }
 itēm, *just so, also*
 porrō, *moreover, then*

fērē, fermē, *almost*
 saltēm, *at least*
 paenē, *nearly*
 fortassē, *perhaps*
 pālām, *publicly*
 rēpentē, *suddenly*
 nempē } *to wit*
 scilicēt }
 paulātīm, *by degrees*
 pēnītūs, *wholly*
 plānē, *quite*
 omnīnō, *at all*
 nae } *at any rate*
 ūtīquē }
 sānē, *certainly*
 nīmīrūm, *to be sure*
 nōn } *no*
 haud }
 haudquāquām } *by no means*
 nēquāquām }
 nē-quīdēm, *not even*
 neutīquām, *not at all*
 immō, *on the contrary*
 cūr } *why*
 quārē }
 prōpē, *near* } *also prep.*
 clām, *secretly* }

439. The following Adverbs are called **Correlatives**, because they answer to each other.

Interrogative.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
	I. <i>Of Place:</i>	
ūbī? <i>where?</i>	ibī, <i>there</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>
quā? <i>which way?</i>	hāc, <i>this way</i>	quā, <i>which way</i>
undē? <i>whence?</i>	indē, <i>thence</i>	undē, <i>whence</i>
	hinc, <i>hence</i>	
	illinc, <i>thence</i>	
	istinc, <i>thence</i>	
quō? <i>whither?</i>	ēō, <i>thither</i>	quō, <i>whither</i>
	hūc, <i>hither</i>	
	illūc, <i>thither</i>	
	istūc, <i>thither</i>	
	II. <i>Of Time:</i>	
quandō? <i>when?</i>	tūm, <i>then</i>	cūm, <i>when</i>
	tunc, <i>at that time</i>	
quōtīens? <i>how often?</i>	tōtīens, <i>so often</i>	quōtīens, <i>as often as</i>
	III. <i>Of Manner:</i>	
quōmōdō? <i>how?</i>	itā, sic, <i>so, thus</i>	ūt, utī, <i>as</i>
quā? <i>how much?</i>	tām, <i>so much</i>	quā, <i>as</i>

[185. 186.]

Comparison of Adverbs.

440. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. Their comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing **ūs** into **ē**.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
clārē, <i>brightly</i>	clārīūs, <i>more brightly</i>	clārissimē, <i>most brightly</i>
fācilē, <i>easily</i>	fāciliūs, <i>more easily</i>	fācillimē, <i>most easily</i>
diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>	diligentiūs, <i>more carefully</i>	diligentissimē, <i>most carefully</i>
pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>	pātientiūs, <i>more patiently</i>	pātientissimē, <i>most patiently</i>

441. The following are **Irregular**:

běně, <i>well</i>	měliūs, <i>better</i>	optímě, <i>best</i>
málně, <i>badly</i>	pějūs, <i>worse</i>	pessímě, <i>worst</i>
multům, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimům, <i>most</i>
nōn multům, <i>little</i>	mínūs, <i>less</i>	mínimě, <i>least</i>
magnōpěřě, <i>greatly</i>	māgīs, <i>more</i>	maxímě, <i>most</i>
dīū, <i>for a long time</i>	dīūtīūs, <i>longer</i>	dīūtissímě, <i>very long</i>
saepě, <i>often</i>	saepīūs, <i>oftener</i>	saepissímě, <i>oftenest</i>
prōpě, <i>near</i>	prōpīūs, <i>nearer</i>	proxímě, <i>nearest</i>

442. The following are **Defective**:

—	dětěřiūs, <i>worse</i>	dětěrrímě, <i>worst</i>
—	ōciūs, <i>more quickly</i>	ōcissímě, <i>most quickly</i>
—	pōtīūs, <i>rather</i>	pōtissímům, <i>most of all</i>
—	prīūs, <i>sooner</i>	prīmům, <i>prīmō, first</i>
měritō, <i>deservedly</i>	—	měritissímō, <i>most deservedly</i>
nūpěr, <i>lately</i>	—	nūperrímě, <i>very lately</i>
sātīs, <i>enough</i>	sātīūs, <i>better</i>	—
sēcūs, <i>otherwise</i>	sěquīūs, <i>less</i>	—

[97. 98.]

PREPOSITIONS.

443. The Latin **Prepositions** are regularly used with some special case of a noun or pronoun, either the **Accusative** or **Ablative**.

444. The following are used with the **Accusative**:

ād, <i>to, at, toward</i>	ōb, <i>for, on account of</i>
adversūs, <i>adversum, against,</i> <i>toward</i>	pěněs, <i>in the power of</i>
antě, <i>before</i>	pěr, <i>through, by, during</i>
āpūd, <i>at, with, near</i>	pōně, <i>behind</i>
circā, <i>circum, around</i>	post, <i>after, behind</i>
circitěr, <i>about, near</i>	praetěr, <i>past, beside, except</i>
cīs, <i>citrā, on this side of</i>	prōpě, <i>near</i>
contrā, <i>against, opposite to</i>	proptěr, <i>on account of, close by</i>
ergā, <i>toward, unto</i>	sēcundům, <i>after, next to, accord-</i> <i>ing to, along</i>
extrā, <i>without, beyond</i>	sūprā, <i>above</i>
infrā, <i>under, beneath</i>	trans, <i>across, over, beyond</i>
intěr, <i>between, among</i>	ultrā, <i>beyond, on the further</i> <i>side of, past</i>
intrā, <i>within</i>	versūs, <i>toward</i>
juxtā, <i>near, beside</i>	

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

445. The following are used with the **Ablative**:

ā	} <i>from, away from</i>	dě, <i>from, down from, of</i> = <i>about</i>
āb		ě, <i>ex, from, out of</i>
abs	} <i>without, but for</i>	prae, <i>for, before, in comparison with</i>
absquē, <i>without, but for</i>		prō, <i>for, instead of</i>
clām, <i>without the knowledge of</i>		síně, <i>without</i>
cōrām, <i>in presence of</i>		těnúš, <i>as far as, up to</i>
cŭm, <i>with</i>		

446. Prepositions with the **Accusative** and **Ablative**, but strictly with a difference of meaning:

in, *into, in*; **sŭb**, *under*; **subtěr**, *beneath*; **sŭpěr**, *above*.

in and **sŭb**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion to*, when by the **Ablative** *rest in*, a place.

[93. 94. 95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

CONJUNCTIONS.

447. Conjunctions connect words and sentences. According to their use, they are divided into **Co-ordinating** and **Subordinating** Conjunctions.

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

448. Co-ordinating Conjunctions are those that join together sentences of equal order or rank.

449.

Copulative.

ět	} <i>and</i>	ětĩām	} <i>also</i>
-quě		quōquě	
atquě		něc	} <i>and not</i>
āc		něquě	
ět. .ět, <i>both. .and</i>		něquě. .něquě	} <i>neither. .nor</i>
cŭm. .tŭm, <i>both. .and especially</i>		něc. .něc	
mōdō. .mōdō	} <i>now. .now</i>	něquě. .-quě, <i>on the one hand</i>	} <i>not. .and on the other</i>
nunc. .nunc		tŭm. .tŭm, <i>then. .then</i>	
tŭm. .tŭm, <i>then. .then</i>		tām. .quām, <i>both. .and</i>	<i>and on the other hand not</i>
nōn sōlŭm. .sěd ětĩām	} <i>not only. .but also</i>		
nōn mōdō. .sěd ětĩām			
nōn tantŭm. .sěd ětĩām			

450.

aut }
 vĕl } *or*
 -vĕ }
 sĭvĕ }

Disjunctive.

aut..aut }
 vĕl..vĕl } *either..or*
 sĭvĕ..sĭvĕ, *whether..or*

451.

autĕm }
 sĕd } *but*
 vĕrŭm }
 vĕrŏ }
 ět }
 attĕmĕn, *but yet*

Adversative.

atquĭ, *but for all that*
 tĕmĕn, *nevertheless*
 cĕtĕrŭm, *for the rest*
 ět vĕrŏ, *but in truth*
 vĕrŭm ěnĭm vĕrŏ, *but in truth*
 vĕrumtĕmĕn, *but yet*

452.

nĕm, namquĕ, *for*

Causal.

ěnĭm, ětĕnĭm, *for*

453.

ĭtĕaquĕ }
 ĭgĭtŭr } *therefore*
 ergŏ }
 ěŏ }
 ĭdĕŏ } *on that account*
 ĭdeircŏ }

Illative.

prŏĭndĕ, *accordingly*
 proptĕrĕĕ, *therefore*
 quĕrĕ }
 quĕm ŏb rĕm } *wherefore*
 quĕproptĕr }
 quŏcĭrcĕ }

[99. 100. 189. 190. 295-300.]

Subordinating Conjunctions.

454. Subordinating Conjunctions are those which join a subordinate sentence to that on which it depends.

455.

postquĕm, *after that, after*
 ŭt, *as*
 ŭbĭ, *when*
 sĭmŭlĕc } *as soon as*
 sĭmŭlatquĕ }
 ŭt prĭmŭm } *the first moment*
 cŭm prĭmŭm } *that*

Temporal.

cŭm, *when*
 dŭm } *while, until*
 dŏnĕc }
 quŏĕd, *up to*
 quamdĭŭ, *as long as*
 antĕquĕm } *before that, before*
 prĭusquĕm }

[257. 258.]

456.

quĭā } *because*
quōd }
cūm, *as, since*

Causal.

quōnĭām }
quandō } *since, in as*
quandōquĭdēm } *much as*
sĭquĭdēm } [259. 260.]

457.

sĭ, *if*
nĭsĭ, *unless*
sĭ nōn, *if not*
dummōdō }
dŭm } *if only, provided*
mōdō }

Conditional.

sĭ mōdō, *if only*
sĭn, *if not, but if*
quodsĭ, *but if*
dummōdō nē }
dŭm nē } *provided only not*
mōdō nē } [261. 262.]

458.

etsĭ }
tāmetsĭ } *although*
ētĭamsĭ }
quamquām }

Concessive.

lĭcēt }
quamvĭs } *though, suppose,*
cūm } *whereas*
ŭt }

459.

ŭt, *that, in order that*
nē, *that not, lest*
nēvē (nēū), *and (that) not*

Final.

quō (= ut ēō), *in order that*
quōmĭnŭs, *that not*

460.

ŭt, *so that*

Consecutive.

ŭt nōn }
quĭn } *so that not*
[253 - 256.]

461.

ŭt }
sĭcŭt } *as, like as*
vēlŭt }
quām }
ŭt . . ĭtā }
quĕmadmōdŭm . . ĭtā } *as . . so*

Comparative.

tanquām }
quāsĭ } *as if*
ŭt sĭ }
āc sĭ }
prōindĕ āc sĭ }

462.

-nĕ }
nŭm } *whether*
utrŭm }
ān }

Interrogative.

nonnĕ, *whether not*
annōn } *or not*
necnĕ }

INTERJECTIONS.

463. An **Interjection** is not in the proper sense a part of speech, since it is not in grammatical construction with a sentence, but is *thrown in* as a direct intimation of feeling or of will.

464. The **Interjections** most commonly used are:

Of painful feeling or suffering:

hēi, hēu, *ah, alas!* ō, *oh!* vae, *alas, woe!*

Of surprise or astonishment:

ēccě, ēn, *behold!* hēm, *oho!* ō, *oh!*

Of calling attention:

hēus, *ho!* ō, *lo!* ōhē, *holloa!* prō, *hollo!*

WORD-FORMATION.

465. There are two modes of forming words, viz.:

Derivation, or the formation of words by derivative endings (suffixes), and **Composition**, or the combination of two words expressing distinct ideas so as to form one word expressing one idea.

466. With reference to *derivation*, words are distinguished as **primitive** or **stem-words**, and **derivative**; with reference to *composition*, as **simple** and **compound**. The derived and compounded words greatly outnumber the so-called stem-words.

DERIVATION.

467. All words which may be grouped into one family so as to associate their meaning are said to have a common ground-form or **Root**. Thus:

ācūō, -ērē, *to whet*

ācūs, -ūs, *a needle*

ācūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *sharp*

ācēr, -rīs, -rē, *sharp*

ācūmēn, -īnīs, *acuteness*

ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *sharp*

āciēs, -ēī, *an edge*

ācidūs, -ā, -ūm, *sour*

may all be retraced to the ROOT AC.

468. The **Stem** must be distinguished from the **Root**. The stem is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Inflections*, as: *áčü-ěrě*, to whet, stem *áčü*. . Again, the root is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Suffix*; thus the verb-stem *áčü* belongs to the root **AC**.

469. As a rule, **Derivatives** are formed by means of **Suffixes**, or significant endings which are added to the stem-word to define or modify its meaning.

Derivation of Verbs.

470. Primitive Verbs. Most verbs of the Third Conjugation, the Irregular Verbs and a few vowel-stems, namely: *dără*, *stără*, *flěrě*, *nără*, *něrě*, *rěrĭ*, are to be regarded as **Primitives**.

Verbs derived from Verbs.

471. Frequentatives end in *ārě* or *ĭtārě*, and denote a *forcible or repeated action*; they are derived either from Supines in *sŭm* or *tŭm*, as:

<i>dicō</i> , I say	<i>dictŭm</i>	<i>dictārě</i> , to dictate
<i>hăbĕō</i> , I have	<i>hăbitŭm</i>	<i>hăbitārě</i> , to have frequently
<i>currō</i> , I run	<i>cursŭm</i>	<i>cursārě</i> , to run about

or from the Present of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Conjugations, as:

<i>clămō</i> , I cry	<i>clămārě</i>	<i>clămĭtārě</i> , to cry out aloud
<i>lătĕō</i> , I am hid	<i>lătĕrĕ</i>	<i>lătĭtārě</i> , to lie hid
<i>ăgō</i> , I do	<i>ăgĕrĕ</i>	<i>ăgĭtārě</i> , to drive

472. Inceptives (Inchoatives) denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from vowel-stems (1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations) by adding *sc*, and from consonant-stems (3d Conjugation) by adding *isc*. The great majority of Inchoatives in *ascō* and *escō* come from Substantives and Adjectives, as:

<i>pŭĕrascō</i> , - <i>ěrĕ</i> , from <i>pŭĕr</i> , to attain the age of boyhood
<i>silvescō</i> , - <i>ěrĕ</i> , from <i>silvă</i> , to grow wild
<i>mĭtescō</i> , - <i>ěrĕ</i> , from <i>mĭtis</i> , to become mild

473. Desideratives denote *desire* or *tendency*. They are formed by changing *ŭrŭs* of the Future Participle into *ŭrĭō*, and are of the 4th Conjugation. Only a few are in common use:

<i>ĕsŭrĭō</i> , - <i>ĭrĕ</i> , to be hungry, from <i>ĕdō</i> , <i>ĕsŭrŭs</i>
<i>mōrĭtŭrĭō</i> , - <i>ĭrĕ</i> , to wish to die, from <i>mōrĭōr</i> , <i>mōrĭtŭrŭs</i> .

474. Diminutives denoting a *feeble* or *petty* action end in *illārē*, and are of the First Conjugation, as:

cantillārē, to chirp

scribillārē, to scribble.

Verbs derived from Substantives and Adjectives.

475. Verbs from *Substantives* and *Adjectives* are commonly called **Denominatives**. They belong to the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations. Verbs from *Substantives* signify either to *supply with that which the Substantive denotes*, or to *use or apply it*. Verbs from *Adjectives* usually signify, either as *intransitives*, to *be in* or to *pass into the condition denoted by the Adjective*, or else, as *transitives*, to *reduce something to that state*; for examples see below.

476. Active Verbs of the First Conjugation (*transitive*):

signūm – *signārē*, to mark

vulnūs – *vulnērārē*, to wound

curvūs – *curvārē*, to bend

nūdūs – *nūdārē*, to strip

mācūlā – *mācūlārē*, to spot

sānūs – *sānārē*, to heal

nōmen – *nōminārē*, to name

aptūs – *aptārē*, to fit

vox – *vōcārē*, to call

libēr – *libērārē*, to free

477. Active Verbs of the Second Conjugation (*intransitive*):

flōs – *flōrērē*, to bloom

albūs – *albērē*, to be white

frons – *frondērē*, to be in leaf

calvūs – *calvērē*, to be bald

lux – *lūcērē*, to shine

flāvūs – *flāvērē*, to be yellow

478. Active Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation (*either intransitive or transitive*):

finīs – *finīrē*, to finish

mollīs – *mollīrē*, to soften

poenā – *pūnīrē*, to punish

stābilīs – *stābilīrē*, to establish

vestīs – *vestīrē*, to clothe

lēnīs – *lēnīrē*, to assuage

sītīs – *sītīrē*, to be thirsty

saevūs – *saevīrē*, to rage

tussīs – *tussīrē*, to cough

sūperbūs – *sūperbīrē*, to be proud

servūs – *servīrē*, to serve

fērox – *fērōcīrē*, to be furious

479. Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation, signifying *condition*, *employment*:

dōmīnūs – *dōmīnārī*, to be master

auceps – *aucēpārī*, to catch birds

fāmūlūs – *fāmūlārī*, to serve

convīvā – *convīvārī*, to banquet

aemūlūs – *aemūlārī*, to emulate

cōmēs – *cōmītārī*, to accompany

fūr – *fūrārī*, to steal

āquā – *āquārī*, to fetch water

Derivation of Substantives.

Substantives derived from Substantives.

480. Diminutives generally end in:

ūlūs, ūlā, ūlūm; cūlūs, cūlā, cūlūm,

and regularly take the gender-ending of their **Primitives:**

nīdūs, <i>a nest</i>	nīdūlūs, <i>a little nest</i>
rīvūs, <i>a brook</i>	rīvūlūs, <i>a streamlet</i>
mensā, <i>a table</i>	mensūlā, <i>a little table</i>
saxūm, <i>a rock</i>	saxūlūm, <i>a little rock</i>
frātēr, <i>a brother</i>	frātercūlūs, <i>a little brother</i>
passēr, <i>a sparrow</i>	passercūlūs, <i>a little sparrow</i>
arbōr, <i>a tree</i>	arbuscūlā, <i>a small tree</i>
mūnūs, <i>a gift</i>	mūnuscūlūm, <i>a little gift</i>

481. After a vowel, **ōlūs, ōlā, ōlūm** are used. Some nouns form Diminutives in **ellūs, ellā, ellūm**; rarely **illūs, illā, illūm**.

filīūs, <i>a son</i>	filīōlūs, <i>a little son</i>
glādīūs, <i>a sword</i>	glādīōlūs, <i>a small sword</i>
filīā, <i>a daughter</i>	filīōlā, <i>a little daughter</i>
ātrīūm, <i>a hall</i>	ātrīōlūm, <i>a small hall</i>
libēr, <i>a book</i>	libellūs, <i>a little book</i>
tābūlā, <i>a table</i>	tābellā, <i>a tablet</i>
lāpīs, <i>a stone</i>	lāpillūs, <i>a little stone</i>
signūm, <i>a mark</i>	sīgillūm, <i>a seal</i>

482. The Suffix **ārīūm** designates the place where any thing is kept, as:

cōlumbārīūm, <i>dove-cot</i>	from cōlumbā
herbārīūm, <i>herbarium</i>	“ herbā
grānārīūm, <i>a granary</i>	“ grānūm
pōmārīūm, <i>an orchard</i>	“ pōmūm
sēmīnārīūm, <i>a seed-plot</i>	“ sēmēn

483. The Suffix **ētūm** used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they grow in abundance:

frūtīcētūm, <i>a copse</i>	from frūtēx
myrtētūm, <i>a myrtle grove</i>	“ myrtūs
quercētūm, <i>a forest of oaks</i>	“ quercūs
vīnētūm, <i>a vineyard</i>	“ vīnūm

484. The Suffix **ilē** annexed to names of animals designates their *stall* or *fold*:

bōvilē, <i>stall for cattle</i>	from bōs
ēquilē, <i>a stable for horses</i>	“ ēquūs
ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold</i>	“ ōvīs
cāprilē, <i>a stall for goats</i>	“ cāpēr

485. The Suffix **inā** indicates especially the *state, condition, or occupation* of a person; sometimes also the *place* where an occupation is carried on:

mēdicinā, <i>the medical art</i>	from mēdicūs
sūtrīnā, <i>a shoemaker's shop</i>	“ sūtōr
tonstrīnā, <i>a barber's shop</i>	“ tonsōr

486. The Suffix **iūm** added to names of persons forms **Abstracts** signifying *character, rank, &c.*, and **Collectives**, as:

servitīūm, <i>servitude</i>	from servūs
sācerdōtīūm, <i>priesthood</i>	“ sācerdōs
mīnistērīūm, <i>ministry</i>	“ mīnistēr
exsilīūm, <i>banishment</i>	“ exsūl

487. **Patronymics**, denoting *parentage*, generally end in:
idēs, īdēs, iādēs, ādēs (Masculine); **īs, ēīs, iās** (Feminine):

Priāmīdēs, <i>son of Priam</i>	from Priāmūs
Ātrīdēs, <i>son of Atreus</i>	“ Ātreus
Thestīādēs, <i>son of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs
Aenēādēs, <i>son of Aeneas</i>	“ Aenēās
Tantālīs, <i>daughter of Tantalus</i>	“ Tantālūs
Nērēīs, <i>daughter of Nereus</i>	“ Nērēus
Thestīās, <i>daughter of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs

Substantives derived from Adjectives.

488. From Adjectives are formed various **Abstract Nouns** with the Suffixes:

iā, (ī)tiā, itīēs, (ī)tās, (ī)tūdō, mōnīā.

grātīā, <i>favor</i>	from grātūs
mālitīā, <i>badness</i>	“ mālūs
segnitīā, <i>segnitēs, sloth</i>	“ segnīs
cēlērītās, <i>swiftness</i>	“ cēlēr
libertās, <i>liberty</i>	“ libēr
sōlitūdō, <i>solitude</i>	“ sōlūs
ācrīmōnīā, <i>sharpness</i>	“ ācēr

Substantives derived from Verbs.

489. Derivatives in **ör**, **üm** and **ělā** from verb-stems signify, in general, the *act or state expressed by the verb*:

āmör, <i>love</i>	from	āmārě
tīmör, <i>fear</i>	“	tīmērě
fūrör, <i>rage</i>	“	fūrērě
gaudiüm, <i>joy</i>	“	gaudērě
ōdiüm, <i>hatred</i>	“	ōdissě
quērělā, <i>a complaint</i>	“	quēri
cautělā, <i>a caution</i>	“	cāvērě
tūtělā, <i>protection</i>	“	tūtārī

490. Derivatives in **tör** and **sör** from Supines denote the *personal agent*:

mönitör, <i>a monitor</i>	from	möněō, - Itüm
lectör, <i>a reader</i>	“	lěgō, lectüm
auditör, <i>a hearer</i>	“	audiō, - Itüm
messör, <i>a reaper</i>	“	mětō, messüm
cursör, <i>a runner</i>	“	currō, cursüm

491. A few Derivatives in **tör** are formed in imitation of these, from Substantives, as:

vīātör, *a traveler*, from vīā; jānitör, *a doorkeeper*, from jānūā.

492. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*, but is less common than the masculine:

adjütör, adjütrix, <i>an assistant</i>	from	adjüvārě
fautör, fautrix, <i>a promoter</i>	“	fävērě
praeceptör, praeceprix, <i>a teacher</i>	“	praecipērě
victör, vicrix, <i>a conqueror</i>	“	vincērě

493. The Suffixes **tīō**, **tūs** and **sūs** (gen. **ūs**), **tūrā** and **sūrā** form *abstract nouns* from Supines and denote the *act itself*:

actiō, <i>an action</i>	from	ägō - actüm
inventiō, <i>an invention</i>	“	invěniō - inventüm
mōtūs, <i>a motion</i>	“	mōvěō - mōtüm
cursūs, <i>a running</i>	“	currō - cursüm
consensūs, consensīō, <i>agreement</i>	“	consentiō - consensüm
armātūrā, <i>equipment</i>	“	armō - armātüm
conjectūrā, <i>a conjecture</i>	“	conjićiō - conjectüm
pictūrā, <i>a painting</i>	“	pingō - pictüm
censūrā, <i>a judging</i>	“	censěō - censüm

Of these only a few become *Concrete nouns*:

accūsātīō, <i>a bill of indictment</i>	from	accūsō – accūsātūm
commentātīō, <i>a treatise</i>	“	commentōr, – ātūm
ōrātīō, <i>a speech</i>	“	ōrō – ōrātūm
possessīōnēs, <i>an estate</i>	“	possidēō – possessūm
vēnātīō, <i>game</i>	“	vēnōr – vēnātūm

494. Derivatives in **měn, mentūm, ūlūm, būlūm, cūlūm** denote an *instrument* for performing the act expressed by the verb or a *place* for its performance:

lěvāměn, <i>alleviation</i>	from	lěvārě
agměn, <i>a train</i>	“	āgērě
flūměn, <i>a river</i>	“	flūērě
vōlūměn, <i>a roll</i>	“	volvērě
ālimentūm, <i>nourishment</i>	“	ālērě
jācūlūm, <i>a javelin</i>	“	jācūlārī
pābūlūm, <i>fodder</i>	“	pascērě
vēnābūlūm, <i>a hunting spear</i>	“	vēnārī
stābūlūm, <i>a stable</i>	“	stārě
cūbīcūlūm, <i>a bedroom</i>	“	cūbārě

495. Derivatives in **crūm** and **trūm** denote *instrument* or *locality*:

fulcrūm, <i>a prop</i>	from	fulcīrě
sēpulerūm, <i>a grave</i>	“	sēpělīrě
ārātrūm, <i>a plow</i>	“	ārārě
claustrūm, <i>a bar</i>	“	claudērě
rostrūm, <i>a beak</i>	“	rōdērě
lāvācrūm, <i>a bath</i>	“	lāvārě

Derivation of Adjectives.

Adjectives derived from Verbs.

496. The Suffixes **bundūs** and **cundūs** have the general meaning of the *Present Participle*; in many the meaning is somewhat strengthened.

mīrābundūs, <i>wondering</i>	from	mīrārī
vērēcundūs, <i>bashful</i>	“	vērērī
vēnērābundūs, <i>revering</i>	“	vēnērārī
fūrībundūs, <i>raging</i>	“	fūrērě
jūcundūs, <i>pleasing</i>	“	jūvārě
vāgābundūs, <i>vagrant</i>	“	vāgārī

497. The Suffix **idūs** denotes the *quality* or *state* expressed by the verb:

turbidūs, <i>troubled</i>	from turbārē	vālidūs, <i>strong</i>	from vālērē
cālidūs, <i>warm</i>	“ cālērē	rāpidūs, <i>rapid</i>	“ rāpērē

498. The Suffixes **ilīs** and **bilīs** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense:

dōcilīs, <i>docile</i>	from dōcērē	āmābilīs, <i>amiable</i>	from āmārē
fācilīs, <i>easy to do</i>	“ fācērē	mōbilīs, <i>moveable</i>	“ mōvērē

499. The Suffixes **ax** and **ūlūs** denote *inclination*, generally a faulty one:

audax, <i>daring</i>	from audērē	crēdulūs, <i>credulous</i>	from crēdērē
fallax, <i>fallacious</i>	“ fallērē	garrulūs, <i>chattering</i>	“ garrērē

Adjectives derived from Substantives.

FROM COMMON NOUNS.

500. The Suffix **ēūs** expresses the material of which any thing is made:

aurēūs, <i>golden</i>	from aurūm	ferrēūs, <i>iron</i>	from ferrūm
argentēūs, <i>silver</i>	“ argentūm	lignēūs, <i>wooden</i>	“ ligūm

501. The Suffixes: **iūs**, **icūs**, **icīūs**, **ilīs**, **ālīs**, **ārīs**, **nūs**, **ivūs**, **ensīs**, **ārīūs** denote *belonging to*:

ōrātōrīūs, <i>of an orator</i>	from ōrātōr
bellicūs, <i>warlike</i>	“ bellūm
lātēricīūs, <i>of brick</i>	“ lātēr
vīrilīs, <i>manly</i>	“ vīr
nāvālīs, <i>naval</i>	“ nāvīs
militārīs, <i>military</i>	“ milēs
pāternūs, <i>paternal</i>	“ pātēr
aestīvūs, <i>belonging to summer</i>	“ aestās
fōrensīs, <i>belonging to the forum</i>	“ fōrūm
grēgārīūs, <i>belonging to a flock</i>	“ grex

502. The Suffixes **ōsūs** and **entūs** denote *fulness*:

pēriculōsūs, <i>full of danger</i>	from pēriculūm
fructūōsūs, <i>abounding in fruit</i>	“ fructūs
turbulentūs, <i>full of trouble</i>	“ turbā
somnulentūs, <i>sleepy</i>	“ somnūs

503. The Suffixes **ātūs**, **itūs**, **ūtūs** denote *provided with*:

ālātūs, <i>winged</i>	from ālā	barbātūs, <i>bearded</i>	from barbā
pellītūs, <i>clad in skins</i>	“ pellīs	cornūtūs, <i>horned</i>	“ cornū

504. The Suffixes **ānūs** and **īnūs** denote *belonging to or coming from*:

urbānūs, <i>belonging to the city</i>	from urbs
montānūs, <i>belonging to the mountain</i>	“ mons
āsīnīnūs, <i>produced by the ass</i>	“ āsīnūs
ēquīnūs, <i>belonging to horses</i>	“ ēquūs

FROM PROPER NAMES:

505. Adjectives with the Suffixes **īānūs**, and more rarely **ānūs** and **īnūs** are formed from names of persons:

Caesārīānūs, <i>belonging to Caesar</i>	from Caesār
Sullānī, <i>Sulla's veterans</i>	“ Sullā
Verrīnūs, <i>belonging to Verres</i>	“ Verrēs

506. The Suffixes **ēūs** and **īcūs** are used with *Greek names*:

Pýthāgōrēūs, <i>Pythagorean</i>	from Pýthāgōrās
Sōcrātīcūs, <i>Socratic</i>	“ Sōcrātēs

507. Patrial or Gentile Adjectives (derived from the names of places or peoples) generally end in **ānūs**, **īnūs**, **ensīs**, **ās** (*Gen. ātīs*), and are also used substantively:

Rōmānūs, <i>a Roman</i>	from Rōmā
Āmērīnūs, <i>of America</i>	“ Āmērīā
Cannensīs, <i>of Cannae</i>	“ Cannae
Arpīnās (-ātīs), <i>of Arpinum</i>	“ Arpīnūm

508. Greek names of places form Patrials in **īūs** and **aeūs**; as: Cōrīnthīūs, *of Corinth*, from Cōrīnthūs; Smyrnaeūs, *of Smyrna*, from Smyrnā.

509. From many names of *peoples*, Adjectives are formed in **īcūs** and sometimes **īūs**:

Gallīcūs, <i>Gallic</i>	from Gallūs	Thracīūs, <i>Thracian</i>	from Thrāx
Persīcūs, <i>Persian</i>	“ Persā	Sýrīūs, <i>Syrian</i>	“ Sýrīā

Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

510. From Adjectives are formed **Diminutives** in **ūlūs**, **ōlūs**, **ellūs** and **cūlūs** in the same manner as from nouns. **cūlūs** is sometimes added to Comparatives:

parvūlūs, <i>very small</i>	from parvūs
aurēōlūs, <i>gilded</i>	“ aurētūs
pulchellūs, <i>beautiful little</i>	“ pulchēr
paupercūlūs, <i>poorly</i>	“ paupēr
mājuscūlūs, <i>somewhat larger</i>	“ mājōr

Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

511. A few Adjectives are formed from *Adverbs*:

crastīnūs, <i>of to-morrow</i>	from crās
dīūtīnūs, <i>lasting</i>	“ dīū
pristīnūs, <i>former</i>	“ prīūs
mātūtīnūs, <i>belonging to the morning</i>	“ mānē
rēpentīnūs, <i>sudden</i>	“ rēpentē
hesternūs, <i>of yesterday</i>	“ hērī
hōdiernūs, <i>of to-day</i>	“ hōdiē
dīurnūs, <i>daily</i>	“ dīū
nocturnūs, <i>belonging to night</i>	“ noctū

COMPOSITION.

512. Every **Compound** may be regarded as consisting of two parts. The second part of the composition expresses the *principal idea* (**Principal term**) and the first a **Modification** thereof. The principal term may be a Verb, an Adjective, or a Substantive.

Compound Verbs.

513. The *second part* of a compound verb is *always a Verb*; also the *first part* may be a Verb, but this only takes place when the second part is faciō or fiō:

assuēfācērē, <i>to accustom</i>	from assuescērē & fācērē
cālēfācērē, <i>to warm</i>	“ cālērē “ “
commōnēfācērē, <i>to remind</i>	“ commōnērē “ “
pātēfācērē, <i>to open</i>	“ pātērē “ “

514. The *first part* of a compound verb may be a **Noun**, as:

ānimadvertērē, <i>to notice</i>	from ānimūs & vertērē
mānūmittērē, <i>to set free</i>	“ mānūs “ mittērē
ūsūcāpērē, <i>to acquire by use</i>	“ ūsūs “ cāpērē

515. The *first part* of a compound verb may be an **Adverb**:

bēnēfācērē, <i>to do good</i>	from bēnē & fācērē
mālēdicērē, <i>to curse</i>	“ mālē “ dicērē
bēnēdicērē, <i>to bless</i>	“ bēnē “ “
sātīsfācērē, <i>to satisfy</i>	“ sātīs “ fācērē
sātāgērē, <i>to have one's hands full</i>	“ sātīs “ āgērē

516. The *majority* of Compound Verbs are made with separable or inseparable **Prepositions** having the value of an adverb, as:

ā, āb	<i>away</i>	āvōlārē, to fly away
ād	<i>to, towards</i>	adjicērē, to throw to
antē	<i>before</i>	antēpōnērē, to set before
circūm	<i>around</i>	circumdārē, to surround
cōm, cōn	<i>together</i>	colligērē, to bring together
dē	<i>down</i>	dēcēdērē, to go down
ē, ex	<i>out</i>	expōnērē, to set out
īn	<i>in, into</i>	īnīrē, to go into
intēr	<i>between</i>	intērēssē, to be between
ōb	<i>toward, against</i>	obstārē, to stand opposed
pēr	<i>through</i>	perlēgērē, to read through
post	<i>after, inferior</i>	postpōnērē, to put below
prae	<i>before</i>	praevidērē, to foresee
praetēr	<i>past, beyond</i>	praetērīrē, to pass by
prō	<i>before</i>	prōpōnērē, to place before
sūb	<i>under</i>	sūbīrē, to come under
subtēr	<i>underneath, secretly</i>	subtērfūgērē, to flee secretly
amb	<i>around</i>	ambīrē, to go around
dīs	<i>asunder, apart</i>	discēdērē, to depart
rē	<i>back, again</i>	rēficērē, to make again
sē	<i>apart</i>	sēcernērē, to separate

517. In composition with **Prepositions**, the vowels **ā** and **ē** of the simple verb are changed into **ī**, and the diphthong **ae** into **ī**; **au** generally becomes **ō** or **ū**; before two consonants **ā** becomes **ē**, but **e** is retained:

fācērē, to make	confīcērē, to accomplish
ēmērē, to buy	rēdīmērē, to redeem
quaerērē, to seek	conquīrērē, to search out
plaudērē, to clap	explōdērē, to hiss off
claudērē, to shut	conclūdērē, to close up
fācērē, to make	confectūs, accomplished
pellērē, to drive	compellērē, to force

For *Irregularities* compare the **Index of Verbs** (pag. 277) with reference from each to the paragraph where its conjugation is described.

518. **Prepositions** in Composition often undergo a change of their final consonant which is called **Assimilation**. The Rules of this assimilation may be seen in the following:

519. **ā, āb, abs.**

a before **m** and **v**, and in **āfūi**: **āmīttērē, āvellērē, āfūi, āfūērām**;

ab before vowels and **j, h, b, d, l, n, r, s**:

ābīrē, ābundārē, ābrēviārē, ābnūērē, ābhorrērē, ābjūrārē;

as before **p**: **asportārē, aspernārī**;

au before **f**: **aufūgērē, auferrē**;

abs before **c, t**: **abscedērē, abstīnērē, abstrāhērē**.

520. **ād.**

ad before vowels, **j, h, b, d, f, m, n, q, v**:

ādāmārē, adferrē, adqūrērē, advōlārē, adjūvārē, adnuntīārē;

ac before **c** (not so good before **q**): **accīrē, adqūrērē (acqūrērē)**;

ag & ad before **g**: **aggērērē & adgērērē, aggrēdī & adgrēdī**;

a & ad before **gn, sp, sc, st**:

agnoscērē, adgnoscērē; aspīcērē, adspīcērē; āspīrārē;

ad & al before **l**: **adlēvārē, allēvārē; adlōquī, allōquī**;

ap before **p**: **appārērē, appellārē, appōnērē, applicārē**;

ad & ar before **r**: **adrīpērē & arrīpērē; adrīdērē & arrīdērē**;

ad & as before **s**: **adsignārē & assignārē; adsērērē & assērērē**;

at before **t**: **attendērē, attribūērē, attingērē, attrāhērē**.

521. **antē** becomes **anti** in: **antistārē, antīcipārē**.

522. **circūm** may drop its final **m** before **ēō, irē**:

circūmēō, circūēō, commonly circūītūs, circūītīō.

523. **com (= cūm).**

com before **b, p, m**: **combībērē, comparārē, committērē**;

con before **c, d, f, g, j, n, q, s, t, v**:

conclūdērē, condērē, congrēdī, conjungērē, contīnērē;

con & col before **l**: **conlābī & collābī; conlōcārē & collōcārē**;

cor before **r**: **corrīgērē, corrīpērē, corrōdērē, corrupērē**;

co before vowels and **h** (except **cōmēdō**):

cōīrē, cōhaerērē, cōgērē (= cōāgērē), cōēmērē;

co before **gn**, and in a few words before **n**:

cognoscō, cōnectō, cōnīvēō, cōnītōr, cōnūbīūm.

524. **ē, ex.**

ex before vowels and **h, c, p, q, s, t**:

exīrē, excīpērē, exhibērē, existērē; Exception ēpōtārē;

e before **b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v**:

ēlīgērē, ējīcērē, ēvādērē, ērumpērē, ēbībērē, ēdicērē;

ef before **f**: **efferrē, effīcērē, effūgērē, efflōdērē**;

525.

in.

in before vowels and **h, c, d, f, g** (but not before **gn**), **j, n, q, s, t, v**:

īnīrē, īnhībērē, īngērērē, īnquīrērē, īnfīcērē, īnvēhērē;

in, sometimes **il** before **l**; **in** & **ir** before **r**:

īnlīdērē & īllīdērē; īnrumpērē & īrrumpērē, īrrūērē;

im before **m, b, p**: **īmmittērē, īmbūērē, īmpōnērē, īmpērārē;**

i before **gn**: **īgnōrārē, īgnoscērē.**

526.

ob.

ob before vowels, **j, h, b, d, l, m, n, r, s, t, v**:

oboedīrē, objīcērē, oblīviscī, obrēpērē, obstāre, obtingērē;

oc before **c**; **of** before **f**; **og** before **g**; **op** before **p**:

occurrērē, offerrē, oggērērē, oppōnērē, opprīmērē;

b is dropped in **ōmittērē, ōpērīrē, ostendērē** (= **obs**-tendere).

527.

pēr.

per unchanged, except before **l**, as:

pellēgērē = perlēgērē; pellīcērē = perlicērē.

In derivatives of **jūrārē**, the **r** is dropped, as: **pējērārē = perjūrārē.**

528.

sūb.

sub before vowels, **h, j, b, d, l, n, s, t, v**:

sūbigērē, subjungērē, subtrāhērē, subvertērē, subhastārē;

suc before **c**; **suf** before **f**; **sug** before **g**:

succēdērē, succumbērē, suffōcārē, suffīcērē, suggērērē;

sum & **sub** before **m**; **sup** before **p**; **sur** & **sub** before **r**:

summīttērē & submīttērē; supponērē; surrīpērē & subrīpērē;

sus (= **subs**) occurs in:

suscīpērē, suscītārē, suspendērē, sustīnērē, sustentārē, sustūlī;

su before **sp**: **suspīcērē, suspīrārē, suspectārē.**

529.

trans.

trans before vowels and **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**:

transāgērē, transfūgērē, transpōnērē, transgrēdī, transvēhērē;

tran before **s**, and always before **sc**:

transīlīrē, transcrībērē, transcendērē, transērērē, transūērē;

trans and often **tra** before **j, d, l, m, n**:

trādērē, trājīcērē, transmīttērē & trāmīttērē, trādūcērē;

Compound Substantives.

530. Compound Substantives are made up:

1. Of a *substantive* and a following *verbal stem*; the vowel connecting the two parts is *ī*, as:

agrīcōlā, <i>a farmer</i>	from	āgēr	&	cōlērē
armīgēr, <i>an armor-bearer</i>	“	armā	“	gērērē
artīfex, <i>an artist</i>	“	ars	“	fācērē
parrīcīdā, <i>a parricide</i>	“	pātēr	“	caedērē

2. Of *two substantives* or a *substantive* and an *adjective*:

solstītiūm, <i>solstice</i>	from	sōl	&	stātīō
rūpicāprā, <i>a wild goat</i>	“	rūpēs	“	cāprā
lēgislātōr, <i>a law-giver</i>	“	lex	“	lātōr
jūsūrāndūm, <i>an oath</i>	“	jūs	“	jūrāndūm
aequīnoctīūm, <i>equinox</i>	“	aequūs	“	nox

3. Of a *substantive* and a *preceding particle*, as:

incūrīā, <i>want of care</i>	from	īn	&	cūrā
prōverbīūm, <i>a proverb</i>	“	prō	“	verbūm
sūperfīciēs, <i>a surface</i>	“	sūpēr	“	fāciēs
nēmō, <i>no one</i>	“	nē	“	hōmō

Compound Adjectives.

531. Compound Adjectives are made up:

1. Of *two nouns* (including under this term adjective and substantive), as:

ignīcōlōr, <i>fire-colored</i>	from	ignīs	&	cōlōr
mīsērīcors, <i>tender-hearted</i>	“	mīsēr	“	cōr
magnānīmūs, <i>great-hearted</i>	“	magnūs	“	ānīmūs
ālīpēs, <i>wing-footed</i>	“	ālā	“	pēs

2. Of a *preposition* with a *substantive*. In this combination the prepositions *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, *īn*, *sē* have negative power:

concors, <i>harmonious</i>	from	con	&	cōr
āmens } <i>senseless</i>	“	ā	“	mens
dēmens }	“	dē	“	mens
īners, <i>unskilled</i>	“	īn	“	ars
sēcūrūs, <i>free from care</i>	“	sē	“	cūrā

3. Of a *preposition* with an *adjective*. The prepositions used in this way are: *pēr*, *prae*, *very*; *sūb*, *somewhat*; *īn*, *not*:

perdiffīcīlis, <i>very difficult</i>	from	pēr	&	diffīcīlis
praepōtens, <i>very powerful</i>	“	prae	“	pōtens
subrustīcūs, <i>somewhat clownish</i>	“	sūb	“	rustīcūs
īndīgnūs, <i>unworthy</i>	“	īn	“	dīgnūs

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.

532. Syntax treats of the *Agreement, Government,* and *Disposition* of words in sentences. Sentences are of three kinds:

Assertions, or Statements, as: *consuetudo est altera natura; custom is second nature.*

Questions, as: *quid est levius pluma? what is lighter than a feather?*

Commands (demands, wishes), as: *divide et impera; divide and rule.*

533. The **Assertive Sentence**, as it is called, is the *main type* of all sentences, and the other two will be treated as variations of it.

Subject and Predicate.

534. Every simple sentence is composed of two parts: **Subject** and **Predicate**.

The **Subject** signifies that about which the assertion is made; the **Predicate** signifies that which is asserted of the Subject. In the sentence:

aurum splendet *gold glitters*
aurum is the subject; splendet the predicate.

535. The **Subject** of the sentence is in the **Nominative Case**, or so considered.

The **Subject** must be either a Noun, or some word or phrase standing for a noun, but it may be contained in the termination of the verb itself:

arbor floret	<i>the tree is blossoming</i>
hic laetatur, ille maeret	<i>this one rejoices, that one is sad</i>
errare humanum est	<i>to err is human</i>
veni, vidi, vici	<i>I came, I saw, I conquered.</i>

536. The **Predicate** must be either a Verb (**Verbal Predicate**), or an Adjective or what stands for an adjective with the verb *essē* (**Adjective Predicate**), or a Substantive with the verb *essē* (**Substantive Predicate**).

The **Verbal Predicate** agrees in **Person** and **Number** with its subject.

The **Adjective Predicate** (Adjective, Adjective Pronoun, Participle) agrees in **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case** with its subject.

The **Substantive Predicate** agrees in **Case** with its subject.

ego valēo, si vos valētis	<i>I am well if you are well</i>
arbor est procēra	<i>the tree is tall</i>
usus est tyrannus	<i>custom is a tyrant.</i>

537. When the predicate is a substantive with different terminations for the gender, such as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgistēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen</i>

it agrees with its subject also in number and gender.

usus est optimus magister	<i>experience is the best teacher</i>
vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est	<i>a country life is the teacher of frugality.</i>

538. When referring to a subject of the neuter gender, a predicate substantive with different terminations for the gender is always in the masculine gender.

tempus est vitae magister	<i>time is the teacher of life.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

539. When the predicate substantive is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the subject.

bona conscientia est tutissima	<i>a good conscience is the safest</i>
comes hominum	<i>companion of men.</i>

540. Like *essē, to be*, several other verbs take **two Nominatives**, one of the **Subject** and the other of the **Predicate**. These are:

fiērī, to become, be made

ēvadērē, to turn out

existērē, to become

mānērē, to remain

vidērī, to seem

appārērē, to appear

nascī, to be born

mōrī, to die

jūdicārī, to be considered

crēārī, to be created

cōrōnārī, to be crowned

dīcī, to be said, called

vōcārī

appellārī } *to be called*

pūtārī }

hābērī }

crēdī, to be believed

existimārī, to be regarded

rosa pulcherrīmus flos habētur

the rose is considered the most beautiful flower.

541. The **Predicate** of **two or more Subjects** is put in the **Plural Number**.

Romūlus et Remus urbem Romam condidērunt

Romulus and Remus founded the city of Rome.

542. Two or more singular nouns taken conjointly as a single idea may have a singular verb. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest.

ratio et oratio societātis humanae vincūlum est

reason and speech are the bond of human society

naves et praesidiū excessit

the fleet and garrison departed.

543. A collective noun may take a plural verb, as: *pars urbes petiērunt finitīmas, a part made for the neighboring towns.*

544. In regard to the **Gender** of an **Adjective Predicate** referring to **two or more Subjects** mark the following:

When the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective predicate is of that gender; as:

mater et soror mortūae sunt

mother and sister are dead.

When the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes the masculine gender if the subjects are things **with life**, and the neuter if they are things **without life**; as:

pater et mater mortūi sunt

father and mother are dead

diuitīae et honōres incerta sunt

riches and honors are uncertain.

When things with life and things without life are combined, the predicate adjective takes either the gender of the things with life, or is neuter, as:

rex regiæque classis profecti	<i>the king and the king's fleet</i>
sunt	<i>set out</i>
natura inimica sunt libera civitas	<i>a free state and a king are</i>
et rex	<i>natural enemies.</i>

545. When the Subjects are of **Different Persons**, the verb will be in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

In Latin the speaker generally mentions himself first.

ego et tu vicissitudinem fortunæ	<i>you and I have experienced the</i>
expertus sum	<i>vicissitude of fortune.</i>

[201. 202.]

Attribute and Apposition.

546. The most usual **Attribute** of a Substantive is an **Adjective** (including under this term the Adjective Pronouns and Participles); it agrees with its Substantive in **Number, Gender, and Case.**

	Gender.	Number.
<i>a white flower</i>	flōs albūs	flōrēs albī
<i>a dark cloud</i>	nūbēs ōpācā	nūbēs ōpācæ
<i>a golden vessel</i>	vās aurēūm	vāsā aurēā

Case.

Gen.	flōrīs albī	<i>of a white flower</i>
“	nūbīs ōpācæ	<i>of a dark cloud</i>
“	vāsīs aurēī	<i>of a golden vessel</i>

547. The **Common Attribute** of two or more Substantives of different gender is either repeated or agrees with the nearest.

agri omnes et marīa	}	<i>all lands and (all) seas</i>
omnes agri omniæque marīa		
agri et marīa omnia		
omnes (et) agri et marīa		

548. One Substantive placed after another to explain it, is by **Apposition** put in the **same Case**, and, when practicable, in the **same Gender and Number.**

Socrātes, sapientissīmus vir
philosophīa, vitae magistra
Athēnae, omnium doctrinārum
inventricēs

*Socrates, the wisest of men
philosophy, the teacher of life
Athens, the inventor of all
learning.*

549. Nouns in **Apposition** are sometimes used to express the *time, condition, etc.* of the action.

Hercūles juvēnis leōnem inter-
fēcit

*Hercules, when a young man,
slew a lion.*

550. In like manner the **Latin Adjective** is used **appositively** where the English idiom employs an adverb. Adjectives thus used are those expressive of *joy, knowledge and their opposites, of order and position, of time and season, etc.*, as:

libens, *with pleasure*

sōlūs, *alone*

ultīmūs, *last*

vōlens, *willing(ly)*

tōtūs, *wholly*

mēdiūs, *in the middle*

nōlens, *unwilling(ly)*

primūs } *first*

frēquens, *frequent(ly)*

invītūs, *against one's will*

priōr } *first*

sciens, *knowing(ly)*

nemo saltat sobriūs, *no one dances when sober;*

Socrātes primus hoc docuit, *Socrates was the first who taught this.*

[203. 204.]

Agreement of Pronouns.

551. A **Relative** or **Demonstrative Pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in **Gender, Number** and **Person**, but the **Case** depends on the clause in which it stands.

animal, quod sanguīnem habet,
sine corde esse non potest

*an animal which has blood can-
not be without a heart.*

When the **Relative** refers to a sentence, **id quōd** is commonly used.

gloriā invidiām vicisti, id quod
est difficillīmum

*you have overcome envy with
glory, which is most difficult.*

With antecedents of **different gender** the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives. (See **544.**)

puēri et muliēres, qui capti
erant...

*the boys and women who had
been taken prisoners...*

With antecedents of **different persons**, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. (See **545.**)

ego et tu, qui eōdem anno nati
sumus...

*you and I who were born in
the same year...*

552. Sometimes a **Relative** or **Demonstrative** Pronoun agrees with a word in apposition or with a predicate rather than with its antecedent:

ama justam gloriā, qui est	<i>love real glory which is the</i>
fructus verae virtūtis	<i>fruit of true virtue</i>
rerum caput hoc erat, hic fons	<i>this was the head of things, this</i>
	<i>the source.</i>

553. **Īs**, **he**, and **īdēm**, *the same*, are the **Antecedents** of **Relatives**:

(is) qui	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{he who} \\ \textit{such as} \\ \textit{such that} \end{array} \right.$	idem qui	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the same who} \\ \textit{the same as} \end{array} \right.$

but **Īs**, when Antecedent, is often suppressed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

quem dii diligunt adūlescens	<i>(he) whom the gods love dies</i>
moritur	<i>young.</i>

554. An **Adjective** or **Apposition** belonging in sense to the Antecedent, sometimes appears in the relative clause in agreement with the relative.

Themistōcles de servis suis	<i>Themistocles sent the most</i>
quem habuit fidelissimum ad	<i>faithful of the slaves which</i>
Xerxem misit	<i>he had to Xerxes</i>
omnes gentes regibus paruerunt,	<i>all nations obeyed kings, a kind</i>
quod genus imperii...	<i>of government which...</i>

555. **qui dicitur**, **qui vocatur**, or **quem dicunt**, **quem vocant** are used in the sense of *so-called*.

vestra, quae dicitur vita, mors est, *your so-called life is death.*

556. The **Relative** often stands at the beginning of a sentence where in English a demonstrative is generally used.

quae cum ita sint *and since these things are so.*

557. The **Relative** is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.

is sum, qui semper fui *I am the same man I always was.*

The Order of Words.

558. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the order of words than the English. The following practical rules will be found of value:

In general, put the **Subject** first, and the **Verb** last.

The **Subject** is followed by the words which modify it.

The **Verb** is preceded by the words which depend upon it.

Subject.	Dionysius,
Adjuncts of the Subject.	tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus
Adjuncts of the Predicate.	Corinthi pueros
Predicate.	docēbat.

Dionysius, the tyrant, after he had been driven from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.

559. An **Adjective** or dependent genitive follows the word to which it belongs:

nomen bonum instar unguenti fragrantis	<i>a good name is like sweet-smelling ointment</i>
metus mortis musica depellitur	<i>fear of death is dispelled by music.</i>

560. When a **Substantive** is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is: **Adjective** — **Genitive** — **Substantive**.

magna frumenti vis	<i>plenty of corn.</i>
--------------------	------------------------

561. A **Numeral** adjective or one **Essential** to the meaning of the phrase, goes before its noun:

omnes homines decet	<i>it becomes all men</i>
malum vas non frangitur	<i>a useless pitcher does not get broken.</i>

562. A **Demonstrative** pronoun precedes the noun; **Relatives** or **Interrogatives** stand first in their sentence or clause; **Adverbs** are commonly put next to the word they qualify.

haec te victoria perdet	<i>this victory will ruin you</i>
qui sitiunt, silentio bibunt	<i>they who are thirsty drink in silence</i>
quis custodiet ipsos custodes?	<i>who is to look after the keepers?</i>
male parta male dilabuntur	<i>evil gotten, evil spent.</i>

563. Prepositions regularly precede their nouns except **tēnūs** and **versūs**; but monosyllabic prepositions are often placed between the adjective and substantive; as: magna cum cura, *with great care.*

564. Conjunctions generally stand at the beginning of their sentence or clause.

The Conjunctions autēm, *but*; enim, *for*; vērō, *but*; ěgītūr, *then*, follow one or more words in their clause. quĩdēm, *indeed*; quōquē, *also*, come after the emphatic word. ně..quĩdēm include the emphatic word or words.

565. Words of *kindred* or *opposite* meaning are generally placed near each other for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*:

manus manum lavat

one hand washes the other.

[202.]

Construction of Cases.

GENITIVE CASE.

With Substantives.

566. The **Genitive** is especially the **Case** of a **Substantive** that is added to another Substantive in order to limit or define the meaning.

1. If the qualified noun signifies some action or condition of which, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the **Genitive** would be the **Subject**, the case is called the **Subjective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *the love of God* (= *God loves*).

2. If the **Genitive** would be the **Object** of the action expressed by the other noun in verb-form, we call it an **Objective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *love of (toward) God* (= *we love God*).

3. The **Genitive** of the **Personal Pronouns** is commonly **Objective**; exceptions are nostrūm and vestrūm which are used as partitive Genitives (see below 6). Mark the following examples:

studĭum nostrĭ

sympathy for us

multi nostrūm

many of us

melĭor pars nostrĭ

the better part of us

major pars nostrūm

the greater part of us.

4. The **Possessive Pronoun** is generally used as the **Subjective Genitive**, as: amĭcus meus, *a friend of mine*. Additional Attributes are put in the **Genitive**: tua ipsĭus soror, *your own sister*.

5. The **Genitive** is used to denote **Quality**, but only when the quality is modified by an **Adjective**; it is joined to a **Substantive** either *attributively* or *predicatively*, as:

vir maxīmi consilīi	<i>a man of very great prudence</i>
Terentius magni ingenīi est	<i>Terence is a man of great talent.</i>

The **Genitive of Quality**, though less common than the **Ablative**, is always used when **Number**, **Measure**, **Time** or **Space** are denoted. **Parts of the body** are in the **Ablative** only (see **616**).

exsilium decem annōrum	<i>an exile of ten years</i>
Caesar fuit excelsa statūra	<i>Caesar was of tall stature.</i>

6. The **Partitive Genitive** expressing the relation of a **Whole** to its **Parts** is used:

With Substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight, as:

medimnum tritīci	<i>a bushel of wheat;</i>
------------------	---------------------------

With Pronouns, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives, as:

quis vestrum? <i>which of you?</i>	regum ultīmus, <i>the last of the</i>
prior horum, <i>the former of these</i>	kings

With Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns used as Nouns, but only in the Nominative or Accusative. Such are:

tantūm, <i>so much</i>	quantūm, <i>as much</i>	ālīquantūm, <i>somewhat</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrīmūm, <i>most</i>
paulūm, <i>little</i>	mīnūs, <i>less</i>	mīnīmūm, <i>least</i>
hōc, <i>this</i>	īd, illūd, istūd, <i>that</i>	nīhīl, <i>nothing</i>
quōd, <i>which</i>	quīd, <i>what</i>	īdēm, <i>the same</i>

nihil novi, <i>nothing new</i>	īdem consilīi, <i>the same (of) advice</i>
quid novi? <i>what news?</i>	quid causae? <i>what reason?</i>

The **Genitive** after these **Adjectives** and **Pronouns** may be a **neuter adjective** of the **Second Declension**, but *not* of the **Third**:

ālīquid boni, <i>something good</i>	nīhīl melīus, <i>nothing better.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

With the Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent:

sātīs, <i>enough</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>	hāc } <i>to this degree</i>
pārūm, <i>too little</i>	nusquām, <i>nowhere</i>	ēō }
nīmīs, <i>too much</i>	affātīm, <i>plenty</i>	

nimis lucis, *too much light*; huc arrogantīae, *to this degree of insolence*; ubi terrārum or gentīum? *where in the world?*

7. The **Genitive of Specification** has the force of an **Apposition**, especially with *vox*, *word*; *nōmēn*, *name*; *verbūm*, *word*, as:
vox voluptātis, *the word "pleasure"*
arbor abiētis, *a fir-tree*; *nomen regis*, *the title of king*.

8. The **Genitive** is used with the **Ablatives causā** and *grātīā*, *for the sake of*; also with *ergō*, *on account of*; *instār*, *like*. *causā*, *grātīā*, *ergō* commonly follow the **Genitive**. Mark the expressions:
mea, *tua*, *sua causā* (not *grātīā*) *for my, thy, his sake*,
honōris grātīa, *for honor's sake*,
instar montis equus, *a horse like a mountain*.

9. Frequently *aedēs* and *templūm*, *temple*, and sometimes other nouns are omitted, when no mistake can arise:

ad Vestae ventum erat, *they had arrived at the temple of Vesta*.
 [221. 222.]

With Adjectives.

567. Many **Adjectives** are followed by a **Genitive** to complete their meaning. The most common are:

1. **Adjectives** denoting *Desire*, *Knowledge*, *Recollection*, *Participation*, *Mastery*, *Fullness* and their **Opposites**:

<i>cūpidūs</i> , <i>eager, desirous</i>	<i>expers</i> , <i>without share in</i>
<i>stūdīōsūs</i> , <i>devoted to</i>	<i>compōs</i> , <i>capable, master of</i>
<i>pēritūs</i> , <i>skillful in</i>	<i>impōs</i> , <i>not in possession of</i>
<i>insciūs</i>	<i>impōtens</i> , <i>unable or powerless</i>
<i>nesciūs</i> } <i>ignorant</i>	<i>to control</i>
<i>ignārūs</i> }	<i>plēnūs</i> , <i>full</i>
<i>mēmōr</i> , <i>mindful</i>	<i>particeps</i> , <i>sharing, partaker of,</i>
<i>immēmōr</i> , <i>unmindful</i>	<i>endowed with</i>

2. **Participial Adjectives** denoting *permanent qualities* (mostly ending in **ns**), as:

<i>diligens</i> , <i>careful, lover of</i>	<i>pātiens</i> , <i>capable of enduring</i>
<i>āmans</i> , <i>fond of</i>	<i>impātiens</i> , <i>that cannot bear</i>
<i>particeps consilii</i>	<i>a sharer in the plan</i>
<i>compos mentis</i>	<i>in possession of one's mind</i>
<i>cupīdus gloriāe</i>	<i>eager for glory</i>
<i>amans sui virtus</i>	<i>virtue fond of itself</i>

3. *prōpriūs*, *own*, and *commūnīs*, *common*, take the **Genitive** when the idea of *property* or *peculiarity* prevails.

popūli Romāni est propriā libertas, *liberty is characteristic of the Roman people*.
 [223. 224.]

With Verbs.

568. Verbs of *Reminding*, *Remembering*, *Forgetting* take the **Genitive**.

admōnērē	} to remind	mēmīnissē	} to remember
commōnērē		rēmīniscī	
commōnēfācērē		rēcordārī	
oblīviscī, to forget			

Verbs of **Reminding**, with the Accusative of the *Person*, are followed by the Genitive of the *Person or Thing* to which the attention is called.

te vetēris amicitīae admonēo, *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Verbs of **Remembering** and **Forgetting** take the Genitive if a *Person*, and either the Genitive or Accusative, if a *Thing* is remembered or forgotten.

memīni vivōrum	<i>I am mindful of the living</i>
ānīmus memīnit praeteritōrum	<i>the mind remembers the past</i>
oblīvisci nihil soles nisi injuriās	<i>you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.</i>

When the Object is expressed by a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, it is with all these verbs in the **Accusative**, as:

hoc te admonēo *I warn you of this.*

mēmīni, *I remember*, when referring to a **contemporary**, always takes the **Accusative**.

meminēram Catōnem *I remembered Cato.*

569. Verbs of *Valuing* are joined with the **Genitive**, when the Value is expressed in a **General or Indefinite** Manner.

Such Verbs are:

aestīmārē, to value	hābērē, to hold
pūtārē, to reckon	pendērē, to weigh
dūcērē, to take	fācērē, to make, put
	essē, to be (worth)

The following are **Genitives of general value**:

magnī, much	quantī, how much
parvī, little	plūrīmī, maxīmī, most
tantī, so much	mīnīmī, least
plūrīs, more	nīhīlī, naught
mīnōrīs, less	floccī, a lock of wool, a straw

The **Complete Phrases** are, then, as follows:

parvī pendĕrĕ or aestīmārĕ, to esteem lightly
 magnī essĕ, to be of great account
 plūrīs essĕ, to be of more account, to be worth more
 nihīlī dūcĕrĕ, to think nothing of
 magnī aestīmārĕ or hābĕrĕ, to value highly
 plūrīs aestīmārĕ, to esteem of more value
 plūrīmī aestīmārĕ, to value very highly
 mīnīmī fācĕrĕ, to make of very little account
 floccī fācĕrĕ, to care not a straw for

divitīae a me minīmi putantur, riches are very little prized by me;
 opĕram tuam magni aestīmo, your help I value highly.

570. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, take the Genitive of the Charge.

accūsārĕ	} to accuse, charge	cōargŭĕrĕ	} to convict
incūsārĕ		convincĕrĕ	
insīmŭlārĕ		} to condemn, find guilty	
argŭĕrĕ			
arcessĕrĕ	} to summon	damnārĕ	} to condemn, find guilty
rĕŭm fācĕrĕ		condemnārĕ	
		absolvĕrĕ,	to acquit

honestam familiam scelĕris argŭis you accuse an honorable family of crime
 aliquem levitātis convincĕre to convict one of levity.

The **Crime** may be expressed by the **Ablative** with **dĕ**:

accūsāre aliquem de vi, de reptundis, de veneficio to accuse one of assault, of extortion, of poisoning

or by the **Genitive** with **nōmīnĕ** or **crīmīnĕ**, as:

nomīne conjuratiōnis condemnāti sunt they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.

Verbs of **Condemning** and **Acquitting** may also take the **Ablative** of the charge and the **punishment**, and always take the **Ablative** of **fine**; **multāre**, to mulct, punish, is always construed with the **Ablative**.

damnāre capitis or capite to condemn to death
 Camillus decem milibus damnatus est Camillus was fined 10,000

Manlius virtutem filii morte multavit Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

571. The **Subjective Genitive** may be used as a **Predicate** with the verbs *essē* and *fīērī* to denote that to which something belongs or to which something is peculiar.

In English the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, are commonly supplied. Instead of the **Genitive** of Personal Pronouns the **Neuters** of the Possessives: *mēum, tūum*, etc., are used.

<i>haec domus est Caesāris</i>	<i>this house is Caesar's</i>
<i>temeritas est florentis aetātis,</i>	<i>rashness is the characteristic</i>
<i>prudētia senectūtis</i>	<i>of youth, prudence of old age</i>
<i>mentīri non est meum.</i>	<i>to lie is not my way.</i>

572. With the **Impersonal** *intērest* (and sometimes also with *rēfert*), *it concerns, interests, it is the interest of, it is of importance for*, the **Genitive** is used to denote the **Person** or **Thing** concerned.

The **Genitive** seems to be governed by *causā* understood; hence instead of the **Genitive** of the personal pronoun the **Ablative** singular feminine of the **Possessives** *mēā, tūā, sūā, nostrā, vestrā* is used with these verbs, as: *mēā intērest, I am concerned*; with *omniūm*, however, *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* must be used: *omniūm nostrūm intērest, it concerns all of us*.

rēfert seldom occurs with the **Genitive**, occasionally with *mēā, tūā*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a **Genitive**, as: *nihil rēfert, no matter*; *quid rēfert, what matter?*

The *thing* which is of interest or importance is expressed:

By a **Neuter Pronoun**, as: *hoc vehementer intērest reipublicae, this is of very much importance to the state*;

By an **Infinitive**, as: *intērest omniūm recte facēre, to do right is the interest of all*;

By an **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**, as: *multum mēā intērest te diligentem esse, it is of great importance to me that you be diligent*;

By an **Interrogative Sentence**, as: *multum mea intērest utrum diligens sis necne, it is of great importance to me whether you are diligent or not*.

573. The *Degree* of importance is expressed by:

Adverbs: magnōpĕrĕ, mǎgĭs, maxĭmĕ, pārŭm, etc.

Neuter Adjectives: multŭm, plŭs, plŭrĭmŭm, mĭnŭs, etc.

Genitives of Value: magnĭ, plŭrĭs, parvĭ, tantĭ, etc.

The *Thing with reference* to which one is interested is expressed by the Accusative with **ad**: magni ad honōrem nostrum intĕrest, *it is of great consequence to our honor.* [227. 228.]

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Direct Object.

574. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative Case.

The Object of a transitive verb in the *active* voice becomes Subject in the *passive*.

boni cives amant patriam	<i>good citizens love their country</i>
patria a bonis civibus amatur	<i>their country is loved by good citizens.</i>

575. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are both transitive and intransitive in Latin. Such are:

dolĕrĕ, <i>to grieve (for)</i>	rĭdĕrĕ, <i>to laugh (at)</i>
horrĕrĕ, <i>to shudder (at)</i>	sĭtĭrĕ, <i>to thirst (for).</i>

576. Some intransitive verbs may take an accusative of kindred meaning, as:

vitam jucundam vivĕre	<i>to live a pleasant life</i>
longam viam ire	<i>to go a long way.</i>

577. Many **Intransitive Verbs**, especially verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and accordingly take an **Accusative**. The commonest of them are **Compounds** of:

circŭm, pĕr, praetĕr, trans.

circumstārĕ, <i>to stand around</i>	praetĕrĭrĕ, <i>to pass by</i>
permĕārĕ, <i>to flow through</i>	transĭrĕ, <i>to cross</i>
triginta tyranni circumstetĕrunt Socrĕtĕm	<i>the 30 tyrants stood around So- crates.</i> [207. 208.]

Two Accusatives. Same Person.

578. Verbs of **Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing** admit **two Accusatives** of the same person or thing.

appellārē	} to name or call	fācērē	} to make
nōmīnārē		efficērē	
vōcārē		reddērē	
dīcērē		crēārē	
arbītrārī	ēlīgērē		
existīmārē	} to regard, consider, think, pronounce	dēsīgnārē,	to appoint
hābērē		sē praebērē	} to show, offer
pūtārē		sē praestārē	
jūdicārē,		to judge	

Nerōnem senātus hostem iudicāvit

the senate declared Nero an enemy.

Many other verbs, besides their proper Accusative, take a second, denoting **purpose, time, character**. Such are:

dārē,	to give	rēlinquērē,	to leave
hābērē,	to have	sūmērē,	to take

Athenienses Miltiādem sibi imperatōrem sumpsērunt

the Athenians took Miltiades as their commander.

[209. 210.]

Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.

579. **dōcērē, ēdōcērē, to teach; cēlārē, to conceal from,** take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Dionysius Epaminondam musicam docuit
non te celāvi sermōnem

Dionysius taught Epaminondas music
I did not conceal from you the conversation.

The **Passive** of **dōcērē** or **ēdōcērē** with the **Nominative** of the person and the **Accusative** of the thing is *almost never* used, but is replaced by **discērē** **ālīquid** **āb** **ālīquō**. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

ēdōcērē **ālīquem** **dē** **ālīqua** **rē,** to inform some one of something;
cēlārē **ālīquem** **dē** **ālīqua** **rē,** to keep some one ignorant of something.

580. Verbs signifying *to ask, to demand, to request, to inquire* take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

The commonest of them are:

poscĕrĕ	}	<i>to ask,</i>	ōrārĕ	}	<i>to ask,</i>	rōgārĕ	}	<i>to ask,</i>	
flāgītārĕ			rōgārĕ			interrōgārĕ			<i>inquire</i>
postulārĕ			petĕrĕ			quaerĕrĕ			

posce deos venīam

ask favor of the gods

me sententiām rogāvīt

he asked me my opinion.

But to this there are **many Exceptions**. We may also say:

poscĕre or flagitāre aliquid ab aliquo.

We always say: postulāre or petĕre aliquid ab aliquo;
quaerĕre aliquid ab, ex, or de aliquo.

581. The verbs ōrārĕ, rōgārĕ, *to ask, request, and rōgārĕ, interrōgārĕ, to ask, inquire*, admit a double accusative only when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective, as: hoc te rogo, *this I inquire of you*. Otherwise we say: interrogāre aliquem de aliqua re, *to ask some one about something*.

582. A noun as second accusative appears with the verb rōgārĕ only in the official phrase:

sententiām rogāre aliquem, *to ask one for his opinion or vote.*

[211. 212.]

Accusative with Impersonal Verbs.

583. The **Accusative** is used after the **Impersonals**:

fallīt mē	}	<i>it escapes my</i>	dĕcĕt, <i>it becomes</i>	
fūgīt mē				<i>dĕdĕcĕt, it is unbecoming</i>
praetĕrīt mē				

me fugit ad te scribĕre
oratorĕm irasci dĕdĕcĕt

I forgot to write to you
it is unbecoming in an orator
to be angry.

An **Infinitive** or a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, rarely a **Substantive**, may be used as the **Subject** of dĕcĕt and dĕdĕcĕt:

muliĕrem decet flĕre
parvum parva decent
neglegentiā nemīnem decet

it becomes a woman to weep
small things become the small
carelessness becomes no one.

584. Certain **Impersonal Verbs** take the Person who feels in the **Accusative**, and the Exciting Cause in the **Genitive**, or if a verb, in the **Infinitive**; viz.:

<i>miserēt, it excites pity</i>	<i>pudet, it shames</i>	
<i>paenitēt, it causes sorrow</i>	<i>taedet</i>	} <i>it wearies, tires.</i>
<i>pigēt, it disgusts, grieves</i>	<i>pertaesum est</i>	

The **Persons** are expressed as follows:

<i>miserēt mē, I pity</i>	<i>paenitēt mē, I am sorry, repent</i>	
<i>miserēt tē, thou pitiest</i>	<i>pigēt mē, I am grieved at, dis-</i>	
<i>miserēt eum, he pities</i>	<i>gusted with</i>	
<i>miserēt nos, we pity</i>	<i>pudet mē, I am ashamed</i>	
<i>miserēt vos, you pity</i>	<i>taedet mē</i>	} <i>I am weary,</i>
<i>miserēt eos, they pity</i>	<i>mē pertaesum est</i>	

me stultitiae meae pudet
non me paenitet vixisse

I am ashamed of my folly
I am not sorry for having lived.

Idiomatic Uses.

585. The **Accusative** is used in **Exclamations**, either with or without an Interjection.

O, miserās hominum mentes! Oh, the wretched minds of men!

586. A **Neuter Adjective** or **Pronoun** is used *adverbially* in the **Accusative**, as: *aliquid, somewhat; nihil, not at all; multum, much*, etc. The **Accusative** is also found in a few *adverbial phrases*, as: *maximam partem, mostly; id genus, of this kind; id temporis, at this time*:

<i>nihil movēor</i>	<i>I am not at all moved</i>
<i>forum id temporis omni turba</i>	<i>the forum was at this time free</i>
<i>vacuum erat</i>	<i>from all tumult.</i>

[213. 214.]

DATIVE CASE.

With Verbs.

587. The **Dative** is the Case of the **Indirect Object**, denoting *that for which, to the benefit or loss of which* any thing is or is done. It may be used with transitive and intransitive Verbs; *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*: **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage.**

scribo vobis hunc librum, I write this book for you;
tibi seris, tibi metis, you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

588. A large number of **Transitive Verbs** take along with the Accusative a **Dative** as an **Indirect Object**.

The English expresses the **Dative Relation** by *to* or *for*; but where the verb implies removal, the Latin Dative frequently answers to the English Objective with *from*; *for* = *in defence of* is **prō**.

errantibus viam monstrēmus	let us show the way to the erring
dolor somnum mihi adimit	grief takes away my sleep from
pro patriā mori	to die for one's country. [me

589. Many **Intransitive Verbs** signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *favor* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*, also *indulge*, *believe*, *persuade*, *envy*, *threaten*, *spare*, and the like, take the **Dative**.

Examples are:

prōdessē, to do good	crēdērē, to believe
nōcērē, to do harm	sūādērē, to advise, recommend
blandirī, to soothe	mīnārī, immīnērē, to threaten
fāvērē, to favor	bēnēdicērē, to bless
rēsistērē, to offer resistance	nūbērē, to marry
plācērē, to please	persūādērē, to persuade, con-
displicērē, to displease	mēdērī, to heal [vince
impērārē, to command	supplicārē, to beg
ōboedīrē, pārērē, to obey	mālēdicērē, to curse
fīdērē, to trust	parcērē, to spare
diffīdērē, to distrust	stūdērē, to devote one's self
īrascī, to be angry with	obtrectārē, to decry
indulgērē, to give up, to favor	invidērē, to envy

arbor resistit ventis

the tree offers resistance to the winds

probus invidet nemīni
non parcam opērae

the upright man envies no one
I will spare no pains.

Among the most notable **Exceptions** are:

jūvārē } to help, assist	dēfīcērē, to be wanting
adjūvārē }	jūbērē, to order
aequārē, to be equal	vētārē, to forbid

which govern the **Accusative**.

590. **Passives** are properly made only from transitive verbs. Intransitive Verbs which govern a Dative have an **Impersonal Passive** with the same Case, in the following manner:

Active. bõnũs invīdet nēmīnī, *a good man envies no one*

Passive. mīhī invīdētūr, *I am envied*

tībī invīdētūr, *thou art envied*

ēī invīdētūr, *he is envied*

nōbīs invīdētūr, *we are envied*

vōbīs invīdētūr, *you are envied*

īīs invīdētūr, *they are envied*

ā bõnō invīdētūr nēmīnī, *no one is envied by a good man.*

591. Some Verbs take the **Dative** or **Accusative** according to their signification:

cāvērē ālicūī, *to care for some one*

cāvērē āliquēm, *to beware of some one*

cāvērē āb āliquō, *to be on one's guard*

consūlērē ālicūī, *to consult the interest of some one*

consūlērē āliquēm, *to consult some one*

mētūērē āliquēm, *to fear some one*

mētūērē ālicūī, *to fear for some one*

prōvīdērē āliquīd, *to foresee something*

prōvīdērē ālicūī rēī, *to provide for something*

mōdērārī āliquīd, *to manage something*

mōdērārī ālicūī rēī, *to set bounds to a matter*

tempērārē āliquīd, *to rule something*

tempērārē ālicūī, *to spare some one*

tempērārē āb āliquā rē, *to abstain from something.*

592. The **Dative** is used with many **Verbs** compounded with the **Prepositions**:

ād, antē, cōn, īn, intēr,

ōb, post, prae, sūb, sūpēr.

Examples are:

afferrē, *to bring to, to render*

interjicērē, *to throw in*

praecurrērē, *to precede*

impōnērē, *to place on*

suppōnērē, *to put under*

virtus omnībus rebus antēit
onēra quibusdam animalībus im-
ponīmus

ādīmērē, *to take away*

intērēssē, *to be present*

injicērē, *to strike into*

oppōnērē, *to oppose*

virtue goes before all things
we put burdens on some ani-
mals. [215, 216.]

593. Certain Verbs of *giving* and *putting* may take either a **Dative** with an **Accusative**, or an **Accusative** with an **Ablative**, as:

dono tibi librum, *I present you a book;*
 dono te libro, *I present you with a book;*
 circumdat urbi murum, *he puts a wall around the city;*
 circumdat urbem muro, *he surrounds the city with a wall.*

So with *adspergĕrĕ*, *to sprinkle*, and *indŭĕrĕ*, *to put on*.

594. The **Dative** is used with *essĕ* to denote the **Possessor**, the thing possessed being the subject.

When so used it is commonly translated by *to have*; *mihĭ nŏmĕn est*, means *my name is* or *I am called*; the proper name is put either in the **Nominative** or the **Dative**, as:

est mihi domi pater *I have a father at home*
 puĕro nomen est Carŏlus (Carŏlo) *the boy's name is Charles.*

595. Certain Verbs take the **Dative** to denote the **purpose** or **end**, and often at the same time another **Dative** of the person **for whom** or **to whom**. Such are:

essĕ, <i>to be</i>	mittĕrĕ, <i>to send</i>	hĕbĕrĕ, <i>to hold</i>
fĭĕrĭ } <i>to become,</i>	accĭpĕrĕ, <i>to receive</i>	vertĕrĕ, <i>to interpret,</i>
} <i>turn out</i>	vĕnĭrĕ, <i>to come</i>	} <i>turn (against)</i>
dĀrĕ, <i>to put</i>	rĕlinquĕrĕ, <i>to leave</i>	dŭĕĕrĕ, <i>to count</i>

exemplo est formĭca	<i>the ant is an example</i>
malo est hominĭbus avaritĭa	<i>avarice is an evil to men</i>
dono dare	<i>to give as a present.</i>

596. The **Dative** is used with the **Gerundive** to denote the person on whom a necessity rests, as:

adhibenda est nobis diligentĭa	<i>we must use diligence</i>
nobis omnibus moriendum est	<i>we all must die.</i>

597. Verbs in the **Passive Voice** are sometimes followed by a **Dative** of the Agent — instead of *Ā*, *Āb* with the **Ablative**.

res mihi tota provĭsa est	<i>I have had the whole matter provided for</i>
carmina mihi scripta sunt nulla	<i>I have no poems written.</i>

With Adjectives.

598. Many **Adjectives** and **Adverbs** are followed by the **Dative** denoting that to which the quality is directed.

The most common are those signifying:

useful, fit, pleasant, like,

near, easy, inclined, necessary, and their Opposites.

acceptūſ, *acceptable*

amicūſ, *friendly*

inimicūſ, *unfriendly, opposed*

aptūſ, *apt, suitable*

cārūſ, *dear*

commūnīſ, *common*

dulcīſ, *agreeable*

fācīlīſ, *easy*

difficīlīſ, *difficult*

grātūſ, *pleasing*

ingrātūſ, *unpleasant*

grāvīſ, *burdensome*

jūcundūſ, *agreeable*

injūcundūſ, *disagreeable*

mōleſtūſ, *troublesome*

nēceſſārīūſ, *necessary*

ōdīōſūſ, *hateful*

pār, *equal, a match for*

diſpār, *unlike*

sālūtārīſ, *beneficial*

ſīmīlīſ, *like*

diſſīmīlīſ, *unlike*

turpīſ, *disgraceful*

ūtīlīſ, *useful*

canīſ ſīmīlīſ lupō eſt

a dog is similar to a wolf

flamma fumo eſt proximā

fire is next akin to smoke.

Many Adjectives which belong to this class become *Substantives* and as such take the **Genitive**; e. g.:

amicūſ, *a friend*

aequālīſ, *a contemporary*

inimicūſ, *an enemy*

vīcīnūſ, *a neighbor*

fāmīliārīſ, *an (intimate) friend*

nēceſſārīūſ, *a relation*

599. Adjectives of **Inclination** may take the **Accusative** with *ergā* (when *friendly* feelings are spoken of) or with *īn*, *adverſūſ* (for *friendly and unfriendly* feelings); those signifying *useful, suitable* take oftener the **Accusative** with *ād* to denote the thing *for which*, but regularly the **Dative** of **Persons**; as: *sevērūſ* in *filīūm*, *severe towards his son*; *homo ad nullam rem utīlīſ*, *a good-for-nothing fellow*.

600. The Adjectives *prōpiōr*, *proximūſ* (sometimes), and the Adverbs *prōpiūſ*, *proximē* (commonly) take the **Accusative**. After *ſīmīlīſ*, *like*, the **Genitive** is used to denote *exact resemblance*; as: *mei*, *tui*, *noſtri ſīmīlīſ*, *my, your, our like*, and *vērī ſīmīlīſ*, *likely*.

601. A few **Derivative Substantives** take the **Dative** after the analogy of their **Primitives**, as: *juſtitīa eſt obtemperantiā legībūſ*, *justice is obedience to the laws*.

Ethical Dative.

602. The **Dative** of a **Personal Pronoun** is sometimes introduced for liveliness of expression: **Ethical Dative.**

fur mihi est, *he is a thief in my opinion;*
quid tibi vis? *what do you want?*

[219. 220.]

ABLATIVE CASE.

Ablative of Cause.

603. The **Ablative** is used to express the **Cause**.

The **Ablative of Cause** designates *that by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* something is or is done. Accordingly it is used with passive verbs and such active verbs and adjectives as imply a passive meaning. In the passive construction, however, the *Person* or *Living Agent* by whom any thing is done is put in the Ablative with **ā, āb**.

Dei providentiā mundus admini- strātur	<i>the world is governed by God's providence</i>
a Deo mundus administrātur	<i>the world is governed by God</i>
concordiā res parvae crescunt	<i>by concord small affairs grow</i>
milites praelio fessi erant	<i>the soldiers were weary with the battle.</i>

604. The **Ablative of Cause** is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with **Verbs** and **Adjectives** like the following:

dolērē, <i>to grieve</i>	glōriārī, <i>to boast</i>
maerērē, <i>to mourn</i>	lābōrārē, <i>to suffer</i>
gaudērē } <i>to rejoice, delight</i>	sūperbūs, <i>proud</i>
laetārī }	laetūs, <i>pleased</i> — aegēr, <i>ill</i>
dēlectārī, <i>to be delighted</i>	anxīūs, <i>anxious</i>

agricōla gaudet equis, *the husbandman delights in horses;*
Miltiādes aeger erat vulneribus, *Miltiades was ill from his wounds;*
aliis malis labōras, *you suffer with other ills.*

This includes such **Ablatives** as: jussū, *by order;* rōgātū, *at the request,* etc. On causā and grātīā, *for the sake of,* see **566. 8.**

Akin to the Causal Ablative is the **Ablative** with **verbs** expressing **origin**, as:

humilibus parentibus ortus	<i>sprung from low parents.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

Ablative of Means or Instrument.

605. The **Ablative** is used to denote the **Means** or **Instrument** by which anything is effected.

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est	<i>Pyrrhus was killed by a stone</i>
benevolentiam civium blanditiis colligere turpe est	<i>to win the good will of one's fellow-citizens by flattery is disgraceful.</i>

606. The **Person**, considered as *Means* or *Instrument*, is expressed by **pĕr** with the accusative, or by **ĕpĕrā** with a genitive or possessive:

Caesar certior factus est per legatos	<i>Caesar was informed by (means of) ambassadors.</i>
---------------------------------------	---

607. *ĕrŭdĭrĕ*, *ĭnstĭtŭĕrĕ*, *to instruct*; as: *alĭquem artĭbus ĕrŭdĭre*, *to instruct some one in the arts*; and *affĭcĕrĕ*, *to treat*, in such expressions as: *alĭquem honorĭbus affĭcĕre*, *to honor some one*; *alĭquem molestĭa affĭcĕre*, *to trouble some one* — are worthy of note.

Ablative of Limitation.

608. That *in respect to which* or *in accordance with which* anything is or is done is denoted by the **Ablative of Limitation**.

Out of this usage grow a number of **Particular Phrases**:

grandis nātŭ, <i>old</i>	mĕā sententiā, mĕā ĕpĭnĭōnĕ,
mājor nātŭ, <i>older</i>	<i>according to my opinion</i>
maximŭs nātŭ, <i>oldest</i>	jŭdĭcĭō, testĭmōnĭō alĭcŭjŭs,
minor nātŭ, <i>younger</i>	<i>according to the judgment,</i>
minimŭs nātŭ, <i>youngest</i>	<i>testimony, of some one</i>
reges nomine magis quam imperio	<i>kings in name rather than in authority.</i>

[229. 230.]

Ablative of Comparison.

609. The **Ablative of Comparison** may be used with the **Comparative**, instead of *quā*m, *than*, with the *Nominative* or *Accusative*.

filius melior est quam pater	} <i>the son is better than his father</i>
filius melior est patre	
scio filium meliorem esse patre	<i>I know that the son is better than his father.</i>

610. The **Ablative**, instead of **quām** with the same case as the thing compared, must be regularly used in **Relative Sentences**:
amicitiā, qua nihil melius habē- *friendship than which we have*
mus. . . *nothing better. . .*

quām is often omitted after **plūs**, **amplūs**, *more*; **mīnūs**, *less*; **longiūs**, *farther*, and the like, without influence upon the construction. But the **Ablative** may also be used when the word with **quām** would be in the **Nominative** or **Accusative**.

ex Romānis minus trecenti per-	<i>of the Romans less than 300</i>
iērunt	<i>perished</i>
tecum plus annum vixit	<i>he lived with you more than a</i>
	<i>year</i>

plus quam ducenti interfecti sunt	} <i>more than 200 were killed.</i>
plus ducenti interfecti sunt	
plus ducentis interfecti sunt	

611. Certain **Ablatives**, as **ōpīnīōnē**, **expectātīōnē**, **spē**, **sōlītō**, preceding a comparative are used instead of a **Clause**, as:

opiniōne celerius, sooner than is expected;
dicto citius, quicker than the word was spoken;
serius spe, later than was hoped;
amnis solīto citatior, the river running faster than usual.

612. The **Ablative** is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the **Degree** of **Difference**. This use is especially frequent with the **Ablatives**:

multō, <i>much</i>	altērō tantō, <i>twice as much</i>
paulō, <i>a little</i>	nihilō, <i>by nothing, no</i>
ālīquantō, <i>some more</i>	quō. . . ěō
tantō, <i>so much</i>	quantō. . . tantō } <i>the. . . the</i>
quantō, <i>how much</i>	
minor uno mense	<i>younger by one month</i>
multo praestat virtus divitiis	<i>virtue is much better than riches.</i>

Ablative of Manner.

613. The **Ablative of Manner** answers the question **How?**

It is used with the preposition **cūm** when it has no **Adjective**; with or without **cūm** when it has an **Adjective**. Words signifying *manner* themselves, such as: **mōdūs**, **rātīō**, **mōs**, **rītūs**, and likewise **ānīmūs**, **mens**, **consilīūm**, never take **cūm**.

cum voluptate aliquem audire
aliquid facere magno studio,
or magno cum studio

to hear some one with pleasure
to do something with great zeal

aliquid aequo animo ferre
(never aequo cum animo)

to bear something with an even
mind.

614. The following **Ablatives** are used without an Adjective or Preposition:

silentio, in silence
ordine, in an orderly manner
casu, by chance
via et ratione, methodically
voluntate, voluntarily
dolo, fraude, fraudulently

iure, rightfully
iniuria, unjustly
vi, violently
vi et armis; by force of arms
pedibus, a-foot
navibus, by ship

Ablative of Quality.

615. The **Ablative** with an Adjective or an equivalent is used to denote **Quality**.

616. External qualities are put by preference in the *Ablative*; measure, number, time and space are put in the *Genitive* only.

serpens ingenti magnitudine, a serpent of huge size;
Britanni sunt capillo promisso, the Britons have long hanging locks.

Ablative of Price.

617. As a rule, **Price** is put in the **Ablative**.

The **Ablative of Price** is used with:

emere }
redimere } to buy
mercari }
vendere, to sell (pass. venire)
licere, to be for sale
patriam auro vendidit
equus mihi talento stetit

aestimare, to value
locare } to let
collocare }
conducere, to hire
esse, stare, constare, to cost
he sold his country for gold
the horse cost me a talent.

618. **General Value or Cost** is expressed by the following **Ablatives**:

magno, at a high price
parvo, at a low price
nihilo, for nothing

plurimo, at a very high price
minimo, at a very low price

hortos istos emamus magno, si
parvo non possumus

let us buy those gardens at a
high price, if we cannot have
them cheap.

619. Comparative Value or Cost (see 569) is expressed by these Genitives:

tantī, <i>so much</i>	quantī, <i>how much</i>
tantīdēm, <i>at the same price</i>	plūrīs, <i>dearer</i> ; mīnōrīs, <i>cheaper</i>
mercatorēs non tantīdem vendunt quanti emērunt	<i>merchants do not sell at the same price at which they bought</i>
quanti cenas?	<i>what do you pay for your dinner?</i>

Mark the following Particular Phrases:

bēnē ěmērē, <i>to buy cheap</i>	bēnē vendērē, <i>to sell dear</i>
mālē ěmērē, <i>to buy dear</i>	mālē vendērē, <i>to sell at a loss.</i>

[231. 232.]

Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.

620. Verbs signifying *to remove, abstain, set free* take the Ablative with or without the Prepositions *ex, dē, āb*; but with *Persons* a Preposition, usually *āb*, must be used.

Examples are:

dēpellērē lōcō, <i>to drive from a place</i>
abstīnērē injūrīā, <i>to abstain from wrong-doing</i>
abstīnērē mānūs āb ālīēnīs, <i>to keep one's hands from other people's property</i>
ējīcērē ē cīvītātē, <i>to drive from the state</i>
ērumpērē ē saxīs, <i>to burst from the rocks</i>
ābhorrērē āb ālīquā rē, <i>to differ from something</i>
dētterrērē āb injūrīā, <i>to deter from wrong-doing</i>
libērārē ā cūrīs, <i>to release from cares</i>
dēcēdērē (dē) vītā, <i>to depart from life</i>

Hannībal ex Italiā decedēre	<i>Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy</i>
coactus est	
Alexander vix a se manus abstīnūit	<i>Alexander hardly kept his hands from himself</i>
multos fortuna libērat paena, metu nemīnem	<i>fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear</i>
Themistōclem Athenienses e civitātē expulērunt	<i>the Athenians banished Themistocles from the state.</i>

621. Verbs compounded with **sē** and **dīs** take nearly always **ā** or **āb**; such are:

discernērē }
distinguērē } *to distinguish*
differrē }
discrēpārē } *to differ, disagree*
dissentīrē }
distārē }

sēcernērē }
sējungērē } *to separate*
sēpārārē }
likewise:
ālīnārē, *to alienate*
ābhorrērē, *to be averse*

crede mihi, mores distant a car-
mine nostro

*believe me, my conduct far
differs from my song.*

Mark the **Particular Phrase**:

interdīcērē ālicūi āquā ēt ignī, *to forbid one the use of fire
and water, to banish one.*

622. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, of *Filling* and *De-
priving* take the **Ablative**.

ābundārē, *to abound, have abun-
dance*
cārērē, *to be or do without, to
lack*
ēgērē, indīgērē, *to need*
vācārē, *to be void of, to be free
from*
sātīārē, *to glut*

explērē }
implērē } *to fill*
complērē }
rēplērē }
orbārē } *to deprive*
prīvārē }
spōliārē } *to plunder, to strip*
nūdārē }

non egēo medicīna
admonitio acerbitate carere de-
bet

*I do not need medicine
an admonition should be with-
out bitterness*

America abundat lacubus et flu-
minibus

*America abounds in lakes and
rivers.*

ēgēo and indīgēo are often followed by the **Genitive**.

623. **Adjectives** of *Plenty* and *Want* regularly take the **Genitive** (see **567.** 1.), but some of them follow the analogy of the corresponding verbs and take the **Ablative**. Among the latter are:

nūdūs, *naked*
orbūs, *deprived of*
libēr, *free*

ōnustūs, *laden*
īnānīs } *void*
vācūūs }

rēfertūs, *stuffed*
praeditūs, *endowed*

asellus onustus auro
urbs nuda praesidio

*a donkey laden with gold
a city naked of defense.*

624. *ōpūs est*, *there is need, it is needful, necessary*, takes the **Dative** of the **Person** who is in want, and the **Ablative** of the **Thing** wanted (Impersonal Construction); but the Thing wanted may be the Subject and *ōpūs est (sunt)* the Predicate (Personal Construction).

The **Impersonal Construction** must regularly be used in *Negative Sentences*, and the **Personal** with *Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns*; *ōpūs* is always indeclinable.

opus mihi est libro	<i>I want a book</i>
liber mihi opus est	<i>a book is what I want</i>
opus mihi est libris	<i>I want books</i>
libri mihi opus sunt	<i>books are what I want</i>
nihil opus est duce	<i>there is no need of a leader</i>
multa opus sunt	<i>there is need of many things.</i>

Ablative in Special Constructions.

625. The **Ablative** is used with the **Adjectives**:

dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	frētūs, <i>trusting, relying</i>
indignūs, <i>unworthy</i>	contentūs, <i>satisfied</i>

also with dignōr, *I deem worthy.*

ālīenūs, *strange, foreign*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **ā, āb.**

vir patre dignissimus	<i>a man most worthy of his father</i>
me dignor honōre	<i>I deem myself worthy of honor</i>
homo sum, humāni nihil a me aliēnum puto	<i>I am a man, and nothing relating to man I deem foreign to me.</i>

626. The **Ablative** is used with the **Deponent Verbs**:

ūtōr, -ī, <i>to use</i>	pōtīōr, -īrī, <i>to make one's self master of</i>
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	vescōr, -ī, <i>to feed</i>

and their **Compounds**:

ābūtōr, -ī, <i>to abuse</i>	dēfungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>
perfrūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy fully</i>	perfungōr, -ī, <i>to fulfil</i>

utar vestra benignitāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness*;
vescīmur bestiīs, *we live upon animals.*

pōtīōr sometimes takes the **Genitive**; always in the phrase: pōtīrī rērūm, *to get control of affairs*.

627. nītōr, *I stay myself, rest upon*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **in**.

in Pompēji vita nititur salus ci- *the welfare of the state depends*
vitātis *on Pompey's life.*

628. fīdō and confīdō, *I trust*, take the **Ablative** when the object is a *Thing*, and the **Dative** when the object is a *Person*. diffīdō, *I distrust*, commonly takes the **Dative**. See **589**.

nemo potest fortunae stabilitate *no one can trust to the stability*
confidere *of fortune*
huic legiōni Caesar maxime con- *this legion Caesar especially*
fidebat *trusted.* [235. 236.]

Time, Space, Place:

USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions construed with the **Accusative**:

antē, āpūd, ād, adversūs,
circūm, circā, cītrā, cīs,
ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
infra, intrā, juxtā, ōb,
pēnēs, (pōnē), pōst & praetēr,
prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundūm,
suprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

629. ād, with many varieties of application, generally means *to*. It denotes:

direction toward a *place* or *person*, as: ad urbem, *to town*;
venio ad te, *I come to you*;

nearness with reference to *place*, *time* or *quantity*, as: urbs sita
ad mare, *a town situated near the sea*; ad vespēram, *towards*
evening; ad ducentos, *nearly 200*;

time, answering the question *till when?* as: ad summam senec-
tūtem, *until extreme old age*. It also denotes a fixed time, as: ad
horam, *at the hour*;

aim or *purpose* = *in respect of*, as: res ad bellum utiles,
things useful for war;

accord or *agreement* = *according to*, as: ad voluntātem ali-
cujus loqui, *to speak according to some one's will*.

Particular Phrases are:

ad verbum, *word for word*

nihil ad hanc rem, *nothing in comparison with this thing*

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man.*

630. āpūd, *at*, chiefly used of persons, denotes:

nearness or presence, as: **apud** Caesārem, *at Caesar's house*; **apud** iudices, *before, in presence of, the judges*; **apud** Cannas, *near Cannae*;

situation or estimation among, regard by, as: **apud** vetēres, *among the ancients*; **apud** me nihil valet hominū opinio, *with me the opinion of the multitude has no weight.*

āpūd is also used with the *Names of Authors* instead of *in* with the name of their works, as: **apud** Plinīum legimus, *we read in Pliny (in his works).*

631. antē, *before*, means *preceding in space or time*, as: **ante** portas, *before the gates*; **ante** noctem, *before night.*

632. adversūs, more rarely **adversūm**, indicates:

direction toward a place or person, and combines the meanings of both *against* and *toward*, as: castra **adversus** urbem ponere, *to pitch the camp over against the city*; **adversus** aliquem pugnāre, *to fight with (against) some one*; piētas **adversus** parentes, *duty to(ward) parents.*

633. cīs and **citrā**, *on this side*, are used in reference to *place* opposed to **trans**, as: **citra** Rubicōnem, *on this side of the Rubicon.*

634. circā and **circūm** are equivalent to both *around* and *about* with reference to *place*, as: **circum** haec loca, *hereabout*; homines **circum** se habent, *they have people with them.* *circa* is also used of *time*, as: **circa** eandem horam, *about the same hour.*

Particular Phrase :

circum amicos mittere, *to send around to one's friends.*

635. circitēr, *near, about*, is used of *time* only, as: **circiter** meridiem, *about noon*, but is more commonly an *Adverb.*

636. contrā is equivalent to *against* in both its meanings: *opposite to*, as: **contra** Italiā, *over against Italy*; *in opposition to*, as: **contra** naturam vivere, *to live against nature.*

637. *ergā*, toward, always implies friendly feelings, as: *divīna bonitas erga homīnes*, *God's goodness toward men*.

638. *extrā* means *without* = *out of*, sometimes *beyond* or *except*, as: *extra urbem*, *without the city*; *extra modum*, *beyond measure*; *extra ducem reliqui rapāces sunt*, *except the leader the rest are robbers*.

639. *intrā* denotes *within* in regard to both *place* and *time*, as: *intra urbem*, *within the city*; *intra decem annos*, *within or during 10 years*. *intra* with an Ordinal Number means *before the expiration of*, as: *intra decimum diem urbem cepit*, *before the expiration of the 10th day he took the city*.

640. *intēr* is equivalent to both *between* and *among*, as: *inter Padum et Alpes*, *between the Po and the Alps*; *Croesus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Croesus, the wealthiest among kings*. It is also used to denote *time*, as: *inter cenam*, *during dinner*; *inter ludendum*, *while playing*. With the personal pronouns, as: *inter nōs, vōs, ēōs, sē*, it is employed in a reciprocal sense, answering to the English *one another, each other*, as: *Cicerōnis puēri amant inter se*, *Cicero's boys love one another*.

641. *infra*, below, means:

lower in place, as: *infra caelum*, *under the sky*;

lower in rank or esteem, as: *eum infra omnes puto*, *I think him beneath all men*;

later in time, as: *Homērus non infra Lycurgum fuit*, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus*;

smaller than, as: *magnitudīne infra elephantum*, *in size smaller than an elephant*.

642. *juxtā*, hard by, beside, as: *juxta murum castra posuit*, *he pitched the camp hard by the wall*.

643. *ōb* sometimes means *before*, as: *ob oculos versāri*, *to be before the eyes*. Generally it means *by reason of, on account of*, as: *ob eam causam*, *for that reason*.

644. *pēnēs* denotes *in the possession or power of*, as: *summum imperium penes Agamemnonem erat*, *the chief command was in the hands of Agamemnon*.

645. pĕr, *through*, is used in a great variety of applications, as: denoting *place, from end to end*, as: **per urbem ire**, *to go through the city*;

denoting *duration* as: **per noctem**, *during the night*;

denoting *the agent or means*, as: **per amicum servatus sum**, *by (means of) my friend I was saved*;

denoting *the manner* in which a thing is done, as: **per litteras**, *by letter*; **per potestatem**, *by authority*; **per iram**, *from or in anger*; **per vim**, *by violence*;

denoting *the object invoked in forms of swearing*, as: **per deos immortales jurare**, *to swear by the immortal gods*.

Particular Phrases:

per me licet, *you may for all I care*; **per aetatem**, *on account of his age*; **per valetudinem**, *on account of ill health*.

646. pōst, *after*, denotes:

behind in place, as: **post equitem sedet atra cura**, *behind the rider sits black care*;

later in time, as: **post tenēbras lux**, *after darkness comes light*.

647. praetĕr primarily means *along*, as: **praeter litus**, *along shore*; yet it is more commonly equivalent to *except* or *besides*, as: **praeter te amicum neminem habeo**, *except you I have no friend*; **praeter auctoritatem etiam vires habet**, *besides authority he has also strength*.

Particular Phrases:

praeter spem, *contrary to hope*; **praeter modum**, *immoderately*; **praeter ceteros**, *more than the rest*.

648. prōpĕ, *near, near by*, as: **prope urbem**, *near the city*.

649. proptĕr is equivalent to *propĕ, near*, as: **propter Siciliam insulae Vulcaniae sunt**, *near Sicily are the Vulcanian islands*; but most frequently it is *on account of*, implying *motive or reason*, as: **propter modestiam tuam te diligo**, *I love you on account of your modesty*.

650. sĕcundūm (derived from *sĕquī, to follow*) means:

along, as: **secundum mare iter facere**, *to make a journey along the sea shore*;

next to, immediately after, as: **secundum cenam**, *immediately after dinner*;

according to, as: **secundum naturam vivere**, *to live according to nature*.

651. *suprā*, above (opposite to *infrā*) denotes: higher in place, as: *supra lunam*, *above the moon*; more than, superior to, as: *supra duos menses*, *more than two months*; *supra vires*, *above one's strength*.

652. *trans*, beyond, across, on the other side, is used with verbs expressing motion, as: *multae aves ante hiemem trans mare migrant*, *many birds migrate across the sea before winter*; also with verbs expressing rest, as: *eo ipso tempore trans mare fui*, *at that very time I was beyond the sea*.

653. *versūs*, towards, -ward, follows an accusative which is usually governed by *ād* or *īn*, as: *ad Oceānum versus proficisci*, *to set out towards the ocean*. With *dōmūs* and names of towns *versūs* alone is used, as: *Romam versus*, *Romeward*; *domum versus*, *homeward*.

654. *ultrā* signifies beyond, on the further side, as: *ultra Atlantem montem*, *beyond mount Atlas*. It is also used to denote measure, as: *ultra septa transilire*, *to go beyond bounds*.

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

Prepositions construed with the Ablative.

ā, *āb*, *abs*, *cūm*, *dē*,
cōrām, *prō*, *ex*, *ē*,
tēnūs, *sīnē*, *prae*.

655. *ā* (*āb*, *abs*), from, is used in a variety of applications; it denotes:

the point of time or space at which the action, state, etc. are regarded as setting out, or beginning, as: *a prima aetate*, *from an early age*; *ab urbe profectus est*, *he departed from the city*;

that from which anything proceeds or by which anything is produced, as: *calor est a sole*, *the heat is from the sun*; *ab hoste interfectus est*, *he was killed by an enemy*;

that from which anything is guarded, with such verbs as *dēfendērē*, *tūērī*, etc., as: *urbem defendere ab hostibus*, *to defend the city against the enemy*;

that with reference to which anything is or is done, equivalent to with respect to, as: *imparati sumus a militibus*, *as to soldiers we are not ready*.

Before vowels and *h*, it is *āb*; before consonants, *ā* or *āb*; *abs* before *tē*, but we say also *ā tē*, *never āb tē*.

656. *absquē*, without, is rarely used.

657. *dē* primarily means *down from* or *away from*, as: *de caelo, down from heaven; de vita decedēre, to depart from life.* It is also used in a *partitive* sense in such expressions as: *unus de plebe, one of the people.* When denoting *time*, it is *as early as, even at*, as: *de nocte, even at night; de mense Decembri, as early as December.* Most commonly, however, it is *concerning, about* or *on*, as: *de gestis Alexandri, on the exploits of Alexander; liber de amicitia, a book on friendship.* Sometimes it is equivalent to *sēcundūm, according to*, as: *de consilio meo, according to my advice;* and frequently it denotes the *manner of action*, as: *denūo (de novo), de intēgro, afresh; de improvīso, unexpectedly; de industriā, purposely; qua de causa, quibus de causis, for which reason or reasons.*

658. *cōrām*, in the presence of, before, as: *coram amico, in the presence of a friend.* When used as an adverb, *coram* means *personally*, as: *coram adesse, to be present in person.*

659. *cūm*, with, expresses *association* or *accompanying circumstances*, as: *cum aliquo ire, to go with some one; esse cum telo, to go armed; configere cum hoste, to fight with the enemy.*

cum with the Ablative of a **Personal Pronoun** is *always* appended to it, as: *tecum loquitur, he talks with you;* and commonly also with the **Relative**: *quocum, quibuscum* (likewise *cum quo, cum quibus*); *quicum* is used for the Ablative of both numbers and all genders.

660. *ē, ex*, out of, from, denotes:

the place, answering to the question *whence?* as: *aliquem ex regno pellere, to drive some one out of the kingdom; e longinquo videre, to see from afar; ex equo pugnare, to fight on horseback;*

the point of time from which, as: *ex illo die, from that day;*

the cause out of which anything proceeds, as: *ex nihilo nihil fit, of nothing nothing comes; aeger ex vulnere, sick from a wound; ex quo, whence or for which reason.*

In a great many cases *ē (ex)* has the signification *in accordance with*, as: *ex ejus sententia, according to his opinion;* or it denotes the *manner of an action*, as: *ex animo laudare, to praise heartily; ex improvīso, unexpectedly.* In such phrases as: *unus e multis, one of many*, it is used in a *partitive* sense.

Mark the **Particular Phrases**:

ex tua re, to your advantage; e republica, for the good of the state.

Before consonants it is *ē*; before vowels and consonants, *ex*.

661. prō means:

before or in front of, preceding in space, as: pro castris aciem instruere, to array the army for battle before the camp;

for = in defence of, in behalf of, as: pro patria mori, to die for one's country;

for = instead of, as: pro consule, in place of consul;

in accordance with or in proportion to, as: pro portione, in proportion; pro virili parte, to the best of one's ability.

662. prae is *before = in front of*, only in combination with *agerē* and *ferrē*, as: *prae se ferre, to carry before one's self, i. e. to show*. Most commonly it means: *in comparison with, in contrast with, as: prae me beatus es, in comparison with me you are happy*; it is also frequently used in the sense of *on account of*, implying an obstacle, as: *prae lacrimis scribere non possum, I cannot write on account of tears*.

663. tēnūs, *as far as*, follows its noun, as: *Tauro tenus, as far as Taurus; hoc tenus, hitherto*.

664. sīnē, *without*, opposed to *cūm*, has a negative power, hence we say: *sine ulla spe, without any hope*.

[93. 94. 239. 240.]

Prepositions construed with the Accusative & Ablative.

sūb, sūpēr, subtēr, ĩn.

665. sūb and **ĭn**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion towards*, when by the **Ablative**, *rest in, a place*.

666. sūb with the **Accusative** means:

under, close to, as: sub montem succedere, to come close to the hill;

about, shortly before, of time, as: sub noctem, towards night; sub lucem, near daylight;

667. sūb with the **Ablative** is always:

under, as: sub terra habitare, to live under ground; sub divo, in the open air; sub monte, at the foot of a hill.

668. sūpēr has the **Ablative** only when used in the sense of **dē**, *concerning*, as: *hac super re, concerning this thing*. With the **Accusative** it is *over, above*, answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *super aliquem sedere, to sit above some one*.

Particular Phrases: *vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super cenam, during dinner.*

669. *subtēr*, *beneath*, takes the **Accusative** answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *subter togam*, *under the toga*.

670. *In*, with the **Accusative** denotes *entrance* with regard to *place*, as: *in urbem venit*, *he came into town*; it also indicates the *object toward* which an action is directed, either with a friendly or hostile intention, as: *amor in patrem*, *love for one's father*; *oratio in Catilinam*, *a speech against Catiline*. With words denoting *time* it is equivalent to *for*, expressing a predetermination of that time, as: *in diem vivere*, *to live for the day*; *in perpetuum*, *forever*; *in dies*, *from day to day*.

Mark the **Adverbial Expressions**: *hunc in modum*, *in this way*; *mirum in modum*, *in a wonderful manner*; *in vicem*, *alternately* or *instead of*.

671. *In* with the **Ablative**, denotes *presence in place, time or circumstances*, as: *in urbe habito*, *I live in town*; *est mihi in animo*, *I have it in mind*; *in scribendo*, *while writing*. When a **Number** or **Quantity** is indicated, it is equivalent to *among*, as: *numerari in bonis civibus*, *to be counted among the good citizens*.

[95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

TIME.

672. *Time when* is expressed by the **Ablative** of words denoting time, such as:

<i>tempūs</i> , <i>time</i>	<i>saeculūm</i> , <i>a century</i>
<i>aetās</i> , <i>an age</i>	<i>vēr</i> , <i>spring</i>
<i>punctūm tempōris</i> , <i>a moment</i>	<i>aestās</i> , <i>summer</i>
<i>hōrā</i> , <i>an hour</i>	<i>auctumnūs</i> , <i>autumn</i>
<i>dīēs</i> , <i>a day</i>	<i>hīems</i> , <i>winter</i>
<i>mensīs</i> , <i>a month</i>	<i>vespēr</i> , <i>evening</i>
<i>annūs</i> , <i>a year</i>	<i>nox</i> , <i>night</i>
<i>Hannibālis milītes vere convenēre</i>	<i>Hannibal's soldiers assembled in spring.</i>

673. Words not explicitly expressing time, such as: *bellūm*, *pāx*, *pūeritiā*, usually take *In* with the **Ablative**, but they are without *In*, if accompanied by an **Adjective** or **Genitive**. So we say:

<i>in bello</i> , <i>in war times</i>	<i>bello Persico</i> , <i>at the time of the Persian war</i>
<i>in pace</i> , <i>in time of peace</i>	<i>prima pueritiā</i> , <i>in early boyhood</i>
<i>in pueritiā</i> , <i>in boyhood</i>	<i>bello Antiōchi</i> , <i>during the war with Antiochus.</i>
<i>in adulescentiā</i> , <i>in youth</i>	
<i>in senectūte</i> , <i>in old age</i>	

Particular Phrases.

inītiō	} <i>at the beginning</i>	temporībus	} <i>in the times of</i>
principiō		aetāte	
adventu,		<i>during the games</i>	
discessu,		<i>twice a day</i>	
in tempore,		<i>at 9 o'clock</i>	

674. Time how long is put in the Accusative.

Appīus caecus multos annos fuit, *Appius was blind many years.*

The Preposition **p̄r** may be used to denote *from beginning to end*, as: est mecum per totum diem, *he is with me the livelong day.*

Time how long since may be expressed by an ordinal number in the Accusative, as:

Mithridātes jam annum tertium Mithridates has reigned going
et vicesimum regnat on 23 years.

Time how long before the present moment is expressed by **ābhinc** with the Accusative, as: abhinc sex menses, *six months ago.*

675. Distance of time how long before or after is expressed by the **Ablative** with **antē** or **pōst** following:

paucis diēbus ante, *a few days before*
paucis diēbus post, *a few days afterward.*

The **Accusative** can also be employed, but then the *Preposition* precedes, thus: ante, post paucos dies.

Either Case and the **cardinal** as well as the **ordinal** numbers may be used, when the *Preposition* is placed **between** the Numeral and the Substantive. Hence the English phrase *three years after* may be expressed as follows:

tribus annis post	post tres annos
tertio anno post	post tertium annum
tribus post annis	tres post annos
tertio post anno	tertium post annum

quām and a verb may be added to **antē** and **pōst** in all the forms above specified, as:

tribus annis postquam venērat	} <i>three years after he</i>
post tres annos quam venērat	
tertio anno postquam venērat	
post annum tertium quam venērat	

had come.

676. Time *within which* is expressed by the **Ablative** or by *intrā* with the **Accusative**:

Agamemnon vix decem annis *Agamemnon in ten years*
(intra decem annos) unam *hardly took one city.*
cepit urbem

677. Time *for how long* is expressed by *in* with the **Accusative**, as:

Phaëton currum paternum **in** *Phaëton asked his father's char-*
diem rogāvit *riot for a day.*

678. The **Question** *how old?* is answered in different ways:

By **nātūs** (*born*) with the **Accusative**, as: puer decem annos natus est, *the boy is ten years old*;

By the **Genitive of Quality**: Hamilcar secum duxit filium Hannibālem annōrum novem, *Hamilcar took with him his son Hannibal 9 years of age*;

By *āgērē*, *to pass*, with **annūs** and an ordinal number, as: quartum annum ago et octogesimū, *I am 33 years old.*

Older and *younger* are expressed by **mājōr** and **mīnōr** with following **Ablative**, as:

major quinque et triginta annis, *older than 35 years.* [243. 244.]

SPACE.

679. **Extent of Space** is put in the **Accusative**, as:

fossa pedes trecentos longa est, *the ditch is 300 feet long, 6 feet*
sex pedes alta *deep.*

680. **Measures of length, depth, etc.**, are often expressed by the **Genitive of Quality**, as:

vallum pedum duodēcim fieri *he ordered a rampart to be*
jussit *made of 12 feet (in height).*

681. **Distance** *how far* is put in the **Accusative** or **Ablative**, as:

a recta conscientia transversum *we ought not to swerve a nail's*
unguem non oportet discedere *breadth from a right con-*
science

copiae Ariovisti a Romanis mi- *the troops of Ariovistus were*
libus quattuor et viginti afue- *twenty four miles from the*
runt *Romans.* [241. 242.]

PLACE.

682. To express relations of **Place**, *Prepositions* are necessary, viz.:

in with the **Ablative** to denote the place *where*, as: in urbe, *in town*;

in or **ad** with the **Accusative** to denote the place *to which*, as: in Eurōpam, *to Europe*; ad urbem, *to town*;

ex with the **Ablative** to denote the place *from which*, as: ex Britanniā, *from Great Britain*.

683. But the *Prepositions* are not used with the names of **Towns** and **small Islands**.

In answer to the question *whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the **Accusative Case**, as: Romam venit, *he came to Rome*.

In answer to the question *whence?* the names of towns and small islands are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Roma cessit, *he retired from Rome*.

In answer to the question *where?* the names of towns and small islands, if of the first or second declension and in the singular, are put in the **Genitive Case**, as: Romae mansit, *he remained at Rome*. But if the names are of the plural number or belong to the third declension, they are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Babylōne mortuus est, *he died at Babylon*. (For the place *where* there was formerly a special Case, the **Locative**, ending in **ī** which is preserved in Carthaginī, *at Carthage*; ruri, *in the country*, etc.)

684. **urbs** or **oppidum** *without an Attribute* is placed **before** the proper name, and the preposition **in** or **ex** is **always** employed, as:

in urbem Cirtam

to the city of Cirta

ex oppido Gergovia

from the town of Gergovia

in urbe Roma

in the city of Rome.

685. **urbs** or **oppidum** *with an Attribute* is placed **after** the proper name, **commonly** with **in** or **ex**. But in answer to the question *where?* the **Ablative** may be used with or without **in**, even though the proper name be in the **Genitive**.

Aulide, ex oppido Boeotiae

from Aulis, a town of Boeotia

Thalam, in oppidum magnum

to Thala, a great town

Albae, (in) urbe munita

at Alba, a fortified city.

686. The following words are used like names of towns, without a preposition:

rūs, <i>into the country</i>	dōmūm, <i>home</i>	
rūrē, <i>from the country</i>	dōmō, <i>from home</i>	hūmō, <i>from the ground</i>
rūrī, <i>in the country</i>	dōmī, <i>at home</i>	hūmī, <i>on the ground</i>
	dōmī mīlītīaequē, <i>at home and in the field</i>	
	bellī dōmīquē, <i>in war and in peace</i>	
	fōrās, <i>to the doors; fōrīs, out-of-doors, abroad.</i>	

A **Genitive** or **Possessive** may be used with **dōmūs** in this construction, but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally employed, as:

domi meae, *at my house*; domum Caesāris, *to Caesar's house*;
 in domum vetērem e nova, *to the old house from the new.*

687. The **Ablative** is used without a preposition to denote the place *where*:

With nouns when qualified by the Adjective **tōtūs**, or **cunctūs**:
 Demosthēnes disertissimus tota Graecia fuit *Demosthenes was the most eloquent man in all Greece*;

With **īocō**, **īocīs** when qualified by Adjectives:
 hoc loco, multis locis *in this place, in many places.*

688. The *way by which* is put in the **Ablative**:
 terra marique *by sea and by land*
 Appia via profectus est *he set out by the Appian way.*

689. The **Preposition Īn** is generally joined with the **Ablative** after *Verbs of Placing*, as:

pōnērē, <i>to place</i>	stātūrērē	} <i>to set</i>	dēmērgērē, <i>to plunge</i>
collōcārē, <i>to put</i>	constituērē		imprimērē, <i>to stamp</i>
considērē, <i>to settle</i>	dēfigērē, <i>to plant</i>		inscribērē, <i>to write upon</i>
Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit			<i>Plato has put reason in the head</i>
Lucretia cultrum in corde defigit			<i>Lucretia plants a knife in her heart.</i>

690. Again, after *Verbs of Assembling* and kindred significations the **Preposition Īn** is followed by the **Accusative**. Such are:
 advēnērē, *to arrive* congrēgārī, *to assemble* cōgērē, *to assemble*
 convēnīre, *to meet* nuntiārē, *to bring word*
 conjurāti in curiam convenērunt *the conspirators met in the senate house.*

Special Uses of Substantives.

691. In place of the **Abstract** expressions: in pueritiā, in adulescentiā, in senectūte, in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the Latin employs the **Concretes** pūēr, ādūlescens, sēnex; ab infante, a parvūlo, *from childhood*.

692. When official titles are used to indicate time, the **concrete** nouns consūl, praetōr, &c., are used instead of consūlātūs, praetūrā, &c. as: L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō consulibus, *in the consulship of L. Piso and A. Gabinius*.

693. Again, **Abstract** nouns are sometimes used instead of **Concretes**, as: nobilitās for nobiles, *noblemen*
 posteritas “ postēri, *descendants*
 vicinītas “ vicīni, *neighbors*.

694. In Latin, **Abstract** nouns when referring to several objects or denoting repetition at different times admit of *plural use*, as:
 adventūs imperatōrum, *the arrival of the generals*;
 interītūs exercitiūm, *the destruction of the armies*.

695. Some **Abstract** nouns take such a modified sense as to admit of *plural use*, as: fortitudīnes, *gallant actions*; irae, *quarrels*.

696. Symmetrical parts of the human body are usually in the plural, as: cervīces, *the neck*; pectōra, *the breast*; also words denoting phenomena of nature, as: nives, *snow*; grandīnes, *hail*; pluvīae, *rain*.

697. Other **Plural** expressions to be noted are:

ligna, (<i>logs of</i>) wood	carnes, <i>pieces of meat</i>
aera, <i>articles of bronze</i>	vina, <i>kinds of wine</i> .

698. The Singular, in a **Collective** sense, is sometimes used for the plural, as:

pedes, <i>infantry</i>	faba, <i>beans</i>
miles, <i>the soldiery</i>	porcus, <i>pork</i>
eques, <i>cavalry</i>	gallīna, <i>fowl</i>
hostis, <i>the enemy</i>	vestis, <i>clothing</i> .

699. A **Proper** name may be applied to two or more members of the same family, or to persons of the same character, and so becomes strictly **common** as: Horatīi, *the Horatii*; Nerōnes, *Neros* (*tyrants*).

700. The Substantive **nēmō** is often used with other Substantives so as to become equivalent to the Adjective **nullūs**, as: nēmō civis, *no citizen*. It wants the **genitive** and **ablative**. The oblique cases of **nīhīl** are supplied by the respective cases of **nulla res**.

Special Uses of Adjectives.

701. Adjectives are often used as **Substantives**. In the **Plural** masculine adjectives denote *persons*, neuter adjectives *things*.

paupères, *the poor*
divītes, *the rich*
omnes, *all men*

humāna, *human affairs*
omnīa, *all things*
vēra, *truth*.

702. The **Neuter Singular** may denote either a *single object* or a *quality*, as:

honestum, *an honorable act*
malum, *an evil*

bonum, *a good*
pulchrum, *beauty*

703. Adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the *Possessive*, or a *noun with a preposition*, as:

domus regīa, *a king's palace*
pugna Cannensis, *the fight at Cannae*
iter campestre, *a journey across country*
aliēna domus, *another man's house*
Miltiādes Atheniensis, *Miltiades of Athens*.

704. The *first part, last part, middle part* of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the Adjectives *primūs, mēdiūs, ultimūs, infimūs, imūs, summūs, rēliquūs*, as: *mediā nox, the middle of the night; summa arbor, the top of the tree; suprēmi montes, the summits of the mountains*.

705. The **Comparative** sometimes has the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, and the **Superlative** of *very*, as: *brevior, rather short; audācior, too bold; amīcūs carissimūs, a very dear friend; Cato, homo doctissimūs, Cato, a very learned man*.

706. The force of the **Comparative** is increased by *multō*, *much, far*; *ālīquantō*, *some more, considerably*; *ētīām*, *even, still*, as: *multo melior, much better; etīam doctior, still more learned*.

707. The **Superlative** is strengthened by *longē*, *by far*; *multō*, *much*; *vēl*, *even*; *unus omnīum*, *one above all others*; *quām, quantūs potūit*, *as...as possible*; as: *multo maxīma pars, by far the largest part; quam maxīmae copīae, forces as large as possible; sophistes vel maxīmus, the very greatest sophist*.

708. When two qualities of the *same* object are compared, both adjectives (or adverbs) are in the **Comparative**, as: *est doctior quam sapientior, he is more learned than wise*. Where *māgis quām* is used, both Adjectives are in the **Positive**: *amīcus tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens, your friend is eloquent rather than wise*.

709. The **Comparative** is to be used in reference to *only two* objects; the **Superlative** when comparing *more than two* objects, as: *uter fratrum natu major est? Which of the two brothers is the older? Quaeritur ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus; the question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more, which is the worthiest.*

Special Uses of Pronouns.

710. **Personal** and **Possessive** Pronouns of the *First* and *Second* Persons are not expressed in Latin except for distinction or emphasis, as: *amamus parentes, we love our parents.*

711. As a rule, the **Reflexive Pronoun** *sui, sibi, se* and its Possessive *suis*, are used when reference is made to the **Subject** of the sentence; as: *Caesar se ad suos recepit, Caesar betook himself to his men.*

The **Possessive** *suis* may also be used with reference to any noun in the same sentence on which *emphasis* is thrown, as:

Socratem cives sui interfecerunt	<i>Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens</i>
puer columbam cepit in nido suo	<i>the boy caught the dove in its nest.</i>

On the other hand, the **Determinatives** *ejus, eorum, earum* are used as **Possessives** of the third person, when *no* emphasis appears, or when reference is made to a noun in another sentence, as:

Deum agnoscis ex operibus ejus	<i>you recognize God by his works</i>
multi cives interfecti, eorum-	<i>many citizens were slain, and</i>
que bona publicata sunt	<i>their property confiscated.</i>

To express reciprocal action **inter se** is regularly used, as: *amant inter se, they love one another.*

712. *hic, this*, refers to that which is nearer the speaker (**Demonstrative** of the **First Person**); *iste, that (of yours)* to the person addressed (**Demonstrative** of the **Second Person**); *ille, that*, to that which is remote (**Demonstrative** of the **Third Person**).

hic very frequently means *that which is about to be mentioned*, as: *his condicionibus, on the following terms;*

iste especially refers to *one's opponent* (in court, etc.) and frequently implies contempt, as: *Mars alter, ut isti volunt, a second Mars, as those fellows say;*

ille is often used of *that which is well known, notorious*, as: *praeclarum illud Solonis, that famous saying of Solon.* It is also used in the sense of *the following.*

713. Often **hīc** and **illē** are to be rendered *the latter* and *the former* (**hīc**, the one last mentioned, the *nearer*; **illē**, the one mentioned earlier, the *remoter*), thus:

melius de quibusdam acerbi inimici merentur quam ii amici, qui suaves videntur; illi saepe verum dicunt, hi nunquam.	<i>bitter enemies deserve better of some people than those friends who seem obliging; the former often tell the truth, the latter never.</i>
--	--

But the order is often reversed so that **hīc** refers to the object first mentioned (usually the more important), and **illē** to the one mentioned last.

melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria; haec in tua, illa in deorum manu est	<i>better is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in your hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.</i>
--	--

714. **is**, *that*, is either the regular **Antecedent** of the **Relative** or refers to an **Object just mentioned**.

is sapiens est, qui se ad casus accomodet omnes	<i>he is a wise man who accommodates himself to all circumstances</i>
---	---

mihi obviam venit tuus puer; is mihi litteras abs te reddidit	<i>I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.</i>
---	---

715. When a quality is ascribed with emphasis to an object already named, **is** with a copulative or adversative particle is used, thus:

et is, atque is, isque, *and he too, and that too*
 neque is, et is non, *and he not, and that not*

unam rem explicabo, eamque maximam	<i>one point I shall explain, and that, too, a very important one.</i>
------------------------------------	--

716. No demonstrative pronoun is employed in Latin in phrases where *that* or *those* in English is used in place of a noun which would have to be repeated:

Terentii fabulis plus delector quam Plauti	<i>I find more delight in the plays of Terence than in those of Plautus.</i>
--	--

717. **idem** is often equivalent to an adverb or an adverbial phrase (*also, likewise, yet, at the same time*), as: Quidquid honestum est, idem est utile. *Whatever is honorable is at the same time useful.*

718. *ipsē*, *self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis, often expressed in English by *just*, *mere*, *very*, as: *triginta erant dies ipsi*, *it was just 30 days*.

When added to any reflexive pronoun, *ipsē* agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the sentence, according as either is emphatic; as:

piger ipse sibi obstat, *the lazy man stands in his own way*;
nosce te ipsum! *know thyself!*

719. For the agreement of **Relatives** see **551**, foll.

The **Antecedent**, and the Adjective or Apposition of the antecedent are often incorporated into the Relative clause, as: *in quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur*; *the first place they landed at was called Troy*.

720. The **Interrogative** *quīs?* is used substantively and adjectively; *qui?* mostly adjectively. Thus we say: *quis rex?* *which king?* inquiring for the *individual*; but *qui homo?* *what man?* inquiring for the *character*.

721. The **Indefinite Pronouns** are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without indicating *what one*.

722. *āliquis* means *some one or other*, as: *fecit hoc aliquis tui similis*, *some one or other like you did this*; *aliquid consuetudīni dandum est*, *something must be allowed to custom*.

723. *quīs* (fainter than *aliquis*) is used chiefly after **Relatives** and the following **Conjunctions**:

sī, *if*; *nīsī*, *if not*; *nē*, *lest*; *nūm*, *whether*; *cūm*, *when*.

āliquis after *sī* and the rest is *emphatic*.

ne quid nimis! *nothing in excess!*

ne qua significatio fiat, *that no sign may be made*.

724. *quisquā*m (subst.) and *ullū*s (adj.) mean *any one at all*, and are chiefly used in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences, also after *sīnē*, without; *vix*, *scarcely*, *quā*m, *than*.

neque ex castris Catilinae quisquam omnium discesserat *nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline*

legati sine ulla spe pacis domum redierunt *the ambassadors returned home without any hope of peace*

legati non sine aliqua spe pacis domum redierunt *the ambassadors returned home, not without some hope of peace*.

725. *quīdām*, means *one, a, a certain one*; in the plural it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, as: *quidam rhetor antiquus, a certain ancient rhetorician*; *certi quidam homīnes, some reliable persons*.

726. *ūnusquisquē* means *every single one*; *quīvīs & quīlibēt*, *any one you like*; *quisquē*, *each one*; *omnēs*, *all together*.

727. The **Distributive quisquē** is used:

After the reflexive pronoun, *sūi, sībī, sē*, and its possessive *sūus*, as: *sua cuique voluptas, each man has his hobby*;

With *Superlatives* and *Ordinals*, as: *optimum quidque rarissimum est, the best is the rarest, or every good thing is rare, or the better a thing, the rarer it is*; *quinto quoque anno, every fifth year*.

728. *āliūs* is simply *another*; *altēr*, is *the other of two, or the second*; *cētēri*, *all the rest or others*.

729. The expressions *āliūs . . āliūs, altēr . . altēr* may be used in a *reciprocal* sense: *puēri alter alterum amant, the boys love each other*. *āliūs* repeated in different propositions is translated *one — another*; *aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, one thing is done, another pretended*. *āliī . . āliī*, is *some . . others*; *altēri . . altēri*, *one party . . another party*. *āliūs* with another case of the same word may be translated by two separate propositions commencing with *one—another* respectively; as: *aliud aliī natūra iter ostendit, nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

[245. 246.]

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

Use of Tenses.

730. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action.

the **Present**, as: *scribō, I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: *scribēbām, I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: *scribām, I shall write*.

Of Completed Action:

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: *scripsī, I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: *scripsērām, I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: *scripsērō, I shall have written*.

731. The **Present** is used of what is going on now, at the present time, and of what is true at all times, as:

loquēris adhuc, cum omnes ta-	<i>you are still speaking while all</i>
cent	<i>are silent</i>
fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>fortune helps the brave.</i>

732. The **Present** is often substituted for the *Historical Perfect* in lively narration, as:

triginta rectōres reipublicae	<i>30 rulers of the Athenian com-</i>
Atheniensis constituuntur, qui	<i>monwealth are appointed, who</i>
fiunt tyranni	<i>become tyrants.</i>

733. The **Present** is used in Latin to express a past action or state which is continued so as to be present also, especially with *jām*, *now*; *jām dīū*, *now for a long time*; *jām pridēm*, *now long since*, as:

tot annos bella gero	<i>for so many years I have waged</i>
	<i>and am still waging war.</i>

734. The **Present** is regularly used with *dūm*, *while*, though the time referred to is past, as:

haec dum aguntur, Caesāri nun-	<i>while this is going on, word</i>
tiātum est	<i>was brought to Caesar.</i>

735. The **Imperfect** denotes an action continuing in the past, but not then accomplished. It is employed to describe manners, customs and situations.

scribēbam epistūlam, cum amī-	<i>I was writing a letter when my</i>
cus adesset	<i>friend came</i>
ante oppidum planitiēs patēbat	<i>before the town extended a plain</i>
Pausaniās epulabātur more Per-	<i>Pausanias was wont to banquet</i>
sārum	<i>in the Persian style.</i>

736. The **Future** represents an action that is yet to come. In subordinate clauses it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English:

sarabīmur, si volēmus	<i>we shall be healed if we wish.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------

The **Future** sometimes has the force of an *Imperative*:

in sudōre vultus tui comēdes pa-	<i>in the sweat of thy face thou</i>
nem tuum	<i>shalt eat thy bread.</i>

737. The **Perfect** has two distinct uses:

I. As the **Perfect Definite** it denotes an action as now completed, and is rendered by the English Perfect with *have*.

<p>triste est nomen carendi, quia subjicitur haec vis: habuit, non habet</p>	<p><i>sad is the phrase "do without" because this meaning is at- tributed to it: he has had, he has no longer.</i></p>
--	--

II. As the **Historical Perfect** it denotes an action as completed in past time, but leaves it, in other respects, wholly indeterminate.

<p>Caesar armis rem gerere con- stituit, exercitum finibus Ita- liae admovit, Rubiconem trans- iit, Romam et aerarium occu- pavit, Pompejum cedentem persecutus est, eumque in campis Pharsalicis devicit.</p>	<p><i>Caesar resolved to use armed force; he advanced with his army to the frontiers of Italy, passed the Rubicon, took pos- session of Rome and the treasury, pursued Pompey and defeated him in the plain of Pharsalus</i></p>
--	--

The following **Conjunctions**:

<p>postquam } posteaquam } <i>after</i></p>	<p>ubi } ubi primum } <i>as soon as</i></p>	<p>ut } ut primum } <i>as soon as</i></p>	<p>simulac } simulatque } <i>as soon as</i></p>
---	---	---	---

are usually followed by the **Historical Perfect**:

<p>milites postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui vic- tis fecere</p>	<p><i>when the soldiers had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.</i></p>
--	---

738. The **Pluperfect** is used of an action that was completed before another was begun; as:

<p>consul copias, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit</p>	<p><i>the consul led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.</i></p>
--	--

739. The **Future Perfect** denotes an action as completed in the future; it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, as:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

740. In the statement of an action repeated before another, with such particles as: *cūm, ūbī, whenever; sīmūlāc, as soon as; sī, when;* and Relatives, as: *quōtiens, as often as*, the **Perfect** and **Pluperfect Indicative** are used — the Perfect referring to *Present Time*, the Pluperfect to *Past*.

quōtiens cecīdit, surgit, as often as he falls, he rises,
quōtiens cecidērat, surgēbat, as often as he fell, he rose.

In like manner, in letters the **Perfect**, or **Imperfect** may be used for the *present* and the **Pluperfect** for *past* tenses, as in the phrase: *nihil erat quod scribērem, I have nothing to write.*

741. The **Periphrastic Conjugations** are formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle (Active)**, and with the **Gerundive (Passive)**.

The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes either intention or being on the point of doing something, as:

scriptūrus sūm, I purpose to write, or am about to write.

The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** expresses necessity or propriety, as:

pārentēs āmandī sunt, parents must be loved, deserve or ought to be loved.

The **Person by whom** is put in the **Dative**, as:

pārentēs libērīs āmandī sunt, parents ought to be loved by their children.

bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Romānus cum Jugurtha gessit *I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.*

[247. 248.]

Sequence of Tenses.

742. When two sentences are so related to each other, that the one defines and explains the other, or that the one is dependent on the other, they are connected in the way of **Subordination**, as:

crepant aedificīa, priusquam cadant, houses creak before they fall;
crepant aedificīa is the **Principal Clause**,
priusquam cadant is the **Dependent Clause**.

The **Subjunctive** is largely used in **Subordinate Sentences**, and will be treated at length in that connection.

743. In those **Dependent Clauses** which require the **Subjunctive** the choice of the tenses of the *Dependent Clause* is determined by the tense of the *Principal Clause* according to the following

GENERAL RULES.

I. **Tenses**, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes:

Principal, including the *Present*, both *Futures* and the *Perfect Definite*;

Historical, including the *Imperfect*, the *Historical Perfect* and the *Pluperfect*.

II. **Principal Tenses** are followed by the *Present Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

III. **Historical Tenses** are followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

	Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.
Present.	cognosco, <i>I am finding out</i>	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing</i> quid fecēris, <i>what you have done, what you have been doing, what you did</i>
Future.	cognoscam, <i>I shall find out</i>	
Fut. Perf.	cognovēro, <i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>	
Perf. Defin.	cognōvi, <i>I have found out (I know)</i>	
Imperf.	cognoscēbam, <i>I was finding out</i>	quid faciēres, <i>what you were doing</i> quid fecisses, <i>what you had done, had been doing</i> quid faciērent hostes, <i>what the enemy was doing</i> quid fecissent hostes, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>
Pluperf.	cognovēram, <i>I had found out (I knew)</i>	
Hist. Perf.	Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i>	

744. The **Perfect Definite**, though properly a *Principal* tense, is more commonly treated as a *Historical* tense, and admits after it the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*:
oblītus es, quod dixērim, *you have forgotten what I said*;
interrogāvī eum, quid faciēret, *I have asked him what he was doing*;
feci hoc, ut intellegēres, *I have done this that you might see.*

745. In **Sentences of Result**, with *ūt*, *quī*, *quīn*, the verb of the **Dependent Clause** has the same tense as it would have if the clause were a **Principal** one.

Verres Siciliā ita perdidit, ut ea restitūi in antiqum sta- tum non possit	<i>Verres so ruined Sicily, that she can not be restored to her ancient condition.</i>
--	--

746. The **Future Tenses** are wanting in the *Subjunctive*. After a **Future** or **Future Perfect**, their place is supplied by the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**; after the other tenses by the **Active Periphrastic Subjunctive**, **Present** or **Imperfect**; as:

cognoscam, quid faciās, I shall find out what you will be doing;
cognovĕro, quid fecĕris, I shall have found out what you have done;
cognosco, quid factūrus sis, I am finding out what you will do;
cognovĕram, quid factūrus esses, I had found out what you would do.

[249. 250.]

Use of the Indicative.

747. The **Indicative** is the mood of *Direct Assertions* or *Questions*, as:

necessitas non habet legem	<i>necessity recognizes no law</i>
quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?	<i>why will no man confess his</i>
quia etiam nunc in illis est	<i>faults? because he continues</i>
	<i>to indulge in them.</i>

The **Indicative** is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Subjunctive*, chiefly in expressions denoting the *propriety, advantage* or *necessity* of an action not performed, such as:

longum est, it would be tedious	possum	} <i>I might, I could</i>
utilius fuit, it would have been better	poteram	
pār est, it would be fair	debĕo	} <i>I ought or I should</i>
	debĕbam	

perturbationes animorum poteram appellare morbos, sed non con- veniret ad omnia	<i>I might call the disturbances of the mind "diseases", but that would not suit all the cases.</i>
---	---

The **Indicative** of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used, as: *haec condicio non accipienda fuit; these terms ought not to have been accepted.*

748. The **Indicative** is used after **General Relatives**, such as:

quisquīs, *no matter who*; quotquōt, *no matter how many*, and all forms in *-cunquē*, *-ever*, also after *sivē..sivē*, *whether..or*, where in English the **Potential** may be used, as:

quidquid id est, timēo Danāos *whatever it may be, I fear the*
 et dona ferentes *Danai, even when they bring*
presents.

Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

749. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances.

750. The **Present and Perfect Subjunctive** are used to denote an action as *possible* (**Potential Subjunctive**); also the *second person* of the **Imperfect Subjunctive** in the same manner, but only in the expressions:

credēres, putāres, *you would, might have thought*
 vidēres, cernēres, *you would, might have seen.*

hic quaerat quispiā *here some one may ask*
 dixērit quis *some one may say.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nōn**.

751. The **Subjunctive** is used to denote a *wish*—the **Present and Perfect** a wish conceived as possible; the **Imperfect and Pluperfect** an unaccomplished one (**Optative Subjunctive**). When so used, the **Present and Perfect** are commonly, and the **Imperfect and Pluperfect** regularly preceded by **utīnām**, *O that, I wish that, would that.*

stet haec urbs *may this city continue to stand*
 falsus utīnam vates sim *I wish I may be a false prophet*
 utīnam me mortuum vidisses *would you had seen me dead.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

752. The **Subjunctive** is used to express an *exhortation* or a *command* (**Hortatory or Imperative Subjunctive**).

Pres. First Pers. amēmus patriā, *let us love our country*
 “ **Second Pers.** corpōris robōre utāre, *use your bodily strength*
 “ **Third Pers.** amet, *let him love*

Perf. Second Pers. } ne transiēris Iherum, *do not cross the Ebro*
 (negative only) } hoc ne fecēris, *thou shalt not do that.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

753. The **Subjunctive** is used in the Present and Perfect to express a *concession* (**Concessive Subjunctive**), as:

vendat aedes vir bonus, suppose an honest man is selling a house; sit fur, granted that he be a thief.

The regular negative here is **nē**.

754. The **Subjunctive** is used in *doubtful questions* (**Dubitative Subjunctive**), as:

quid hoc homīne faciās? what are you to do with this man? quid agērem? what was I to do?

The regular negative here is **nōn**.

[251. 252.]

Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive.

755. Dependent **Subjunctive** Clauses may be classified as follows:

Conjunctive Clauses	introduced by	<i>Conjunctions,</i>
Relative Clauses	“ “	<i>Relatives,</i>
Indirect Questions	“ “	<i>Interrogative Words.</i>

Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.

756. *ūt, that,* governs the **Subjunctive**:

I. When it means *that, in order that* (often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to, in order to*) to express **Purpose**; its Negative is **nē, that not, lest**.

<i>esse oportet, ut vivas, non vi- vère, ut edas cura, ne quid ei desit</i>	<i>you must eat to live, not live to eat take care that nothing be want- ing to him.</i>
---	--

II. When it means *so that* (often rendered by *to, so as to*) to express a **Result**. Its Negative is **ūt nōn, so that not**.

<i>tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiā diligāmus</i>	<i>so great is the power of upright- ness that we love it even in an enemy</i>
---	--

<i>ita vixi, ut non frustra me na- tum esse existimem</i>	<i>I have so lived that I do not think I was born in vain.</i>
---	--

III. When it means *granted that* to express a **Concession**; its Negative is **nē**.

ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas	<i>granted that strength be wanting, yet the good will is to be praised</i>
ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est	<i>granted that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.</i>

757. **nēvē**, and *not, nor*, is used as *Continuative* after **nē**, as: **Thrasylbulus legem tulit, ne quis ante actarum rerum accusaretur neve multaretur** *Thrasylbulus proposed a law that no one should be accused of or punished for past offences.*

758. The most general way of expressing **Purpose** is by **ūt** (negatively **nē**) as: *esse oportet, ut vivas, non vivere, ut edas; you must eat to live, not live to eat* This is the regular construction with verbs of *Willing* and *Wishing*, of *Warning* and *Beseeking*, of *Urging* and *Demanding*, of *Resolving* and *Endeavoring*, of *Forcing* and *Permitting*; such as:

consūlo, curo, prospiciō, providēo, vidēo;
 contendo, labōro, nitor, opēram do, id ago, id specto, nihil anti-
 quū habēo, quam;
 opto, postūlo, flagīto, oro, rogo, peto, precor, obsēcro;
 mando, edīco, impēro, praecipīo;
 impello, incīto, movēo, addūco;
 hortor, monēo, suadēo, persuadēo;
 concēdo, permitto;
 faciō, perficiō, adipiscor, assēquor, consēquor, impētro.

voŀo, ut mihi respondēas,	<i>I wish you to answer me</i>
oro et hortor te, ut in munere diligentissimus sis	<i>I entreat and admonish you to be very careful in your office</i>
ne nocēas, dum vis prodesse vidēto	<i>see to it that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.</i>

759. A clause of **Result** introduced by **ūt**, so that (negatively **ūt nōn**) is used:

After such words as *tām, tālis, tantus, itā, sic, adēo*;

After verbs denoting *it happens, it remains, it follows*, and the like; (*accidit, contingit, evenit, sequitur, restat, &c.*)

After *quām* with a *Comparative*:

Atticus ta vixit, ut Atheniensibus carissimus esset	<i>Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians</i>
accidit, ut plena esset luna	<i>it chanced to be full moon</i>
urbs munitior erat, quam ut primo impetu capi posset	<i>the town was too strong to be taken in the first attack.</i>

760. The phrase tantum abest, ut. . . ut; *it is so far* (from being the case) deserves special notice:

tantum abest ab eo, ut malum sit mors, ut verer, ne homini sit nihil bonum aliud	<i>so far is death from being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.</i>
--	--

761. After metuo, timeo, verer, I fear, metus est, periculum est, *there is fear, danger,* ne must be rendered by *that or lest,* and ut by *that not.* as:

Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indicaretur	<i>Milo feared that he would be betrayed by his servants</i>
timeo, ut sustineas labores	<i>I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.</i>

762. The prefix *ali-* in aliquis and similar Compounds is rejected after *Relatives* and the following *Conjunctions*:

sī, *if;* nisi, *if not;* ne, *lest;* num, *whether;* cum, *when.*

Hence we say in *Final Clauses*:

ne quis, <i>that no one</i>	ne quando, <i>that never</i>
ne quid, <i>that nothing</i>	ne quisquam, <i>that no one at all</i>
ne cubic, <i>that nowhere</i>	ne quidquam, <i>that nothing at all.</i>

[253. 254.]

763. The Ablative quo (= ut eo, *that thereby*), in order that, so that, with the *Subjunctive* is used as a *Conjunction* in clauses of *Purpose*, especially with *Comparatives*, as:

ager aratur, quo meliores fructus edere possit	<i>the field is plowed that it may yield better fruit.</i>
--	--

764. quominus (= ut eo minus, *that thereby the less*), *that not,* with the *Subjunctive* is used with verbs of *Hindering*, such as:

impedire, <i>to hinder</i>	obstare, <i>to be in the way</i>
deterere, <i>to frighten off</i>	obistere, <i>to oppose</i>
prohibere, <i>to keep from</i>	recusare, <i>to refuse</i>

mors non deterret sapientem,	<i>death does not deter a wise man</i>
quomīnus in omne tempus rei	<i>from consulting the interest</i>
publicae consūlat	<i>of the state the whole time.</i>
aetas non impēdit, quomīnus	<i>age does not hinder our retain-</i>
agri colendi studia teneāmus	<i>ing interest in agriculture.</i>

Instead of **quōmīnūs**, we may use **nē**, and when the principal clause is *negative*, **quīn**:

Regūlus ne sententiā dicēret	<i>Regulus refused to pronounce</i>
recusāvit	<i>an opinion</i>

765. **quīn** (= **quī**, *how*, and **nē**, *not*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used only after *negative* clauses or such questions as expect a negative answer. It is equivalent

to **quī nōn**, **quōd nōn**, *but*, as:

nemo est, quīn hoc vidēat	<i>there is no one but sees this;</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

to **ūt nōn**, *but, as not*, as:

nemo est tam fortis, quīn rei	<i>no one is so brave as not to be</i>
novitāte perturbētur	<i>confounded by the newness</i>
	<i>of a thing.</i>

766. **quīn** is used in the sense of *that not* or *that* after **Negative Expressions** implying *doubt*, *omission* and the like; such are:

non dubīto, *I do not doubt*

non est dubīum, *there is no doubt*

quis dubītet? *who can doubt?*

non multum abest, *there is not much wanting*

nihil abest, *there is nothing wanting*

nihil praetermitto	} <i>I omit nothing</i>
nihil intermitto	

temperāre mihi non possum, *I cannot restrain myself*

vix me continēo, *I hardly refrain from*

retinēri non possum, *I cannot be restrained*

facēre non possum quīn, *I cannot help*

fīeri non potest quīn, *it cannot happen but that*

quis dubītet, quīn in virtūte di-	<i>who can doubt that wealth con-</i>
vitīae sint?	<i>sists in virtue?</i>

non multum afūit, quīn interficē-	<i>I was not far from being</i>
rer	<i>killed.</i>

Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions.

767. Concessive Conjunctions express a *Concession*, with the general signification *although, granting that*.

These are: *etsī, ētīamsī, tāmetsī, quamquām*, *although quamvis (quantumvis), however much, however licēt, ūt, cūm, though, suppose, whereas*.

768. Of these, *licēt* (*properly a verb*) exclusively, and *quamvis* usually, take the **Present or Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

<i>licet superbus ambūles pecuniā, fortūna non mutat genus</i>	<i>although you may strut about proud of your purse, fortune changes not birth</i>
<i>vitia mentis, quamvis exigūa sint, in majus excēdunt</i>	<i>defects of the mind, no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.</i>

769. *cūm, whereas, since; ūt, granted that; nē, granted that not* (see **756. III.**) take the **Subjunctive**.

<i>Phocion fuit perpetūo pauper, cum divitissimus esse posset</i>	<i>Phocion was constantly poor, though he could be very rich.</i>
---	---

770. *ētīamsī* takes the **Indicative** to denote *real concessions*, and the **Subjunctive** to denote such as are *merely conceived* in the mind, as:

<i>ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est</i>	<i>that truth, although it is not agreeable, is nevertheless acceptable to me</i>
<i>vita brevis est, etiamsi supra centum annos duret</i>	<i>life is short, although it should last over 100 years.</i>

771. *etsī, tāmetsī* and *quamquām* regularly take the **Indicative** (unless otherwise required by the connection, as:

<i>viri boni recte agunt, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident</i>	<i>good men do right, though they see no profit about to result</i>
<i>quamquam omnis virtus nos ad se allīcit, tamen justitiā et liberalitas id maxime efficit</i>	<i>though all excellence attracts us to itself, yet justice and liberality do this most.</i>

772. The Conjunctions of Comparison

tamquām, quāsi (vēlūt sī, ūt sī, prōindē āc sī), as if,

take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Tenses** follow the general rule of *Sequence* (743); accordingly the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Imperfect*, as:

superbi saepe ita se gerunt, *haughty people often behave as*
 quasi ipsi soli **sint** homines *if they alone were men.*

The **Particles of Comparison**: *ūt, sicut, quemadmodum, as*, usually referring to *itā, sic, so*, take the **Indicative**:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

[255. 256.]

Temporal Conjunctions.

773. As a rule, **Temporal Clauses** take the **Indicative**; they are introduced by the following Conjunctions:

postquam, <i>after that, after</i>	cūm, <i>when</i>
ūt, <i>as</i>	dūm } <i>while, until</i>
ūbī, <i>when</i>	dōnēc }
sīmūlāc } <i>as soon as</i>	quōād, <i>up to</i>
sīmūlatquē }	quamdīū, <i>as long as</i>
ūt primūm } <i>the first moment</i>	antēquam } <i>before that, before</i>
cūm primūm } <i>that (see 737)</i>	prīusquam }

774. **Temporal cūm**, meaning *when, at the time when*, takes the **Indicative** of all the tenses, as:

ager cum multos annos quievit, *when a field has rested many*
 uberiōres efferre fructus solet *years, it usually produces a*
more abundant crop

oracula Graeci consulēbant, cum *the Greeks consulted the oracles*
 bella erant initūri *when they were to begin war.*

775. **Historical cūm**, meaning *when, as*, takes the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

Agesilaus cum ex Aegypto re- *Agesilaus died as he was re-*
 verteretur, mortuus est *turning from Egypt*

cum Caesar Ancōnam occupas- *when Caesar had occupied An-*
 set, urbem reliquimus *cona, we left the city.*

776. **dūm, quōād** and **dōnēc** (= quamdīū), *so long as, while*, take the **Indicative** of all the tenses; in narrative **dūm**, *while*, takes the **Present Indicative**. (734)

dum spiro, spero *while there is life, there is hope*
 quoad potuit, restitit *as long as he could, he withstood*
 haec dum aguntur, domi res *while this was going on, affairs*
 quīetae erant *were quiet at home.*

777. *dŭm, quōād, dōnēc*, *until*, take the **Present, Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative** when a *fact* is to be expressed, as:

haud desīnam, donec perfecēro *I will not cease, until I shall have accomplished.*

778. *dŭm, quōād*, *until*, implying *purpose, doubt or futurity*, take the **Subjunctive**:

Alexander paulisper exercitum consistere jussit, donec consideret pulvis *Alexander ordered the army to halt a short time, until the dust should be down.*

779. *antēquām* and *priusquām*, *before*, have in narration the same construction as historical *cŭm* or *postquām*, viz. either the **Subjunctive** of the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, or the **Perfect Indicative**, as:

Achaei non ante ausi sunt bellum capessere quam ab Roma revertissent legati *the Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before the ambassadors had returned from Rome*

antēquam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit *before war consumed the wealth of our city it was very powerful.*

780. In reference to **Future Time**, these conjunctions take the **Present and Future Perfect Indicative**, also the **Present Subjunctive**, as:

tempestas minatur, antēquam surgat *the storm threatens before it rises*

ante revertar quam luna bis impleverit orbem *I will return before the moon has twice filled her orb.*

[257. 258.]

Causal Conjunctions.

781. The following **Causal Conjunctions** take the *Indicative*:

quā } because
quōd }

quōniam } since, inas-
quandōquidē } much as
siquidē }

quōniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite *since it is now night, go to your houses*

quia natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae aeternae sunt *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

782. The **Subjunctive** is used in causal clauses when a statement is made *not as a fact*, but as the *assertion* or *opinion* of some one else, as:

Socrātes accusātus est, quod Socrates was brought to trial
 corrumpēret juventūtem because (as they said) he corrupted youth.

783. After those verbs which express the feeling of *joy*, *grief*, etc., as: *gaudēre*, to rejoice; *grātiām āgērē*, to thank; *dōlērē*, to grieve; *glōriārī*, to boast, **quōd** is used to give the ground of emotion, as:

quod scribis, gaudēo I am glad that you write
 tibi gratias ago, quod me omni I thank you that you free me
 molestia liberās from all trouble.

784. **quōd**, *that*, is also used to introduce explanatory clauses, chiefly after a **Demonstrative**:

bene facis, quod me adjuvas you do well in assisting me
 quod Regūlus rediit mihi mirabile videtur that Regulus returned seems wonderful to me.

785. At the beginning of a sentence, **quōd** is used in the sense of *as to*, especially in letters, as:

quod de domo scribis . . , as to what you write of the house . .

nōn quōd, **nōn quō**, *not as if*, and **nōn quīn**, *not as if not*, take the **Subjunctive**, as:

pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod boxers groan not as if they
 dolēant, sed quod omne corpus intenditur were in pain, but because all the body is put to the stretch.

786. **Causal cūm**, *as, since*, takes the **Subjunctive**.

cum vita sine amicis insidiarum since life without friends is full
 et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa of treachery and fear, reason
 monet amicitias comparare itself advises us to contract friendships. [259. 260.]

Conditional Conjunctions.

787. In a **Conditional Sentence** the clause containing the condition is called the **Protāsis**, and that containing the conclusion the **Apodōsis**.

Protasis. si bovem non possis, if you cannot drive an ox,
Apodosis. asinum agas drive a donkey,

The **Protasis** is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds, viz:

nīsī, <i>unless</i>	sīn, <i>if not, but if</i>
sī nōn, <i>if not</i>	quodsī, <i>but if</i> .

788. There are **Three Classes** of Conditional Sentences:

I. The condition is represented as a *fact*: **sī** with the **Indicative** in both clauses:

si Deus est, aeternus est *if there is a God, he is eternal.*

II. The condition is represented as *possible* or *likely* to be realized: **sī** with **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**:

si quis ita agat, imprūdens sit *if anybody were to act thus, he would not be wise.*

III. The condition is represented as *contrary to fact*: **sī** with **Imperfect** or **Pluperfect Subjunctive**:

facērem, si possem *I should do it if I could.*

789. **nīsī** and **sī nōn** are used for negative conditions; with **nīsī** the negative belongs to the whole sentence, with **sī nōn** to a particular word, as:

nisi id confestim facis, te tradam magistratūi *unless you do this at once I shall deliver you to the magistrate*

dolōrem si non potēro frangēre, occultābo *if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.*

790. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Conditional Wishes** with:

dummōdō	} <i>if only, provided</i>	dummōdō nē	} <i>provided only not</i>
dūm		dūm nē	
mōdō		mōdō nē	

odērint, dum metūant *let them hate if they only fear*
 Athenienses summas laudes merentur, dummodo ne tam leves fuissent *the Athenians deserve the highest praise if only they had not been so wanton.*

sī mōdō, *if only, provided that*, requires the **Indicative**.

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

791. As a rule, the **Relative Clause** is in the *Indicative* when a *definite fact* is stated:

planta, quae saepius transfer-	a tree often transplanted does
tur, non coalescit	not thrive.

792. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Relative Clauses**:

I. to denote **purpose or motive**; **quī = ūt ěgō, ūt tū, ūt ĩs**, etc.
 missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, *picked men were sent with*
 qui Thermopylas occuparent *Leonidas to take possession*
of Thermopylae.

II. to denote the **cause**, *on account of which* or the **hindrance in spite of which**; **quī = cūm ěgō, cūm tū, cūm ĩs**, etc. (often with *ūt, ūtpōtě, as; quīppě, namely*).

o virum simplicem, qui nos nihil	O guileless man who hidest
celet!	nothing from us!

III. to denote **result** or to indicate a **characteristic** of the antecedent, sometimes in a restrictive sense, as:

non is sum, qui hoc faciām	I am not such a one as to do this
oratiōnes Catōnis, quas quidem	Cato's speeches as far as I have
legĕrim	read them.

793. The construction of the **Consecutive** or **Characteristic Relative** is especially common:

a. after **ĭs, tālis, ějasmōdī, tantūs, tām** with an Adjective or Adverb, **sōlūs** and **ūnūs**:

est innocentia affectio talis animi, quae nocēat nemini, *innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.*

b. after general expressions of *existence and non-existence*, as:

est qui	} there is, there are	habeo quod, I have to
sunt qui		some who
nemo est qui,	there is none to	found who
nihil est quod,	there is nothing	

sunt qui censēant una animum cum corpore interire, *there are some who believe that the soul perishes together with the body.*

c. after **dignūs, indignūs, ĭdōněūs, aptūs**:

indignus es, cui fides habeatur, *you are unworthy of being believed.*

794. A clause joined to another by a Relative, takes the **Subjunctive**, when it contains *not the sentiment of the writer*, but of *some other person* alluded to, as:

Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit
Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left.

795. Comparatives may be followed by **quām ūt, quām quī** with the **Subjunctive**, corresponding to the English *too...to*, as:

damna majōra sunt quam quae aestimāri possint
the losses are too great to be estimated.

[263. 264.]

Direct Questions.

796. Questions in Latin are introduced by **Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs or Particles**.

Interrogative Pronouns.

quīs? quīd? *who? what?* quisnām? quidnām? *who, what pray?*

quī? quae? quōd? *which?*

ūtēr? ūtrā? ūtrūm? *which of the two?*

quālis? quālē? *of what kind?*

quantūs? quantā? quantūm? *how great?*

quōtūs? quōtā? quōtūm? *what? (in number or order)*

quōtusquisquē? quōtāquaequē? quōtumquodquē? *how few?*

quōt? *how many?*

Interrogative Adverbs.

ūbī? *where?*

undē? *whence?*

quō? *whither?*

quā? *where? which way?*

quandō? *when?*

quōtīens? *how often?*

quōmōdō?

quēmadmōdūm? } *how?*

cūr?

quārē?

quām ob rēm? } *why? what for?*

ūbīnām? *where pray?*

undēnām? *whence pray?*

quōnām? *whither pray?*

quānām? *which way pray?*

quamdīū? } *how long?*

quōusquē? } *how long?*

quām? (only before **Adjectives** and

Adverbs) *how? how much?*

quantōpērē? (only before **Verbs**)

how greatly? how much?

quidnī? cūr nōn? *why not?*

797. The **Interrogative Particles** are:

nē, nūm, nonnē, ūtrūm, ān.

Of these **nē** asks merely for information; it cannot stand by itself, but is joined to any emphatic word, usually the verb, which then comes first in the sentence; it is not translated, as:

omnisne pecunia debita soluta est? *is all the money owing paid?*

When a **negative answer** is expected, **nūm** is used, which stands at the beginning of the sentence and is likewise not translated, as:

num vespertilio avis est? *Is the bat a bird?*

With **nōn**, **nē** forms a special interrogative particle **nonnē**, *not*; the answer expected is *yes*, as:

nonne lectio hujus libri te de- *does not the perusal of this*
lectat? *book delight you?*

798. Double or Alternative questions have the following forms:

ūtrūm, <i>whether</i> ..	ān, <i>or</i> ..
— nē, “ ..	ān “ ..
....., “ ..	ān “ ..

utrum domi fuisti an in schola?	} <i>have you been at home or in school?</i>
domine fuisti an in schola?	
domi fuisti an in schola?	

Sometimes the first part of an alternative question is omitted or implied, and **ān** alone asks a question, as:

an nescis regibus longas esse *or perhaps do you not know*
manus? *that kings have long arms?*

In *Direct* questions *or not* is **annōn**; in *Indirect* **necnē**.

utrum domi fuisti **annon**? *have you been at home or not?*

QUESTION AND ANSWER.

799. In answering a question the emphatic word is generally repeated, as:

vidistine eum? *did you see him?* vidi, *yes, I did.*

solusne venisti? *did you come alone?* non solus, *no, I did not.*

The following **Responsives** are also used in answer to a direct question:

yes	no
itā, <i>so</i>	nōn itā, <i>no, not so</i>
itā est, <i>so it is</i>	mīnīmē, <i>by no means</i>
itā vērō est, <i>so it is indeed</i>	mīnīmē vērō, <i>by no means in-</i>
sānē, <i>of course</i>	<i>deed</i>
sānē quidē, <i>yes, indeed</i>	nīhīl mīnūs, <i>nothing less so</i>
ētīām, <i>even so</i>	neutiquām, <i>not at all.</i>
vērō, <i>truly, in truth</i>	

800. *immō*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of a previous statement, as:

causa igitur non bona est? Im-	<i>the cause, then, is a bad one?</i>
mo optima	<i>Nay, it is an excellent one</i>
num ille tibi familiaris est? Im-	<i>is he a friend of yours? On the</i>
mo alienissimus	<i>contrary, a perfect stranger.</i>

[265. 266.]

Indirect Questions.

801. The **Subjunctive** is used in such questions as are dependent upon some word in the former part of the sentence (**Indirect Questions**).

The words: *ubi fuisti? where have you been?*

are a **Direct Question**, with the verb in the **Indicative**; in the sentence:

dic mihi ubi fueris, tell me where you have been,

the same words are an **Indirect Question**, and the dependent verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

qualis sit animus ipse animus	<i>the mind itself knows not what</i>
nescit	<i>the mind is</i>

quis ego sim me rogitas?	<i>do you ask me who I am?</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------------

802. **Indirect Questions** have the same particles as the direct, **nūm** and **nē**, corresponding to *whether* in English; **sī**, *if*, is used for *whether* after *tentārē*, *expēriri*, *to try*, and *exspectārē*, *to expect*.

Epaminondas quaesivit salvusne	<i>Epaminondas asked whether</i>
esset clipeus	<i>his shield was safe</i>

paludem si nostri transirent	<i>the enemy were waiting (to see)</i>
hostes exspectabant	<i>whether our men would cross</i>
	<i>the swamp.</i>

803. INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

quaero utrum verum an falsum sit	} <i>I ask whether it is true or</i>
quaero verumne an falsum sit	
quaero verum an falsum sit	
quaero verum falsumne sit	

false

When the interrogative particle is omitted in the first member, **nē** may stand in the second, but only in **Indirect Questions**.

or not in **Indirect Questions** is **necnē**, as: *dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, the question is whether there are gods or not.*

[267. 268.]

The Imperative.

804. The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice* or *exhortation*.

The **Present Imperative** denotes that an action is to be performed *at once*, or to be continued if actually being performed, as:

si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce	<i>if I have sinned against you,</i>
	<i>forgive me</i>
justitiā cole et pietātem	<i>cultivate justice and piety.</i>

The **Future Imperative** is used where there is a direct reference to *future time*; it corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall* or to the Imperative *let*, and is properly used in general directions, laws, statutes and wills, as:

regio imperio duo sumo, consu-	<i>there shall be two officers with</i>
les appellantor	<i>royal power; they shall be</i>
	<i>called consuls.</i>

805. The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē**, which is, however, in classical Latin only found with the **Future Imperative**, as:

homīnem mortūum, inquit lex,	<i>thou shalt not bury a dead man</i>
in urbe nē sepelito	<i>in the city, says the law.</i>

In prohibitions instead of the **Negative Imperative** the following forms of the **Subjunctive** with **nē** are usually employed:

the second person of the **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

hoc nē fecēris, *leave that undone;*

the third person of the **Present Subjunctive**:

puer telum ne habēat, *a boy is not to have a weapon.*

806. Instead of the **Simple Imperative** several **Imperative Phrases** are common:

cūrā ūt, <i>take care that</i>	} each with the Subjunctive .
fāc ūt, <i>cause that</i>	
fāc, <i>do</i>	

cura ut quam primum venias, *come as soon as possible;*

valetudinē tuam fac ut cures, *take care of your health.*

cāvē nē, <i>beware lest</i>	} each with the Subjunctive .
cāvē, <i>beware</i>	

nōlī, *be unwilling*, with the **Infinitive**.

cave festīnes, *do not be in a hurry;* cave existīmes, *do not think;*

noli me tangere, *do not touch me;* noli putāre, *do not suppose.*

Accusative with the Infinitive.

810. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used like the English Objective with the Infinitive in such sentences as: *hoc verum esse scīmus, we know this to be true.*

In English we might also say: *We know that this is true;* but Latin permits *only* of the Infinitive Construction.

811. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** may be the **Subject** of the sentence. The *Predicate* is either a noun or an adjective with *est*, or an impersonal verb.

The most common phrases under this rule are:

pār est, <i>it is fair</i>	oportēt, <i>there is need, ought</i>
justūm est, <i>it is just</i>	appārēt, <i>it is clear</i>
certūm est, <i>it is certain</i>	constāt, <i>it is agreed, evident</i>
crēdībilē est, <i>it is credible</i>	conducīt, expēdit, <i>it is useful</i>
fās est, <i>it is right</i>	convēnit, <i>it is fitting</i>
nēfās est, <i>it is forbidden</i>	plācēt, <i>it pleases</i>
fāmā est, <i>the story goes</i>	displīcēt, <i>it displeases</i>
ōpīniō est, <i>there is a report</i>	nēcēssē est, <i>it must needs</i>
spēs est, <i>there is hope</i>	ōpūs est, <i>there is need</i>

me scribēre oportet, I must write or I ought to write

certum est libēros amāri, it is certain that children are loved.

812. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*:

Verba sentiendi:

sentīrē, <i>to perceive, notice</i>
ānīmadvertērē, <i>to see</i>
audīrē, <i>to hear</i>
vīdērē, <i>to see</i>
accīpērē, <i>to hear</i>
compērīrē, <i>to ascertain</i>
cognoscērē, <i>to know</i>
intellēgērē, <i>to learn</i>
cōgītārē, <i>to think</i>
arbitrārī, crēdērē, <i>to believe</i>

Verba deolarandi:

dēclārārē, <i>to declare</i>
dīcērē, <i>to say</i>
nēgārē, <i>to deny</i>
affirmārē, <i>to affirm</i>
respondērē, <i>to answer</i>
scribērē, <i>to write</i>
fātērī, <i>to confess</i>
dēmōstrārē, <i>to prove</i>
narrārē, <i>to tell</i>
nuntīārē, <i>to bring word</i>

aves vidēmus construēre nidos, we see that birds build nests;

nemo negābit se esse mortālem, no one will deny that he is mortal.

813. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the **Acc.** with the **Pres. Participle** to represent the object as *actually seen, heard, etc.*, as: *Catōnem vidi in bibliothēca sedentem, I saw Cato sitting in the library.*

814. Verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring* take a dependent **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**. Such are:

vōlō, <i>I wish</i>	cūpīō, <i>I desire</i>	sīnō, <i>I permit</i>
nōlō, <i>I do not wish</i>	jūbēō, <i>I bid</i>	pātīōr, <i>I suffer</i>
mālō, <i>I like better</i>	vētō, <i>I forbid</i>	

discipūlum me habēri volo, non *I wish to be taken for a learner,*
doctōrem *not for a teacher*
Caesar pontem jubet rescindi *Caesar orders the bridge to be*
broken down.

These verbs may take the *simple* Infinitive when the subject remains the same. Instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive, ut with the Subjunctive is frequently used with this class of verbs (**758**); but never with nolo, and seldom with volo and malo; jubēo and veto *regularly* take the Accusative with the Infinitive.

815. Verbs of *Emotion*, as: gaudērē, *to rejoice*, grātiām āgērē, *to thank*, dōlērē, *to grieve* (see **783**) may be considered as verbs of *saying* and *thinking* and, as such, take an **Accusative** with **Infinitive**, as: *salvum te advenisse gaudēo, I rejoice that you have arrived safe.*

816. To translate such clauses as are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and require in Latin the **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**,

take no notice of *that*;

translate the **English Nominative** following *that* by the **Latin Accusative**;

translate the **English Verb** by the **Latin Infinitive**.

817. A **Predicate Noun** or **Adjective** and the **Participles** of the **Compound Infinitives** must agree with the **Accusative-Subject**; but, of course, the **Supine** remains unaltered.

sentīo borēam frigidum esse
medīci causa morbi inventa cu-
ratiōnem esse inventam pu-
tant

I feel that the north-wind is cold
physicians think that when the
cause of disease is discovered,
the cure has been discovered.

Tenses of the Infinitive.

818. After Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*)

the **Present Infinitive** expresses *contemporaneous* action,
the **Perfect Infinitive** expresses *antecedent* action,
the **Future Infinitive** expresses *future* action.

Present Infinitive.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scribĕre | <i>I believe that he is writing</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scribĕre | <i>I believed that he was writing.</i> |

Perfect Infinitive.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scripsisse | <i>I believe that he has written</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scripsisse | <i>I believed that he had written.</i> |

Future Infinitive.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scriptŭrum esse | <i>I believe that he will write</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scriptŭrum esse | <i>I believed that he would write.</i> |

I. After a **Principal Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive** like the **Indicative** of the *same* tense.

II. After a **Historical Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive Present** like the **Indicative Imperfect**

the **Infinitive Perfect** “ **Indicative Pluperfect**

the **Infinitive Future** “ **Subjunctive Imperfect** (*should and would*).

819. The **Future Infinitive** is often expressed by **fōrĕ** or **fŭtŭrŭm**
essĕ ūt — necessarily so when the verb has no **Supine**, as:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| credo fore ut pluat | <i>I believe it will rain</i> |
| credĕbam fore ut pluĕret | <i>I believed it would rain.</i> |

820. The **Personal Pronouns**, which are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis, must be **always** expressed in the **Accusative** with **Infinitive**. For the Pronouns of the third person the Reflexive **sĕ** is used *in reference to the subject* of the **Principal Clause**, and the Demonstratives **ĕŭm**, **ĕām**, **ĕōs**, **ĕās** when referring *to another noun*.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| nemo tam senex est qui se an- | <i>no one is so old but thinks he</i> |
| num non putet posse vivĕre | <i>can live another year</i> |
| Ennius deos esse censet, sed | <i>Ennius believes that there are</i> |
| eos non curāre opinātur, quid | <i>gods, but he does not think</i> |
| agat humānum genus | <i>they care what mankind are</i> |
| | <i>doing.</i> |

Nominative with the Infinitive.

821. With **Passive Verbs** of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*, instead of the Infinitive with the Accusative a personal construction is more common by which the *Subject Accusative* becomes the *Subject Nominative* of the leading verb: **Nominative with the Infinitive.**

Accus. with Inf. tradunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind*

Nomin. with Inf. Homērus caecus fuisse traditur, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

822. Especially to be noted is the construction of the **Nominative** with the **Infinitive** after:

jūbēō, *I order*

sīnō, *I permit*

vētō, *I forbid*

vidēōr, *I seem*

consules jubentur exercitum scribere	<i>the consuls are ordered to levy an army</i>
omnibus videmur recte fecisse, quod amici causam defenderimus	<i>it seems to all that we did right in defending the cause of our friend.</i>

[277. 278.]

Direct Discourse.

823. A *Statement* which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer is called *oratio recta*, or **Direct Discourse.**

inquām, *quoth I*, is used in *direct* quotations, **ājō**, *I say*, in *indirect* quotations. **inquām** always follows one or more of the words quoted. When a nominative is added to **inquit**, it commonly follows this verb: *uva, inquit vulpes, nondum matūra est, the grape is not yet ripe, says the fox*

[279. 280.]

Indirect Discourse.

824. An **Indirect Quotation** expresses a thought indirectly, as *reported*, *recognized* or *contemplated* by some one: *oratio obliqua.*

Oratio recta.

Socrātes dicere solēbat: "omnes in eo quod **sciunt** satis **sunt** eloquentes," *Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."*

Oratio obliqua.

Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod **scirent**, satis **esse** eloquentes; *Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.*

825. In **Indirect Discourse** the *Verb* of the *Principal Clause* is in the **Infinitive** and its *Subject* in the **Accusative**; *Dependent Clauses* connected with it by **Relatives** and **Particles** take the **Subjunctive**.

Interrogative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive** according to **801**.

<p>Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit: quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones venīret?</p>	<p><i>Ariovistus gave a brief answer to Caesar's demands: what did he mean? why did he come into his possessions?</i></p>
--	---

Imperative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive**; the negative is, of course, **nē**.

<p>mandāta remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, exercitus dimittēret</p>	<p><i>they sent back orders of which the substance was as follows: Caesar should return into Gaul and disband his armies.</i></p>
--	---

826. A **Clause** depending upon a *Subjunctive* or *Infinitive* takes the **Subjunctive** if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause. This is called **Attraction of Mood**.

<p>mos est Athēnis laudāri in concione eos, qui sint in proeliis interfecti</p>	<p><i>it is custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.</i></p>
--	--

827. The **Subjunctive** is used in *subordinate clauses* to express the thought of *some other person* than the speaker or writer.

<p>quos vicēris, amīcos tibi esse cave credas</p>	<p><i>do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends.</i></p>
---	---

828. All references to the **Subject** of the leading clause are regularly expressed by the Reflexive **sūi** (**sūūs**); as: *animus sentit se sua vi movēri, the mind feels that it moves by its own force.*

Participles.

829. There are **two Participles** in the *Active Voice*: the **Present Participle** denotes *continuance*, as: scribens, *writing*; the **Future Participle** is used to express *what is likely or about to happen*, as: scriptūrus, *about to write*.

830. There are **two Participles** in the *Passive Voice*:

the **Perfect Participle** denotes *completion*, as: scriptūs, *written*;
the **Gerundive** (so-called **Future Participle**) denotes *necessity or propriety*, as: scribendūs, *to be written*.

831. **Deponent Verbs** have **four Participles**:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*;
the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*;
the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortātūrus, *being about to exhort*;
the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

832. The Participles are used **attributively**, or in the manner of ordinary Adjectives, as:

arbor florens, *a blossoming tree* scripta epistūla, *a written letter*
puer dormiens, *a sleeping boy* urbs obsessa, *a besieged town*.

833. The Participles are used with the utmost freedom **appositively**, and may have the value

of a **Relative**, as: divitiæ semper duratūrae, *riches which will last forever*;

of **while, when, after**, as: Plato scribens mortūus est, *Plato died while writing*;

of **if**, as: mendāci homīni ne verum quidem dicenti credīmus, *we do not believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*;

of **since, because**, as: cantus olorinus recte fabulōsus habētur nunquam auditus, *the swan's song is justly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been heard*;

of **though, although**, as: oculus se non videns aliā cernit, *the eye, though not seeing itself, sees other things*;

of **to, in order to** (expressing a purpose), as: Scipio in Africam trajecit Carthaginem deletūrus, *Scipio crossed over into Africa to destroy Carthage*.

834. The Participle with a negative, as *nōn, nīhīl* is often best rendered

by *without* and a *Participial Noun*, as: *multi homīnes vitupērant libros non intellectos, many men find fault with books without understanding them.*

835. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the *Accusative* with the *Present Participle*, when the object is to be represented as *actually* seen, heard, etc.; also: *fācērē, indūcērē, to represent, introduce* (see **813**), as:

<i>vidi puēros ludentes</i>	<i>I saw the boys playing</i>
<i>Xenōphon facit Socrātem disputantem</i>	<i>Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.</i>

[195. 196. 283-286.]

Ablative Absolute.

836. A Noun or Pronoun with a *Participle* is used in the *Ablative Case* **absolutely** to express some accompanying circumstance or condition of the action.

The *Ablative Absolute* may be translated by the English *Nominative Absolute* which is a close equivalent; but, as a rule, the same change of form is required as in translating *Participles* in general (see **833**). Examples are:

Numa Pompilio regnante. Numa Pompilius reigning. When Numa Pompilius was reigning. In the reign of Numa Pompilius.

Tito imperante. In the reign of the emperor Titus.

Caesāre interfecto. Caesar being, having been murdered. When Caesar had been murdered. After the murder of Caesar.

Another Ablative should not be placed in apposition with the *ablative absolute*. Thus we may say: *puēro mortūo, the boy having died*; but not: *Gaio puēro mortūo, the boy Gaius having died*; this should be expressed by: *cum Gaius puer mortūus esset*. The *ablative absolute* with the *Future Participle* is also avoided by the classic authors.

An *Adjective*, or another *Noun* may take the place of the *Participle*, as:

Xerxe rege. Xerxes being king.

natūra duce. Nature being the leader. Under the guidance of nature.

nolentibus nobis. While we are unwilling. Against our will.

In spite of us.

patre invito. While father is, was unwilling. Against father's will.

837. The want of a Perfect **Active** Participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the Ablative Absolute with a Perfect **Passive** Participle, thus:

Caesar, urbe capta, rediit	} <i>The city being taken, Caesar returned.</i> <i>Having taken the city, Caesar returned.</i>

[197. 198. 287. 288.]

Gerund.

838. As the Infinitive is used as a *Verbal Noun* in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, so the **Gerund**, corresponding to the English participial noun in *ing*, is used in the remaining cases, viz.:

Nom.	scribere est utile	<i>writing is useful</i>
Gen.	ars scribendi	<i>the art of writing</i>
Dat.	scribendo adfui	<i>I was present at the writing</i>
Acc.	scribere disco	<i>I learn to write</i>
	ad scribendum utilis	<i>useful for writing</i>
Abl.	scribendo discimus	<i>we learn by writing.</i>

839. The **Gerund** governs the same case as the verb:

ars scribendi epistulam	<i>the art of writing a letter</i>
cupidus te audiendi	<i>desirous of hearing you</i>
injurias ferendo	<i>by bearing wrongs</i>
ad beate vivendum	<i>for living happily</i>
parendo legibus	<i>by obeying the laws.</i>

Gerundive.

840. The **Gerundive**, in its adjective use, denotes *necessity* or *propriety*.

Its most frequent use is with *esse* in the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** (see **314**). The neuter of the Gerundive with *est*, *erät*, etc., is used impersonally if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendum est*, *we or you must live*.

But the person *by whom* may also be added in the **Dative**, thus:

mihi scribendum est, *I must or should write*
tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*
ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*
nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*
vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*
eis scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

841. The **Gerundive** is used as an **Objective Predicate** to denote *Purpose* after verbs signifying *to give, take, send, leave*, as:

curāre, *to take care*
 dāre, *to give*
 relinquēre, *to leave*
 mittēre, *to send*

accipēre, *to receive*
 permittēre, *to permit*
 locāre, *to let, lease*
 conducēre, *to contract for*

divīti homīni id aurum servan- *he gave that gold to a rich man*
 dum dedit *to keep.*

842. The **Gerundive** of verbs governing the accusative is frequently used instead of the Gerund in the following manner:

The **Accusative** is put in the same Case as the Gerund;

The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive;

The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in *Gender, Number and Case*; thus:

	Gerund.	Gerundive.
Gen.	scribendi epistūlam	scribendae epistūlae
Dat.	scribendo epistūlam	scribendae epistūlae
Acc.	ad scribendum epistūlam	ad scribendam epistūlam
Abl.	scribendo epistūlam	scribenda epistūla.

843. The **Genitive** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives, as:

ars vivendi, *the art of living* equitandi perītus, *skillful in riding*
 consilium urbis delendae, *a* civitātis regendae perītus, *skill-*
plan for destroying the city *ful in governing the state.*

Very common are **causā** and **grātiā**, *on account of, for the sake of, for the purpose of* with the **Genitive** of Gerund and Gerundive to point out *design* or *purpose*, as:

memoriāe exercendae gratiā, *for the sake of exercising the memory.*

844. The **Dative** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with adjectives of fitness and their opposites:

ūtīlis, -ē, *useful, good* aptūs, -ā, -ūm, *adapted, suited*
 inūtīlis, -ē, *useless, unfit* idōnēūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable*

to denote the *object for which*; but the more common construction of these adjectives is that of the Accusative with *ād, to*, thus:

aqua utilis bibendo, *water good for drinking*,
charta inutilis ad scribendum, *paper unfit to write upon*.

845. The **Accusative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is most frequently used after *ād, to*, denoting *purpose*, as:

ad colendos agros, *for cultivating the fields*;
me vocas ad scribendum, *you summon me to write*;
propensus ad discendum, *inclined to learn*.

846. The **Ablative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is used as Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, and most frequently after the preposition *īn, in*, as:

mens discendo alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning*
moderatio in jocando, *restraint in joking*.

[199. 200. 289-292.]

Supine.

847. The **Supines** are verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū*, *to love*.

The **Former Supine** (in *ūm*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose* of the motion; it has an *active meaning*, as:

venio te rogātum *I come to ask you.*

With the passive infinitive *īrī* (lit. *to be gone*) the Supine in *ūm* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**, *āmātūm īrī*, *to be about to be loved* (315).

The **Letter Supine** (in *ū*) has a *passive meaning*; it is used only with a few Adjectives denoting *ease* or *difficulty*, *pleasure* or *displeasure*, *right* or *wrong*; with the nouns *fās, right*, *nēfās, wrong*, sometimes with *ōpūs, need*, as:

quid est tam jucundum auditu? *what is so agreeable in hearing?*

Equivalents of the Supine.

848. The **Former Supine**, as an expression of *purpose*, is not very common, its place being supplied in various ways. Thus the sentence:

The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to sue for peace,
may be rendered:

Supine. Carthaginienses legātos misērunt **pacem petītum.**

Gerundive
with **ād**, { C. legātos misērunt **ad pacem petendam.**
causā { C. legātos misērunt **pacis petendae causa.**

Fut. Part. C. legātos misērunt **pacem petitūros.**

ūt w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **ut pacem petērent.**

quī w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **quī pacem petērent.**

The use of the **Latter Supine** is confined to a few verbs, as: dictū, *to tell*; factū, *to do*; auditū, *to hear*; visū, *to see*. With facilis, difficilis, jucundus, the construction of **ād** with the gerund is more common, as: res est facilis ad cognoscendum (cognitu), *the thing is easy to know.* [293. 294.]

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

849. The following Particles are called **Copulative**

Conjunctions: **ēt**, **-quē**, **atquē** (āc), *and*
nēquē, *and not*
ētīām, **quōquē**, *also*

ēt is simply *and*, the most common and general copulative, and connects independent words and clauses without any additional meaning; **-quē**, affixed to the word it annexes, combines things that belong closely to one another; **atquē** adds a more important to a less important member. The following may serve as an example to illustrate the various usages:

dies et noctes means *days and nights*, simply;

dies noctesque “ *days and nights*, as a whole;

dies atque noctes “ *days and (also) nights*.

furem fur cognoscit, et lupus *thief knows thief, and wolf*
lupum *knows wolf*

dum vires annique sinunt, tole- *work while your strength and*
rāte labōrem *years permit you*

intra moenia atque in sinu urbis *within the walls and even in*
sunt hostes *the heart of the city are the*
enemies.

ac does not stand before a vowel or **h**; **atquē** either before vowels or consonants. They generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness, as: **aequē ac**, *as much as, equally as*; **sēcūs ac, ālītēr atquē**, *otherwise than*.

ētīām (lit. *and farther*) *even, yet, still*, adds a new circumstance, and generally precedes the words to which it belongs; **quōquē**, *so also*, which refers only to a single word and follows that word, implies a sameness in the whole, as:

etīam mendīcus mendīco invīdet *even the beggar envies the beggar*
otīa corpus alunt, animus quo- *rest strengthens the body, the*
que pascitur illis *mind, too, is thus supported.*

850. Several *Subjects* or *Objects*, standing in the same relations,

either take **ēt** throughout: **polysyndeton**, i. e. *joined in various ways*;
or omit it throughout: **asyndeton**, i. e. *unconnected*;
or take **quē** only after the last member, thus:

summa fide et constantīa et justitiā	} <i>with the greatest faith, con-</i> <i>stancy and justice.</i>
summa fide, constantīa, justitiā	
summa fide, constantīa, justitiāque	

ēt is used after **multī** followed by another adjective, where in English *and* is usually omitted; as: **multae et magnae arbōres**, *many large trees*.

851. In the second member of a sentence *and not* is expressed by **nēquē**, as: **dicunt, neque dubitant**, *they say and do not doubt*. Mark the following **Idiomatic Expressions**:

<i>and no one</i>	nēquē quisquām	<i>nor any one</i>
<i>and no</i>	nēquē ullūs	<i>nor any</i>
<i>and nothing</i>	nēquē quidquām	<i>nor any thing</i>
<i>and never</i>	nēquē unquām	<i>nor ever</i>

852. The following are **Disjunctive Conjunctions**:

aut, vėl, -vē, sīvė (seu), or.

aut, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution, as: **vincēris aut vincis**, *you are conquered or conquering*.

vėl (lit. *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **ētīām**, *even*, **pōtīūs**, *rather*, as:

hic popūlus indomītus vel potīus *this untamable or rather savage*
immānis *people.*

-**vě**, which is always affixed to another word, is only a weaker form of **věl**, as: plus minus**vě**, *more or less*.

sivě (**seu**), *if you choose*, indicates merely an alternative of words, as:

discessus sive potius turpissima fuga *the decampment, or rather the most shameful flight.*

[295. 296.]

853. The following are **Adversative Conjunctions**:

autēm, **sēd**, **vērŭm**, **vērō**, **āt**, *but*
atquī, *but for all that*
tāmēn, *nevertheless*
cētērŭm, *for the rest.*

The weakest of them all in adversative power is **autēm** which is only used to connect sentences, and commonly follows the first word.

spiritus promptus, caro autem infirma *the spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.*

sēd has two meanings; after affirmative sentences **it** is equivalent to *but (yet)*; after negative sentences to *but (on the contrary)*.

homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit *man proposeth, but God disposeth*

non opus est verbis, sed fustibus *there is no need of words, but of knocks.*

vērŭm, lit: *it is true*, always takes the first place in the sentence; **vērō**, lit: *in truth*, is generally put in the second place:

verum praeterita omittāmus *but let us lay aside past things*
 illud vero plane ferendum non est *but this, indeed, is not at all to be suffered.*

āt is stronger than **sēd**; and **atquī**, *but for all that*, is even stronger again:

popŭlus me sībīlat, at mihi plaudo *the mob may hiss me, but I congratulate myself*

o rem difficīlem, inquis, et inexplicābilem. Atqui explicanda est *a hard case, you say, and an inexplicable one. And nevertheless it ought to be explained.*

tāmēn, *yet, nevertheless*, is the usual correlative of a concessive conjunction; generally it comes first unless a particular word is to be made emphatic: natŭram expellas furca, tamen usque recurret, *you may drive out nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

854. The Causal Conjunctions are:

nām, ěnim, namquē, ětěnim, for

nām is always put at the beginning, **ěnim** always follows the first word of the sentence; **namquē** and **ětěnim** are commonly put in the first place.

855. The Illative Conjunctions are:

ĭtāquē, ĭgĭtūr, ergō, therefore

ĭdĕō, ĭdcircō, on that account

prōindĕ, accordingly

ĭtāquē is put at the beginning of the sentence and is used of *facts*; **ĭgĭtūr** follows one or more words in its clause, and is used of *opinions*; **ergō, therefore**, denotes necessary consequence and is more emphatic than **ĭgĭtūr**; it is put at the beginning of the sentence or after an emphatic word; **prōindĕ** is only employed in exhortations:

quot homĭnes, tot sententiāc; *many men, many minds; therefore*
falli ĭgitur possūmus *we may be mistaken*

negat haec filiāam me suam esse; *she says that I am not her*
non ergo haec mater mea est *daughter, therefore she is not*
my mother

proinde fac magno anĭmo sis! *accordingly, be of good cheer!*

856. nĕquē is used for **nōn** with the conjunctions: **ěnim, vĕrō, tāmĕn, ĭgĭtūr**, thus:

neque enim, *for not*
neque tamen, *yet not*

neque vero, *but not*
neque ĭgitur, *therefore not.*

[297. 298.]

Corresponsive Conjunctions.

857. Some Conjunctions frequently have a **Correlative** in the preceding clause, to which they correspond.

Copulative.

ĕt..ĕt, *both..and*

cūm..tūm, *both..and especially*

mōdō..mōdō } *now..now*

nunc..nunc }

tūm..tūm, *then..then*

tām..quām, *both..and*

nĕquē..nĕquē } *neither..nor*
nĕc..nĕc }

nĕquē..-quē, *on the one hand*
not..and on the other

ĕt..nĕquē, *on the one hand..*
and on the other hand not

nōn sōlūm..sēd ētīām	}	<i>not only..but also</i>
nōn mōdō..sēd ētīām		
nōn tantūm..sēd ētīām		

Disjunctive.

Comparative.

aut..aut }
vĕl..vĕl } *either..or*

ūt..itā }
quēmadmōdūm..itā } *as..so*

sīvē..sīvē, *whether..or*

[299. 300.]

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY.

858. *Prosody* means *Accent*, and since Latin accent is regulated by quantity, *Prosody*, *in the classic sense*, has reference to the length of syllables, measured by the length of time taken up in pronouncing them. By modern Grammarians, *Prosody* is used in a wider sense to include both *quantity* and *versification*.

Quantity.

859. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long (—) or short, (◡) and each syllable is considered as either long or short, according as it contains either a long or a short vowel — (*Longs and Shorts by Nature*). A long syllable is generally reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

860. All diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: *ā*urum, *cō*go (*cō*-ago), *mā*lo (*magis volo*), *nī*l (*nihil*), *jū*nior (*juvenior*).

Likewise *e* and *i* when corresponding to Greek *ei*:

Aenēas, *Alexandrēa*, *Thalīa*, *Arīon*.

861. A vowel before another vowel is *short*, no account being taken of *h*, as: *pī*us, *dē*us, *trā*ho. Even a vowel naturally long or a diphthong becomes short before another vowel, as: *dē*orsum, *prā*ēpto.

EXCEPTIONS:

e in *ei* of the **Fifth Declension** is *long* when a vowel precedes, as: *diēi*, but *fidēi*.

i in the **Genitive form** *iūs* is long; it is, however, sometimes made short in verse, but never in *alius* (for *aliūs*).

In **fiō**, *i* is long, except when followed by *er*, as: *fiō*, *fiēbam*; but *fiērī*.

In the **Vocative** of proper names in *-ājūs*, *-ējūs*, *a* and *e* are *long*: *Gāi*, *Pompēi*.

In words from the Greek, vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original, as: *āer*, *musēum*, *ēos*, *Agēsilāus*, *Amphīon*.

862. A syllable with a short vowel is considered as *long* when the short vowel is followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant either in the same or in the following syllable, as: *ēst*, *ēssēm*, *rēstare*, *dūx*. The consonants may be divided between two words, as *sūb sidērē*. A short syllable made long by this rule is said to be *long by Position*.

863. But if the syllable ends in a short vowel, and the next syllable in the same word begins with a mute (see **6.**) followed by *r* or *l*, the syllable before the two consonants is *common* (anceps) — that is, it may be either *long* or *short* (⊔) in verse, as in *tenēbrae*; in prose it is invariably short.

864. Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long; only compounds of *jugum*, *yoke*, retain the short vowel before *j*, as: *bījūgus*, *two-horse*.

865. Forms from the same stem, whether **Inflections**, **Derivatives**, or **Compounds** retain the *original quantity* of the radical syllable, even when the vowel is changed, as:

āmor, *āmīcus*, *inīmīcus*, *inīmicitia*
sāpio, *sāpor*, *sāpiens*, *insīpiens*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> from <i>pāciscor</i>	<i>fīdes</i>	} from <i>fīdo</i>
<i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i> “ <i>rēgo</i>	<i>fīdelis</i>	
<i>sēdes</i> “ <i>sēdeo</i>	<i>perfīdus</i>	
<i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i> “ <i>vōco</i>	<i>perfīdia</i>	
<i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i> “ <i>dūco</i>	but:	
<i>nōta</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>confīdo</i>	
<i>nōtio</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>diffīdo</i>	
<i>nōtare</i> } “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>fīdus</i>	
<i>ōdium</i> “ <i>ōdi</i>	<i>infīdus</i>	
	<i>fīducia</i>	

Middle Syllables.

866. **Perfects** and **Supines** of two syllables have the first syllable long even when that of the present is short, as: *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*.

EXCEPTIONS: 7 **Perfects**: *bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*

stētī, *stītī*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

10 **Supines**: *dātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*

cītum, *ītum*, *stātum*

lītum, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*.

867. Reduplicated Perfects shorten both syllables, but the second may be made long by position, as: *tango, tētīgi — fallo, fēfelli*. The only exception is *caedo, cēcīdi* in distinction from *cado, cēcīdi*.

868. Perfects in *ūī* have their stem vowel short, as:

vētō-vētūī; plācēō-plācūī; cōlō-cōlūī.

EXCEPTIONS: *dēbēō, = dēhibēō; flōrēō* from *flōs; pārēō, and pōno*, but *pōsui*.

869. Supines in *itūm* have *i* long when from Perfects in *īvī* (ii), as: *cupītum, petītum, audītum. recensēo* has *recensītum* from *recensūī* in the Perfect.

870. Verbs in *īō* (īōr) of the Third Conjugation have a short stem vowel: *fācīō, cūpīō, jācīō, pātīōr, &c. &c.*

871. The verb endings *imus, itis* have only in the Present of the Fourth Conjugation a long penult; also in *sīmus, sītis; possīmus, possītis; velīmus, velītis; nolīmus, nolītis; malīmus, malītis; faxīmus, faxītis*.

872. In *rīmūs* and *rītīs* of the Future Perfect, and Perfect Subjunctive, *i* of the penult is common, i. e., it may be long in verse. *āmāvērīmūs, āmāvērītīs*.

873. The terminations *ābūs, ōbūs, ēbūs* in plural cases, have a long penult, *ībūs* and *ūbūs* a short one.

filiābus, duōbus, diēbus — ducībūs, acūbus.

874. Derivative Adjectives in *ālīs, ārīs, ānūs, īvūs, ōsūs* have the penult long: *naturālīs, vulgārīs, humānus, natīvūs, odiōsus;*

those in *īcūs* and *īdūs* have it short: *bellīcūs, cupīdūs*.

EXCEPTIONS: *amīcūs, antīcūs, aprīcūs, postīcūs, pudīcūs*.

875. Verbal Adjectives in *ilīs* have the penult short, as *docīlīs, faciīlīs*. But Derivatives from nouns have it long, as *hostīlīs, puerīlīs*.

EXCEPTIONS: *humīlīs* from *humus; parīlīs* from *pār*.

876. Adjectives in *īnūs* have the penult long, as:

divīnus, genuīnus, peregrīnus, vicīnus.

But if such Adjectives denote *time* or *material*, the penult is short, as: *adamantīnus, crastīnus, diutīnus*.

EXCEPTIONS: *matutīnus, vespertīnus, repentīnus*.

Final Syllables.

877. In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are *short*, **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*:

1. **a** is *short*: terră, tectă, capită.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of the *First Declension*: terră.

Vocative of *Greek words* in **ās**: Aeneă.

Imperative of *First Conjugation*: amă.

Most uninflected words as trīgintă, anteă, contră; but: ită, quiă.

2. **e** is *short*: retĕ, ipsĕ, antĕ.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of *Fifth Declension*, diĕ.

Imperative of *Second Conjugation*, mōnĕ.

Most Adverbs from *Adjectives* of the *Second Declension*, as: rectĕ, doctĕ. But notice: bĕnĕ, mălĕ, saepĕ, temerĕ, supernĕ, infernĕ. impunĕ and necessĕ are from old forms impunĭs and necessĭs.

Greek words in **e** (*η*): Niobĕ, Tempĕ.

3. **i** is *long*: dominĭ, vigintĭ, amarĭ.

EXCEPTIONS:

nisĭ, quasĭ.

Dative and **Vocative** of *Greek words*, Daphnidĭ, Alexĭ.

i is *common* in: mĭhĭ, tĭbĭ, sĭbĭ, ĭbĭ, ūbĭ.

Notice the *Compounds*: of ūbĭ: ubĭnam, ubĭvis, ubĭque — of ĭbĭ: alĭbi, ĭbĭdem — of ut, utĭ: utĭnam, utĭque.

4. **o** is *long*: bonŏ, amătŏ.

EXCEPTIONS:

Nouns of the *Third Declension* and verbal forms, as: leŏ, vĕtŏ.

ĕgŏ, dŭŏ, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, tantummŏdŏ, quandŏ, quandŏquĭdĕm.

5. **u** is *always long*: cornŭ, fructŭ, auditŭ.

878. All *Final Syllables* that end in a single consonant other than **s** are *short*: Ńd, amăt, consŭl, capŭt.

EXCEPTIONS:

Compounds of păr, dispăr, impăr.—The *Adverbs* illic, illuc, istuc.

Many *Greek nouns*, as: aĕr, aethĕr, cratĕr; also alĕc, liĕn.

879. Final **as, es, os** are long; final **is, us, ys** are short.

1. **as** is *long*: **Messiās, silvās, vocās.**

EXCEPTIONS:

Greek nouns in **ās, ādīs, as Arcās, Arcādīs.**

Greek accusative plur.: **herōās, Arcādās.**

anās, anātis.

2. **es** is *long*: **legēs, diēs, docēs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

Nom. Sing. Third Declension, when the Genitive has **ētīs, itīs, īdīs** with *short* penult, as **milēs, segēs, obsēs;** but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.**

Compounds of **ēs, be;** as: **ādēs**

penēs (Preposition).

Greek words in **ēs (ες) Thracēs, Arcādēs.**

3. **os** is *long*: **deōs, nepōs.**

EXCEPTIONS: **compōs, impōs** — **Greek words** in **ōs: Delōs.**

4. **is** is *short*: **canīs, legīs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

Plural Cases of all Declensions: **mensīs, servīs, nobīs, omnīs, partīs (Accus. pl.).**

The **Nominative** of such substantives as have in the Genitive **itīs, inīs, entīs,** as **Salāmīs, Samnīs, Simōīs, -entīs.**

Second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Active, Fourth Conjugation **audīs;** likewise **velīs, nolīs, malīs, possīs** and the Compounds of **sīs. pulvīs** and **sanguīs.**

5. **us** is *short*: **gladiūs, vulnūs, fructūs, amāmūs.**

EXCEPTIONS:

Gen. Sing. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Fourth Declension, **fructūs.**

Nominative of the **Third Declension** when the Genitive has a long **u:** **virtūs, palūs, tellūs.**

Greek words with **u long (ov): tripūs.**

6. **ys** (in words of Greek origin) is *short*: **chlamŷs, Halŷs.**

Monosyllables.

880. All words of *one syllable* that end in a vowel, are long: **ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, prō, tū.**

The attached particles **-quē, -vě, -ně, -cě, -lě, -ptě** are *short.*
On the Prefix **rě** see below **885.**

881. **Substantives** and **Adjectives** of one syllable are *long*, when they end in a consonant even if the stem-syllable be short, as: **ōs**, **mōs**, **vēr**, **sōl**, **fūr**, **plūs**; **pēs** (**pēdis**), **bōs** (**bōvis**), **pār** (**pāris**).

EXCEPTIONS: **vīr**. **lāc**, **ōs** (**ossis**), **mēl**
cēr, **vās** (**vādis**), **fēl**.

hīc, *this one*, is sometimes short.

882. All other words of one syllable that end in a consonant, are short: **pēr**, **tēr**, **cīs**, **īn**, **fāc**.

EXCEPTIONS: **ēn**, **nōn**, **quīn** — **crās**, **cūr**, **sīn**
the Adverbs, **hīc**, **hūc**, **hāc**, **sīc**.

dīc and **dūc** have the quantity of their verbs; **ēs**, *be*, is short.

Quantity in Compounds.

883. Compounds generally retain the quantity of their component parts, as: **dūco**, **dēdūco**, **condūco**; **ēō**, **ābēō**, **ōbēō**, **īnēō**; **dīco**, **contrādīcō**.

884. **pro** is *short* in Greek words, as **prōphēta**; but *long* in Latin (**880**) though there are many exceptions, especially before **f**; as:

prōcellā	prōfestūs	prōfundō
prōfānūs	prōfītēōr	prōnēpōs
prōfārī	prōfīciscōr	prōpāgō
prōfectō	prōfūgiō	prōtervūs .

885. Of the inseparable Prefixes, **dī**, **sē**, and **vē** are *long*, **rē** is *short*: **dīdūcō**, **sēdūcō**, **rēdūcō**.

EXCEPTIONS: **dīrīmō**, **dīsertūs**
rēlīgīō, **rēfert**, **rēlīquīae**.

886. In a few words, the quantity of the second part is changed. Such are: **pejērō**, from **jūrō**; **cognītūs** from **nōtūs**.

A remarkable change of quantity appears in the Compounds of **-dīcūs**, from **dīcō**: **fatidīcus**, **veridīcus**, **maledīcus**, and in: **innūba**, **pronūba**, from **nūbo**.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

887. Elision is the *omission* or rather *partial suppression* of a final vowel or a final **m** when the following word begins with a vowel or **h**, as:

deserto in litore	<i>to be read</i> desert' in litore
certae occumbere morti	“ cert' occumbere morti
supremum audire laborem	“ suprem' audire laborem .

888. The practice of elision is followed in poetry to avoid the hiatus (*gaping*), or the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables. But *before* and *after Interjections* the hiatus is allowed, as:

O ēt | dē Lātī|ā, ō | ēt dē | gēntē Sā|binā.

889. Elided syllables should be sounded but lightly. After a vowel or **m** final, the word **est** drops its **e** and is joined with the preceding syllable; as:

multa est, *read* multa'st; multum est, *read* multum'st.

890. Synaerēsis, or the *contraction* of two vowels which are commonly pronounced separately, is regular in the following words: dēinde, prōinde, dēest, dēesse, āntehāc (= ānthāc) and in all forms of the verb anteire (= antīre).

891. In like manner **i** and **u** before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sounds of *y* and *w*, as: flūvīōrūm *say* flūvyōrūm; ābīētē = ābyētē; genūā = genwa.

892. One syllable is sometimes resolved into *two* by Diaerēsis, as: sī lū ae = sil vae; in sū ē tūs = in suē tūs.

893. Syncōpe, *a cutting short* is the taking away of one or more letters from the middle of a word, as: saeculum *for* saecūlum; prendere *for* prehendere.

894. Apocōpe, *a cutting off*, is the cutting off a letter or letters from the end of a word, as: viden, *for* videsne; ain *for* aisne.

895. Systōle is the *shortening* of a long syllable, as: dedē-runt *for* dedērunt; Diastōle the *lengthening* of a short syllable, as Prīamīdes *for* Prīamīdes.

896. Epenthēsis is the *insertion* of a letter or a syllable in the middle of a word, as in the old forms sīēt, possīēt *for* sīt, possīt.

897. Tmēsis is the *separation* of compound words into their parts, as:

quam rem cunque *for*, quamcunque rem
per mihi gratum “ mihi pergratum
super unus eram “ unus supereram.

ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION.

898. A verse, or line of poetry consists of a series of measures which are called Feet.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse are the following:

Of two syllables.

∪ ∪	Pyrrhichius, <i>Pyrrhic</i>	pătēr
--	Spondēus, <i>Spondee</i>	virtūs
∪ -	Iambus, <i>Iambus</i>	āmāns
- ∪	{ Trochaeus, <i>Trochee</i> }	mātēr
	{ Chorēus, <i>Choree</i> }	

Of three syllables.

∪ ∪ ∪	Tribrāchys, <i>Tribrach</i>	ādērīt
---	Molossus, <i>Molossus</i>	mōrtālēs
- ∪ ∪	Dactylus, <i>Dactyl</i>	tēmpōrā
∪ ∪ -	Anapaestus, <i>Anapaest</i>	sāpīēns
∪ - ∪	Amphibrāchys, <i>Amphibrach</i>	ādēssē
- ∪ -	{ Amphimācrus, <i>Amphimacer</i> }	fēcērānt
	{ Creticus, <i>Cretic</i> }	
∪ --	Bacchius, <i>Bacchius</i>	āmōrī
-- ∪	Antibacchius, <i>Antibacchius</i>	pēccātā

Of Feet of four syllables the following are recognized:

∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	Proceleusmaticus, <i>Proceleusmatic</i>	cēlērītēr
----	Dispondēus, <i>Double Spondee</i>	intērrūmpūnt
- ∪ - ∪	Ditrochaeus, <i>Double Trochee</i>	infidēlīs
∪ - ∪ -	Diambus, <i>Double Iambus</i>	rēnūntiāns
∪ ∪ --	Ionīcus a minōre, <i>Lesser Ionic</i>	mētūētēs
-- ∪ ∪	Ionīcus a majōre, <i>Greater Ionic</i>	sēntēntiā
- ∪ ∪ -	Choriambus, <i>Choriambus</i>	cūrriculō
∪ -- ∪	Antispastus, <i>Antispast</i>	vērēcūndūs.

899. The Unit of measure is the short syllable (-); this is called a mora (time). A long syllable (—) is regularly equal to two morae. Accordingly in some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long, or a long instead of two short.

900. Rhythm is the alternate elevation and depression of the voice at certain intervals of time. That part of the foot which is distinguished from the rest by a greater stress of voice is called **Ar sis**, the other part **Thesis**. The stress of voice laid upon the arsis is called ictus (beat); it is marked thus \angle .

901. The natural arsis is invariably on the long syllable or syllables of a foot; hence the *Trochee* and *Dactyl* have the ictus on the first syllable, the *Iambus* and *Anapaest* on the last, and the *Cretic* on the first and last. Only those feet which consist of both long and short syllables can have Arsis and Thesis, or Rhythm, and are, therefore, called **Rhythmical Feet**. Those consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are only used as substitutes for rhythmical feet, and take the ictus of the foot for which they stand; hence, a Spondee when used for the Dactyl takes the ictus of the Dactyl, viz: on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the Anapaestic rhythm, viz: the ictus on the last syllable.

902. **Rhythmical Feet** are *simple* when they have only one arsis, and *compound* when they have more than one. If the arsis follows, the rhythm is called *ascending*, if it precedes, *descending*.

903. A **Verse** is *simple* when it has one dominant measure which determines the rhythm of the whole verse; and *compound*, when different rhythms are combined in the same verse. The latter are only found in lyric poetry.

904. A verse takes its name from the predominant measure as *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, *Anapaestic*, and from the number of feet that compose it, as, *Hexameter*, *Pentameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*, *Monometer*.

905. In **Dactyls** and all compound rhythmical feet (see above **902**) a measure is *a single foot*; accordingly, a verse having five dactyls is called a *pentameter*; one having six dactyls, *hexameter*.

906. **Trochaic**, **Iambic**, and **Anapaestic** verses are measured *not by single feet, but by pairs* (*dipodĭa*, *dipody*). In these rhythms a *monometer* contains two feet, a *dimeter* four, a *trimeter* six, a *tetrameter* eight.

907. A verse is termed **Acatalectic** (*not halting short*) when its last foot is complete; a verse lacking a syllable at the end is called **Catalectic**; it is catalectic in *syllabam*, or in *bisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the last foot.

908. The last syllable of a verse may be long or short indifferently, and is, therefore, called *syllaba anceps*, because the time wanting is made up by pause.

909. Most simple verses have certain breaks or pauses to rest the voice, and to prevent monotony. The *break* occasioned by the ending of a word in the middle of a foot, is called *Caesūra* marked thus †. The verse

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ─

Donec † eris † felix † multos † numerabis † amicos

has five *Caesūrae*. Again, the *coincidence* of the end of a word with the end of a foot is called *Diaerēsis* marked thus ||.

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ || ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡

Tempora || si fuerint || nubila || solus eris.

Every verse must have, about its middle, one principal *caesūra* or *diaerēsis*.

910. *Caesūra* is prevailing in *Iambic* and *Dactylic* verses, while the *Anapaestic Dimeter*, *Trochaic Tetrameter*, *Dactylic Pentameter* and the *Choriambic* verse have a fixed *diaerēsis* in the middle of the verse.

911. A *caesūra* occurring after the *arsis* of a foot is called *masculine*; a *caesūra* occurring after the *thesis* is called *feminine*:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡

Una salus † victis † nullam † sperare † salutem.

masc. masc. masc. fem.

A *caesūra* may be found in any foot of the verse except the first.

912. In *Iambic* and *Dactylic* metres, the *Caesūrae* are named according to the number of half-feet before them, thus:

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. trithemimēres | ($\frac{3}{2}$) | at the end of the 3d half foot |
| 2. penthemimēres | ($\frac{5}{2}$) | “ 5th “ |
| 3. hepthemimēres | ($\frac{7}{2}$) | “ 7th “ |
| 4. ennehemimēres | ($\frac{9}{2}$) | “ 9th “ |

They are all represented in the following hexameter:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ─

Ille latus † niveum † molli † fultus † hyacyntho.

1 2 3 4

913. To read verse *rhythmically* is an accomplishment which must be taught orally. Observing the rules of quantity and versification, take care not to dwell on the rhythm of the verse to the neglect of accent and connection of the words. The ordinary mode of scanning, as:

┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ | ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ◡ | ┌ ◡ ─

Donece risfe lixmul tosnume rabisa micos

is worse than useless.

DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

914. The **Dactylic Hexameter** (**Heroic Verse**) or simply **Hexameter** consists regularly of six dactyls and is *catalectic* in bisyllabum. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet. Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place, and when it is, the verse is called **Spondaic**. Accordingly its formula is:

⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣

915. Of the great number of possible *caesūrae* in the Hexameter the following are the most usual:

The principal *caesūra* is the **Penthemimeral**, or masculine *caesūra* of the third foot, as:

⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ —
Arma virumque cano, † Trojae qui primus ab oris.

The next is the feminine *caesūra* of the third foot, also called *μετὰ τρίτον τροχαῖον*, as:

⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣
O passi graviora, † dabit deus his quoque finem.

Then comes the **Hepthemimeral** in the *arsis* of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by the **trithemimeres** after the second *arsis*, as:

⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣
Stat sonipes † ac frena ferox † spumantia mandit.

916. The last word of a Hexameter should be either a *disyllable*, or a *trisyllable*; monosyllables at the end denote emphasis, as:

⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ —
Parturiunt montes † nascetur ridiculus mus.

917. In the first part of the verse variety in the use of dactyls and spondees has an agreeable effect. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls, a slow and heavy one by that of spondees. The following examples have been chosen with especial reference to this point:

⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣
Quadrupedante † putrem † sonitu † quatit ungula campum.

⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ ⌣ ⌣ | ⌣ —
(Cyclōpes) Illi inter † sese † magna † vi brachia tollunt.

ELEGIAC PENTAMETER.

918. The **Elegiac Pentameter** consists of two parts separated by *Diaerësis*. Each part consists of two dactyls and the arsis of a third; the first part admits spondees, the second does not:

$\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | - || \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila solus eris.

It derives its name from the number of dactyls. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$.)

919. The **Elegiac Pentameter** is seldom, if ever, used except in the *Elegiac Distich*, which consists of the *Hexameter* followed by the *Pentameter*:

$\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | - \cup$
 Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos;
 $\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | || \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

920. No monosyllables can stand at the end of either part of the **Pentameter**, except when preceded by another one, as:

$\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | - || \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | -$
 Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.

921. Neither *sylläba anceps* nor *hiätus* is allowed at the *diaerësis*. Almost every **Pentameter** ends in a dissyllable, and elision is avoided.

IAMBIC TRIMETER.

922. The most common form of **Iambic verse** is the **Senarian**, or **Iambic Trimeter**; it is of frequent occurrence in lyric poetry, and is also the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. Since the final syllable must be *anceps*, the formula of the verse is as follows:

$\cup \bar{\cup} \cup - | \cup \bar{\cup} \cup - | \cup \bar{\cup} \cup$

923. In the **Iambic Trimeter** a *Spondee* or its equivalent (*Anapaest* or *Dactyl* with *Iambic ictus* — $\bar{\cup} \cup$) may be regularly substituted in the odd places (1st, 3d, 5th foot), also a *Tribrach* ($\cup \cup \cup$) anywhere except in the last place.

924. The principal *caesūra* of the **Iambic Trimeter** is either the *penthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the 3d foot, or the *hepthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

COMPOUND VERSES.

925. A verse is **compound** if different measures are combined in the same to produce a more artificial movement especially

characteristic of lyric poetry. If a dactylic rhythm passes into trochees, the movements are intermediate between those of prose and poetry. Hence the name **Logaoedic verse** (from *λόγος*, prose, and *ᾠδή*, song). Sometimes an introductory foot of two syllables which is called **Basis** and commonly marked thus X, is put before the dactylic or logaoedic series. The **Verses** constructed upon the **Logaoedic** form (especially those used by Horace) are the following:

1. **Adonic** (a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
Térruit úrbem.

2. **Aristophanic** (a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
Lýdia díe per ómnes.

3. **Pherecratean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
Vix duráre carínae.

4. **Glyconic** (basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$
Rómae princípis úrbium.

5. **Lesser Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \times \cup \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \dagger \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
Integér vitáe scelerísque púrus.

6. **Greater Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \times \cup \underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
Té Deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

7. **Lesser Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$
Máecenás atavis édite régíbús.

8. **Greater Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \times \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \cup$
Núllam Váre sacrá víte priús séveris árborem.

In the *Greater Sapphic* and both the *Asclepiadeans*, the dactyl with the catalectic trochee appears a simple Choriambus: $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup \cup$; hence these metres have obtained the general name of **Choriambic**.

9. **Lesser Alcaic** (two dactyls; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}}$
 Víriginibús puerísque cánto.

10. **Greater Alcaic** (anacrŭsis; double basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\cup : \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} || \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}}$

Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm.

One or more syllables placed before the proper beginning of the measure are called an anacrŭsis; it is separated by a colon:

11. **Archilochian** (dactylic tetrameter; three trochees):

$\underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup}}$
 Sólvitur ácris hiéms † gratá vice vérís ét Favóni.

METRES OF HORACE.

926. Verses are combined in two different ways. Either the same verse is repeated throughout; such are the *Heroic Hexameter* and the *Iambic Trimeter*. Or the same verse or different verses recurring in a certain order are combined in a **Stanza** or **Strophe**. A strophe of two lines is called a **Distich**; of three, a **Tristich**; of four a **Tetrastich**.

927. Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires. The Odes include nineteen varieties of strophe, viz.:

1. **Alcaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Two Greater Alcaics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup : \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} || \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}} \\ \cup : \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} || \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 10

One Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis $\cup : \underline{\text{ } \cup \underline{\text{ } \cup} | \underline{\text{ } \cup \underline{\text{ } \cup}}$

One Lesser Alcaic $\underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}}$ 925. 9

Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm

Non cívium árdor práva jubéntiúm

Non vúltus instantís tyránni

Ménte quatít solidá neque Aúster.

2. **Sapphic Strophe** (minor), consisting of:

Three lesser Sapphics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}} \\ \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}} \\ \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } \cup} \underline{\text{ } \times} \underline{\text{ } -} | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 5

One Adonic $\underline{\text{ } \cup \cup | \underline{\text{ } \cup}}$ 925. 1

Jám satis terrís nivis átque dírae

Grándinis misít pater ét rubénte

Déxterá sacrás jaculátus árces

Térruit úrbem.

3. **Sapphic Strophe** (major), consisting of:

One Aristophanic $\underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup$ 925. 2

One Greater Sapphic $\underline{\text{I}} \times \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup$ 925. 6

Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

Lydia díc per ómnes

Té deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

4. **Asclepiadean Strophe I.** (minor), consisting of:

Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \\ \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

repeated in tetrastichs:

Máecenás, atavís éдите régibús

O et praesidium ét dulce decús meúm.

5. **Asclepiadean Strophe II.**, consisting of:

One Glycionic $\underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$ 925. 4

One Lesser Asclepiadean $\underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$ 925. 7

alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

Návis, quáe tibi créditúm

Débes Vérgiliúm, finibus Atticís

Réddas incolumém, precór,

Et servés animáe dímidíúm meáe.

6. **Asclepiadean Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Three Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \\ \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \\ \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

One Glycionic $\underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$ 925. 4

Quís desíderió sít pudor áut modús

Tám carí capítis? — Praécipe lúgubrés

Cántus, Mélpomené, cú liquidám patér

Vócem cúm cythará dedít.

7. **Asclepiadean Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Two Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \\ \underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} || \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

One Pherecratean $\underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup$ 925. 3

One Glycionic $\underline{\text{I}} \times - | \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$ 925. 4

O fons Bándusiáe spléndidiór vitró

Dúlei dígne meró, nón sine flóribús

Crás donáberis háedo

Cuí frons túrgida córnibús.

8. **Asclepiadean Strophe V.**, consisting of the

Greater Asclepiadean	}	$\underline{\overset{\times}{-}} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \underline{\cup}$	925.8
repeated in fours		$\underline{\overset{\times}{-}} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \underline{\cup}$	
		$\underline{\overset{\times}{-}} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \underline{\cup}$	
		$\underline{\overset{\times}{-}} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\parallel} \underline{\cup} \cup \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \underline{\cup}$	

Tú ne quáesierís, scíre nefás quém mihi, quém tibi
 Fínem dí dederínt, Leúconoé, néc Babylóniós
 Téntaris numerós. At meliús, quídquid erít patí!
 Seú plurés hiemés, seú tribuít Júppiter últimám.

9. **Alcmanian Strophe**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \dagger \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup$
 Dactylic Tetrameter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup$

Quó nos cúnque ferét meliór fortuna parénte,
 Ibimus ó socií comitésque.

10. **Archilochian Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \dagger \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup$
 Dactylic Trimeter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$

Díffugére nivés, redeúnt jam grámina cámpis
 Arboribúsque comáe.

11. **Archilochian Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \dagger \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup$
 Iambic Dimeter $\cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup$
 Dactylic Trimeter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$

Hórrida témpetás caelúm contráxit et ímbres
 Nivésque deducúnt Jovem:
 Núnc mare, núnc siluae.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

12. **Archilochian Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter $\cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup$
 Dactylic Trimeter $\underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \underline{\cup}$
 Iambic Dimeter $\cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \underline{\cup} \cup \cup$

Pectí, nihil me sícut antea júvat
 Scríbere vérsículos
 Amóre perculsúm gravi.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

13. **Archilochian Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Archilochian $\bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup || \bar{\iota} \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup$ 925. 11
 Iambic Trimeter $\cup \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \cup \bar{\iota} \cup$

Sólvitur ácris hiéms gratá vice vérís ét Favóni
 Trahúntque siccas máchinae carínas.

Two pairs are combined to form a tetrastich.

14. **Iambic Trimeter** alone (see 922).

15. **Iambic Strophe**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup -$
 Iambic Dimeter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup -$

Beátus ille qui procul negótiis
 Ut prisca gens mortálium.

16. **Pythiambic Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup$
 Iambic Dimeter $\cup \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup -$

Nóx erat, ét caeló fulgébat lúna seréno
 Intér minora sídera.

17. **Pythiambic Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \bar{\omega} | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup$
 Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup -$

Altera jám teritúr bellís civílibus áetas,
 Suís et ipsa Róma viribús ruit.

18. **Trochaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Trochaic Dimeter $\bar{\iota} \cup - \bar{\iota} \cup -$
 Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup - | \bar{\iota} \bar{\iota} \cup -$

Nón ebur neque aúreum
 Meá renidet ín domo lacúnar.

19. **Lesser Ionics** (see 898).

Two Dipodies $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - || \\ \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - || \end{array} \right.$
 Two Tripodies $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - || \\ \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - | \cup \cup \bar{\iota} - || \end{array} \right.$

Miserárum est neque amóri
 Dare lúdum neque dúlci
 Mala víno lavere áut exanimári
 Metuéntes patruáe verbera línguae.

928. INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE.

The references are to the numbers in the preceding paragraph.

LIB. I.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Maecenas atavis: 4. | 20. Vile potabis: 2. |
| 2. Jam satis terris: 2. | 21. Dianam tenerae: 7. |
| 3. Sic te diva: 5. | 22. Integer vitae: 2. |
| 4. Solvitur acris hiems: 13 | 23. Vitas hinnuleo: 7. |
| 5. Quis multa: 7. | 24. Quis desiderio: 6. |
| 6. Scriberis Vario: 6. | 25. Parcius junctas: 2. |
| 7. Laudabunt alii: 9. | 26. Muisis amicus: 1. |
| 8. Lydia dic: 3. | 27. Natis in usum: 1. |
| 9. Vides ut alta: 1. | 28. Te maris: 9. |
| 10. Mercuri facunde nepos: 2. | 29. Icci beatis: 1. |
| 11. Tu ne quaesieris: 8. | 30. O Venus: 2. |
| 12. Quem virum: 2. | 31. Quid dedicatum: 1. |
| 13. Cum tu Lydia: 5. | 32. Poscimur: 2. |
| 14. O navis: 7. | 33. Albi ne doleas: 6. |
| 15. Pastor cum traheret: 6. | 34. Parcus deorum: 1. |
| 16. O matre pulchra: 1. | 35. O diva: 1. |
| 17. Velox amoenum: 1. | 36. Et ture: 5. |
| 18. Nullam Vare: 8. | 37. Nunc est bibendum: 1. |
| 19. Mater saeva: 5. | 38. Persicos odi: 2. |

LIB. II.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Motum ex Metello: 1. | 11. Quid bellicosus: 1. |
| 2. Nullus argento: 2. | 12. Nolis longa: 6. |
| 3. Aequam memento: 1. | 13. Ille et nefasto: 1. |
| 4. Ne sit ancillae: 2. | 14. Eheu fugaces: 1. |
| 5. Nondum subacta: 1. | 15. Jam pauca: 1. |
| 6. Septimi Gades: 2. | 16. Otium divos: 2. |
| 7. O saepe mecum: 1. | 17. Cur me querelis: 1. |
| 8. Ulla si juris: 2. | 18. Non ebur: 18. |
| 9. Non semper imbres: 1. | 19. Bacchum in remotis: 1. |
| 10. Rectius vives: 2. | 20. Non usitata: 1. |

LIB. III.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Odi profanum: 1. | 7. Quid fles: 7. |
| 2. Angustam amice: 1. | 8. Martiis caelebs: 2. |
| 3. Justum et tenacem: 1. | 9. Donec gratus: 5. |
| 4. Descende caelo: 1. | 10. Extremum Tanain: 6. |
| 5. Caelo tonantem: 1. | 11. Mercuri nam te: 2. |
| 6. Delicta majorum: 1. | 12. Miserarum est: 19. |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 13. O fons Bandusiae: 7. | 22. Montium custos: 2. |
| 14. Herculis ritu: 2. | 23. Caelo supinas: 1. |
| 15. Uxor pauperis: 5. | 24. Intactis opulentior: 5. |
| 16. Inclusam Danaën: 6. | 25. Quo me Bacche: 5. |
| 17. Aeli vetusto: 1. | 26. Vixi puellis: 1. |
| 18. Faune nympharum: 2. | 27. Impios parrae: 2. |
| 19. Quantum distet: 5. | 28. Festo quid: 5. |
| 20. Non vides: 2. | 29. Tyrrhena regum: 1. |
| 21. O nata mecum: 1. | 30. Exegi monumentum: 4. |

LIB. IV.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Intermissa Venus: 5. | 9. Ne forte credas: 1. |
| 2. Pindarum quisquis: 2. | 10. O crudelis adhuc: 8. |
| 3. Quem tu Melpomene: 5. | 11. Est mihi nonum: 2. |
| 4. Qualem ministrum: 1. | 12. Jam veris comites: 6. |
| 5. Divis orte bonus: 6. | 13. Audivēre Lyce: 7. |
| 6. Dive quem proles: 2. | 14. Qua cura patrum: 1. |
| 7. Diffugēre nives: 10. | 15. Phoebus volentem: 1. |
| 8. Donarem pateras: 4. | <i>Carmen Saeculare</i> : 2. |

EPODES.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ibis liburnis: 15. | 10. Mala soluta: 15. |
| 2. Beatus ille: 15. | 11. Pecti nihil: 12. |
| 3. Parentis olim: 15. | 12. Quid tibi, vis: 9. |
| 4. Lupis et agnis: 15. | 13. Horrida tempestas: 11. |
| 5. At O deorum: 15. | 14. Mollis inertia: 16. |
| 6. Quid immerentes: 15. | 15. Nox erat: 16. |
| 7. Quo quo scelesti: 15. | 16. Altera jam: 17. |
| 8. Rogare longo: 15. | 17. Jam jam efficaci: 14. |
| 9. Quando repostum: 15. | |

MISCELLANEOUS.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

929. The **Roman Year**, by the reformed Calendar of *Julius Caesar*, had 365 days, divided as at present into 12 months:

Januarius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februarius,	28 “	Junius,	30 “	Octōber,	31 “
Martius,	31 “	Quintilis,	31 “	November,	30 “
Aprilis,	30 “	Sextilis,	31 “	December.	31 “

Every fourth year the 24th of February (VI. Kal. Mart.) was counted twice giving 29 days to that month. The *Intercalary day* — 25th of February — was called *bis sextus*.

In early times the year began in March; hence the names, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, etc. Quintilis and Sextilis were afterwards changed to Julius and Augustus, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

930. The first day of the month was called *Kalendæ* (*Calends*); on the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the other months, were the *Idūs* (*Ides*); on the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months were the *Nonæ* (*Nones*). To these the names of the months were added as Adjectives, as: *Kalendæ Januariæ* = *Jan. 1*; *Nonæ Februariæ* = *Febr. 5*; *Idus Martiæ* = *March 15*.

931. From these three points the days of the month were reckoned *backward* in the following manner: The *day before* each of them was expressed by *pridie* with the **Accusative**, as:

pridie Kalendas Januarias = *Dec. 31*.

pridie Nonas Januarias = *Jan. 4*.

pridie Idus Januarias = *Jan. 12*.

In counting further backward the point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning so that *ante diem tertium* Kal. Jan. means *two days before the Calends of January*; *ante diem quartum* Kal. Jan., *three days before the Calends of January*, and so on. This combination is treated as *one indeclinable word*, so that it can be used with prepositions, as: *ex ante diem III. Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kal. Septembres*, *from June 3 to August 31*.

932. In stating the day of a month, two different constructions are used. The original construction is *die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*, *February 27.*; but *die* and *ante* are regularly omitted, thus: *tertio Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *III. Kal. Mart.* The other form is: *ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *a. d. III. Kal. Mart.*

933.

CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

*Days of
our months.*

January.

February.

1.	KALENDIS JAN.	KALENDIS FEB.
2.	IV. Nonas Jan.	IV. Nonas Feb.
3.	III. " "	III. " "
4.	prid. " "	prid. " "
5.	NONIS JAN.	NONIS FEB.
6.	VIII. Idus Jan.	VIII. Idus Feb.
7.	VII. " "	VII. " "
8.	VI. " "	VI. " "
9.	V. " "	V. " "
10.	IV. " "	IV. " "
11.	III. " "	III. " "
12.	prid. " "	prid. " "
13.	IDIBUS JAN.	IDIBUS FEB.
14.	XIX. Kalendas Feb.	XVI. Kalendas Mart.
15.	XVIII. " "	XV. " "
16.	XVII. " "	XIV. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XIII. " "
18.	XV. " "	XII. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XI. " "
20.	XIII. " "	X. " "
21.	XII. " "	IX. " "
22.	XI. " "	VIII. " "
23.	X. " "	VII. " "
24.	IX. " "	VI. " "
25.	VIII. " "	V. " "
26.	VII. " "	IV. " "
27.	VI. " "	III. " "
28.	V. " "	prid. " "
29.	IV. " "	[prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-
30.	III. " "	year, the vi. Kal. (24th)
31.	prid. " "	being counted twice.]

(So *Aug.*, *Dec.*)

*Days of
our months.*

March.

April.

1.	KALENDIS MART.	KALENDIS APR.
2.	VI. Nonas Mart.	IV. Nonas Apr.
3.	V. " "	III. " "
4.	IV. " "	prid. " "
5.	III. " "	NONIS APR.
6.	prid. " "	VIII. Idus Apr.
7.	NONIS MART.	VII. " "
8.	VIII. Idus Mart.	VI. " "
9.	VII. " "	V. " "
10.	VI. " "	IV. " "
11.	V. " "	III. " "
12.	IV. " "	prid. " "
13.	III. " "	IDĪBUS APR.
14.	prid. " "	XVIII. Kalendas Maias.
15.	IDĪBUS MART.	XVII. " "
16.	XVII. Kalendas Aprilis.	XVI. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18.	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20.	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21.	XII. " "	XI. " "
22.	XI. " "	X. " "
23.	X. " "	IX. " "
24.	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25.	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26.	VII. " "	VI. " "
27.	VI. " "	V. " "
28.	V. " "	IV. " "
29.	IV. " "	III. " "
30.	III. " "	prid. " "
31.	prid. " "	(So June, Sept., Nov.)

(So May, July, Oct.)

934. To turn Roman dates into English:

For **Calends**: Add *two* to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

For **Ides** and **Nones**: Add *one* to the date of the Nones and Ides of the month in question, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. VIII. Kal. Febr. ($31 + 2 - 8$) = *Jan. 25.*

a. d. IV. Non. Mart. ($7 + 1 - 4$) = *March 4.*

a. d. IV. Id. Sept. ($13 + 1 - 4$) = *Sept. 10.*

935. The **Year** was designated by the names of the Consuls for that year: but was also reckoned from the building of the City (ab urbe condita, anno urbis conditae) which, according to Varro, corresponds with the 753d year B. C. In order to reduce such dates to those of the Christian era, if the given number be less than 754, subtract it from the latter, and the remainder will be the year B. C. as: a. u. c. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) = B. C. 63; if greater than 753, subtract 753 from it, and the remainder will be the year after Christ (A. D.), as: a. u. c. 767 (the year of Augustus' death) = 14 A. D.

936. The **Week** of seven days (hebdomas) was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were named from the planets:

dies Solis, <i>Sunday</i>	dies Jovis, <i>Thursday</i>
dies Lunae, <i>Monday</i>	dies Venëris, <i>Friday</i>
dies Martis, <i>Tuesday</i>	dies Saturni, <i>Saturday</i> .
dies Mercurii, <i>Wednesday</i>	

ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

937. The **Coins** of the Romans were in early times of copper. The *ās*, being originally the unit of currency, was nominally a pound weight, but was reduced by degrees to one twenty-fourth of its original weight and value. In the third century silver coins were introduced; the *denariūs* = 10 *asses*, and the *sestertius* = 2½ *asses* (*sestertius* = *semis-tertius*, *half third*, represented by IIS or HS = duo et semis, 2½).

938. The *Sestertius* was the ordinary coin of the Romans, by which the largest sums were reckoned. Gold was introduced later, the *aurēus* being equal to 100 *sesterces*. The value of these coins is seen in the following:

1 as	nearly 2 cents.
2½ asses = 1 sestertius or nummus (HS)	“ 4 “
10 asses = 4 sestertii = 1 denariūs	“ 16 “
1000 sestertii = 1 sestertium	\$40.00

939. The *Sestertium* was a sum of money, not a coin. Though probably the genitive plural of *sestertius*, the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun, thus: *tria sestertia* = \$120.00. When joined with the multiplicative adverbs it denotes a sum of a *hundred thousand*, *centena milia* being omitted, thus: *decies sestertium*, *a million* = \$40,000.

940. The Roman **Measures of Length** are the following:

12 uncīae, *inches* = 1 pes, *Roman foot* (11.6 *Engl. inches*)

1 cubitus, *cubit* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet

1 gradus, *step* = $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet

1 passus, *pace* = 5 feet

mille passuum, *1000 paces* = 1 mile (4850 *Engl. feet*).

941. The basis of **Square Measure** was the *jugerum*, an area of 240 Roman feet long and 120 broad, a little less than $\frac{2}{3}$ of an English acre.

942. The **Measures of Weight** are:

12 uncīae (*ounces*) = one pound (*libra*, about $\frac{3}{4}$ lb. *avoirdupois*).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ($\frac{1}{12}$), uncīa; | 5. ($\frac{5}{12}$), quincunx; | 9. ($\frac{3}{4}$), dodrans; |
| 2. ($\frac{1}{6}$), sextarii; | 6. ($\frac{1}{2}$), semissis; | 10. ($\frac{5}{8}$), dextans; |
| 3. ($\frac{1}{4}$), quadrans; | 7. ($\frac{7}{12}$), septunx; | 11. ($1\frac{1}{2}$), deunx; |
| 4. ($\frac{1}{3}$), triens; | 8. ($\frac{2}{3}$), bessis; | 12. As . |

The **Talent** was a Greek weight = 60 *librae*.

943. The **Measures of Capacity** are:

12 cyāthi = 1 sextarius (*nearly a pint*).

16 sextarii = 1 modius (*peck*).

6 sextarii = 1 congius (*3 quarts, liquid measure*).

8 congii = 1 amphōra (*6 gallons*).

944.

ABBREVIATIONS.

A., absolvo.

A. Chr., ante Christum.

A. D., ante diem.

A. U. C., anno urbis conditae.

C., condemno.

Cos., consul. Coss., consules.

D. D., dono dedit.

D. D. D., dat, dicat, dedicat.

Des., designatus.

F., filius.

H. S., sestertius.

Ietus, jurisconsultus.

Id., idus.

Imp., imperator.

J. O. M., Jovi optimo maximo.

K., Kal., Kalendae.

Leg., legatus, legio.

N. L., non liquet.

Non., Nonae.

P. C., patres conscripti.

P. M., pontifex maximus.

P. R., populus Romanus.

Pr., praetor.

Proc., proconsul.

Q. B. F. F. Q. S., quod bonum felix

faustumque sit.

Quir., Quirites.

Resp., respublica.

S., senatus.

S. C., senatus consultum.

S. D. P., salutem dicit plurimam.

S. P. Q. R., Senatus Populusque Romanus.

Tr. pl., tribunus plebis.

945.

PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

T. Maccius Plautus	B.C.254-184
<i>Comedies.</i>	
Q. Ennius	239-169
<i>Annals, Satires, &c. (Fragments).</i>	
M. Porcius Cato	236-149
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Pacuvius	220-130
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
P. Terentius Afer (TERENCE)	195-159
<i>Comedies.</i>	
C. Lucilius	149-103
<i>Satires (Fragments).</i>	
L. Attius (or Accius)	170-75
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
M. Terentius Varro	116-28
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Tullius Cicero	106-43
<i>Orations, Letters, Dialogues.</i>	
C. Julius Caesar	100-44
<i>Commentaries.</i>	
T. Lucretius Carus	99-55
<i>Poem "De Rerum Natura".</i>	
C. Valerius Catullus	87-47
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
C. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST)	86-35
<i>Histories.</i>	
Cornelius Nepos	90-
<i>Lives of Famous Commanders.</i>	
P. Vergilius Maro (VIRGIL)	70-19
<i>Eclogues, Georgis, Aeneid.</i>	
Q. Horatius Flaccus (HORACE)	65-8
<i>Satires, Odes, Epistles.</i>	
Albius Tibullus	54-18
<i>Elegies.</i>	
Sex. Aurelius Propertius	49-15
<i>Elegies.</i>	
T. Livius Patavinus (LIVY)	B.C.59-A.D.17
<i>Roman History.</i>	

P. Ovidius Naso (OVID)	B.C. 43—A.D. 16
<i>Metamorphoses, Fasti, &c.</i>	
C. Velleius Paterculus	B.C. 19—A.D. 31
<i>Roman History.</i>	
M. Valerius Maximus	A.D.—31
<i>Anecdotes, &c.</i>	
Pomponius Mela	—50
<i>Husbandry & Geography.</i>	
A. Persius Flaccus	34—62
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Seneca	—65
<i>Philos. Letters, &c.; Tragedies.</i>	
M. Annæus Lucanus	38—65
<i>Historical Poem "Pharsalia".</i>	
Q. Curtius Rufus	?
<i>History of Alexander.</i>	
C. Plinius Secundus (PLINY)	23—79
<i>Nat. Hist., &c.</i>	
C. Valerius Flaccus	—88
<i>Heroic Poem "Argonautica".</i>	
P. Papinius Statius	45—96
<i>Heroic Poems "Thebais", &c.</i>	
C. Silius Italicus	25—100
<i>Heroic Poem "Punica".</i>	
D. Junius Juvenalis (JUVENAL)	42—121
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Florus	—120
<i>Historical Abridgment.</i>	
M. Valerius Martialis (MARTIAL)	43—104
<i>Epigrams.</i>	
M. Fabius Quintilianus	40—118
<i>Rhetoric.</i>	
C. Cornelius Tacitus	57—118
<i>Annals, History, &c.</i>	
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (PLINY JUNIOR)	62—113
<i>Letters.</i>	
C. Suetonius Tranquillus	70—150
<i>The Twelve Cæsars.</i>	

Apulēius	A. D. 110-
<i>Philos. Writings, "Metamorphoses".</i>	
A. Gellius	-180
<i>Miscellanies, "Noctes Atticæ".</i>	
*Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus	160-220
<i>Apologist.</i>	
*M. Minucius Felix	-250
<i>Apologetic Dialogue, "Octavius".</i>	
*Firmianus Lactantius	250-325
<i>Theology.</i>	
D. Magnus Ausonius	-380
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
Ammianus Marcellinus	-395
<i>Roman History.</i>	
Claudius Claudianus	-408
<i>Poems, Panegyrics, &c.</i>	
*Aurelius Prudentius Clemens	348-410
<i>Christian Poems.</i>	
*Aurelius Augustinus	354-430
<i>Confessions, Discourses, &c.</i>	
Anicius Manlius Boethius	470-520
<i>Philosophical Dialogues.</i>	

* *Christian writers.*

INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index contains all the *Simple Verbs* in common use which involve any important irregularities, with such of their *Compounds* as require particular notice. — *The references are to paragraphs.*

A.

ābēō, -īrē, to go away, 407
 ābigō, -ērē, to drive away, 383
 ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off), 366
 abnūō, -ērē, to dissent, 366
 ābōlēō, -ērē, to abolish, 356
 ābōlescō, -ērē, to disappear, 394
 abscindō, -ērē, to tear off, 374
 abscondō, -ērē, to hide, 372
 absistō, -ērē, to cease, 374
 absolvō, -ērē, to acquit, 366
 abstergēō, -ērē, to wipe off, 360
 abstīnēō, -ērē, to abstain, 358
 absūm, ābessē, to be absent, 306
 absūmō, -ērē, to use up, 385
 ābūtōr, -ī, to use, abuse, 396
 accēdō, -ērē, to approach, 374
 accendō, -ērē, to kindle, 373
 acciō, -īrē, to call in, 362
 accipiō, -ērē, to receive, 368
 accūbō, -ārē, to lie near, 347
 accumbō, -ērē, to recline at
 table, 376
 accurō, -ērē, to run to, 387
 ācescō, -ērē, to turn sour, 394
 acquirō, -ērē, to acquire, 389
 ācūō, -ērē, to sharpen, 366
 adfērō, -rē, to afford, 404
 ādhaerēō, -ērē, to stick, 360
 ādīmō, -ērē, to take away, 389
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, to obtain, 396
 adjungō, -ērē, to join (to), 378
 adjūvō, -ārē, to assist, 348

admittō, -ērē, to admit, 374
 adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent, 366
 ādōlēō, -ērē, to grow up, 356
 ādōlescō, -ērē, to grow up, 394
 ādōriōr, -īrī, to attack, 399
 adsistō, -ērē, to stand by, 374
 adsūm, ādessē, to be present, 306
 aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick, 395
 affligō, -ērē, to dash, 378
 āgē, come, 417
 aggrēdiōr, -ī, to attack, 396
 agnoscō, -ērē, to acknowledge,
 393
 āgō, -ērē, to drive, do, 383
 ājō, I say, 416
 albēō, -ērē, to be white, 354
 algēō, -ērē, to be cold, 360
 allēgō, -ērē, to choose, 383
 allīciō, -ērē, to allure, 368
 allidō, -ērē, to dash against, 371
 allinō, -ērē, to besmear, 388
 allōquōr, -ī, to address, 396
 ālō, -ērē, to nourish, 386
 ambigō, -ērē, to contend, 383
 ambīō, -īrē, to go about, 408
 āmicīō, -īrē, to clothe, 398
 āmittō, -ērē, to lose, 374
 amplectōr, -ī, to embrace, 396
 angō, -ērē, to torment, vex, 381
 anquirō, -ērē, to search after, 389
 antēcellō, -ērē, to excel, 386
 antēpōnō, -ērē, to prefer, 386
 antistō, -ārē, to excel, 349

āpāgĕ, *be gone*, 417
 āpĕrīō, -īrĕ, *to open*, 398
 āpiscōr, -ī, *to reach after*, 396
 applaudō, -ĕrĕ, *to applaud*, 371
 applicō, -ārĕ, *to apply*, 347
 appōnō, -ĕrĕ, *to put by*, 386
 arcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to keep off*, 353
 arcessō, -ĕrĕ, *to summon*, 390
 ardĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn*, 360
 ārĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be dry*, 353
 ārescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become dry*, 394
 argūō, -ĕrĕ, *to accuse*, 366
 arrīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to smile upon*, 360
 arrīpīō, -ĕrĕ, *to seize*, 368
 ascendō, -ĕrĕ, *to ascend*, 373
 aspīcīō, -ĕrĕ, *to look*, 368
 assentiōr, -īrī, *to assent*, 399
 assĕquōr, -ī, *to pursue*, 396
 assīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit by*, 361
 assīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit down*, 374
 assuescō, -ĕrĕ, *to be accustomed*,
 393
 attendō, -ĕrĕ, *to attend to*, 371
 attīnĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to belong*, 358
 attingō, -ĕrĕ, *to touch*, 382
 audĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to dare*, 363
 aufĕrō, -rĕ, *to carry away*, 404
 augĕō -ĕrĕ, *to increase*, 359
 augescō, -ĕrĕ, *to augment*, 394
 āvĕ, *hail*, 417
 āvellō, -ĕrĕ, *to pull down*, 389
 āvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to long for*, 354

B.

bībō, -ĕrĕ, *to drink*, 376

C.

cādō, -ĕrĕ, *to fall*, 371
 caedō, -ĕrĕ, *to fell*, 371
 cālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become warm*,
 394
 callĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be versed*, 353

calvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to be bald*, 354
 candĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to shine*, 353
 candō, *I burn*, 373
 cānĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be gray*, 354
 cānō, -ĕrĕ, *to sing*, 387
 cāpessō, -ĕrĕ, *to lay hold of*, 390
 cāpīō, -ĕrĕ, *to take*, 331, 368
 carpō, -ĕrĕ, *to pluck*, 375
 cāvĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to take heed*, 357
 cĕdō, *give*, 417
 cĕdō, -ĕrĕ, *to yield*, 374
 cellō, *I impel*, 386
 cĕnō, -ārĕ, *to dine*, 278
 censĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to value, think*, 358
 cernō, -ĕrĕ, *to see, discern*, 388
 cettĕ, *give*, 417
 cīĕō, -ĕrĕ } *to rouse*, 362
 cīō, -īrĕ }
 cingō, -ĕrĕ, *to gird*, 378
 circumdō, -ārĕ, *to surround*, 349
 circumfundō, -ĕrĕ, *to surround*,
 373
 circumsĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit around*,
 361
 circumstō, -ārĕ, *to stand around*,
 349
 clangō, -ĕrĕ, *to clang*, 381
 claudō, -ĕrĕ, *to shut, close*, 371
 cōālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow together*,
 394
 cōargūō, -ĕrĕ, *to convict*, 366
 cōĕmō, -ĕrĕ, *to buy together*, 389
 coepī, coepissĕ, *to have begun*, 415
 cognoscō, -ĕrĕ, *to know*, 393
 cōgō, -ĕrĕ, *to force* (cō-āgō), 383
 cōhaerĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to stick*, 360
 collīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to dash together*,
 371
 collīgō, -ĕrĕ, *to collect*, 383
 cōlō, -ĕrĕ, *to cultivate*, 386
 combūrō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn (wholly)*,
 389

comminiscōr, -ī, to devise, 396
 committō, -ērē, to commit, 374
 cōmō, -ērē, to adorn, 385
 compescō, -ērē, to restrain, 393
 compingō, -ērē, to drive tight, 382
 complēō, -ērē, to fill (up), 356
 comprīmō, -ērē, to press together, 389
 concinō, -ērē, to sound together, 387
 concīō, -īrē, to call together, 362
 conclūdō, -ērē, to shut up, 371
 concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet, 394
 concurrō, -ērē, to run together, 387
 concūtiō, -ērē, to shake, 368
 condō, -ērē, to found, 372
 condōlescō, -ērē, to feel pain, 394
 confērō, -rē, to collect, 404
 conficiō, -ērē, to make, 368
 confidō, -ērē, to confide, 373
 confitēōr, -ērī, to confess, 364
 confligō, -ērē, to fight, 378
 confōdiō, -ērē, to pick out, 368
 confringō, -ērē, to break in two, 383
 congērō, -ērē, to bring together, 389
 congrūō, -ērē, to agree, 366
 cōnivēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes, 357
 consciscō, -ērē, to bring upon, 394
 conscribō, -ērē, to frame, 375
 consērō, -ērē, to plant, 388
 considō, -ērē, to settle, 374
 conspergō, -ērē, to sprinkle, 384
 constō, -ārē, to consist, 349
 constrūō, -ērē, to construct, 367
 consuescō, -ērē, to be wont, 393
 consūlō, -ērē, to counsel, 386
 consūmō, -ērē, to consume, 385

contemnō, -ērē, to despise, 385
 contendō, -ērē, to exert, 371
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off, 388
 contīcescō, -ērē, to become still, 394
 continēō, -ērē, to hold together, 358
 contrāhō, -ērē, to contract, 378
 contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble, 394
 contribūō, -ērē, to contribute, 366
 contundō, -ērē, to break down, 371
 convālescō, -ērē, to recover, 394
 cōquō, -ērē, to cook, bake, 378
 corrīgō, -ērē, to correct, 378
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt, 376
 corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground, 366
 crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent, 395
 crēdō, -ērē, to believe, 372
 crēpō, -ārē, to creak, 347
 crescō, -ērē, to grow, 393
 cūbō, -ārē, to lie down, 347
 cūdō, -ērē, to forge, 373
 cūpīō, -ērē, to desire, 332, 368
 currō, -ērē, to run, 370, 387

D.

decernō, -ērē, to determine, 388
 dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck, 375
 dēcēt, it becomes, 420
 dēcīdō, -ērē, to cut down, 371
 dēcīpiō, -ērē, to deceive, 368
 dēdēcēt, it is unbecoming, 420
 dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn, 393
 dēfendō, -ērē, to defend, 373
 dēfētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out, 396
 dēfungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin, 375
 dēgō, -ērē, to spend (dē-āgō), 383

dělěčō, —ērě, to destroy, 351, 356
 dělīgō, —ērě, to choose, 383
 dělītescō, —ērě, to hide away, 394
 dēmō, —ērě, to take away, 385
 dēpellō, —ērě, to dispel, 387
 dēpendčō, —ērě, to hang down,
 361
 dēposečō, —ērě, to request, 393
 depsō, —ērě, to knead, 390
 dērīdēčō, —ērě, to laugh at, 360
 describō, —ērě, to describe, 375
 dēsēcō, —ārě, to cut down, 347
 dēsērō, —ērě, to forsake, 388
 dēsīnō, —ērě, to leave off, 388
 dēsīpīō, —ērě, to be foolish, 368
 despīcīō, —ērě, to despise, 368
 despondčō, —ērě, to promise, 361
 dēsūm, deessě, to be wanting, 306
 dētēgō, —ērě, to discover, 378
 dētērō, —ērě, to wear away, 388
 dēvincīō, —īrě, to bind, 398
 dēvōvčō, —ērě, to vow, devote, 357
 dicō, —ērě, to say, tell, 336, 378
 diffērō, —rě, to defer, 404
 diffītēōr, —ērī, to disavow, 364
 diffundō, —ērě, to pour forth, 373
 dilābōr, —ī, to fall asunder, 396
 dilīgō, —ērě, to love, 383
 dīmīcō, —ārě, to fight, 347
 dirīgō, —ērě, to direct, 378
 dirūčō, —ērě, to destroy, 366
 discernō, —ērě, to distinguish, 388
 discerpō, —ērě, to tear asunder,
 375
 discindō, —ērě, to split, 374
 discō, —ērě, to learn, 370, 393
 discrēpō, —ārě, to disagree, 347
 dissērō, —ērě, to discourse, 388
 dissīdčō, —ērě, to disagree, 361
 dissīlīō, —īrě, to burst asunder,
 398
 dissuādčō, —ērě, to dissuade, 360

distingūčō, —ērě, to distinguish,
 378
 distō, —ārě, to be distant, 349
 distribūčō, —ērě, to distribute, 366
 dītescō, —ērě, to grow rich, 395
 dīvidō, —ērě, to divide, 371
 dō, —ārě, to give, 349, 370
 dōcēčō, —ērě, to teach, 358
 dōmō, —ārě, to tame, 347
 dūcō, —ērě, to lead, 336, 378
 dulcescō, —ērě, to become sweet,
 395
 dūrescō, —ērě, to grow hard, 395

E.

ēdiscō, —ērě, to learn by heart,
 393
 ēdō, —ērě, to eat, 373, 410
 ēdō, —ērě, to give out, 372
 ēducō, —ērě, to lead forth, 378
 effērō, —rě, to carry out, 404
 effervescō, —ērě, to boil up, 394
 efflōrescō, —ērě, to begin to
 bloom, 394
 effōdīō, —ērě, to dig out, 368
 effringō, —ērě, to break open, 383
 effundō, —ērě, to pour out, 373
 ēgčō, —ērě, to be in want, 353
 ēlīcīō, —ērě, to entice out, 368
 ēlīdō, —ērě, to strike out, 371
 ēlīgō, —ērě, to elect, 383
 ēmīcō, —ārě, to shine forth, 347
 ēmīnčō, —ērě, to be prominent,
 353
 ēmō, —ērě, to buy, 389
 ēnēcō, —ārě, to slay, 347
 ēō, īrě, to go, 406
 ērūbescō, —ērě, to turn red, 394
 ērumpō, —ērě, to break out, 376
 ērūčō, —ērě, to dig out, 366
 ēsūrīō, —īrě, to want to eat, 398
 ēvādō, —ērě, to turn out, 371

evānescō, -ěřě, to vanish, 395
 evertō, -ěřě, to overthrow, 373
 evōmō, -ěřě, to vomit up, 386
 exardescō, -ěřě, to take fire, 394
 excellō, -ěřě, to excel, 386
 excidō, -ěřě, to hew out, 371
 excindō, -ěřě, to destroy, 374
 exhauriō, -īřě, to exhaust, 398
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake, 396
 expēriōr, -īrī, to try, 399
 explicō, -ārě, to unfold, 347
 explōdō, -ěřě, to hiss off, 371
 exposcō, -ěřě, to request earnestly, 393
 exprimō, -ěřě, to press out, 389
 existō, -ěřě, to come forth, 374
 exstingūō, -ěřě, to put out, 378
 exstō, -ārě, to exist, 349
 extendō, -ěřě, to stretch out, 371
 extimescō, -ěřě, to fear, 394
 exūō, -ěřě, to put off, 366

F.

fācessō, -ěřě, to accomplish, 390
 fāciō, -ěřě, to do, make, 368
 fallō, -ěřě, to cheat, 387
 farcīō, -īřě, to stuff, 398
 fārī, to speak, 416
 fātěōr, -ērī, to confess, 364
 fāvěō, -ěřě, to favor, 357
 fendō, I fend, 373
 fēriō, -īřě, to strike, beat, 398
 fērō, -řě, to bear, 336, 389, 403
 fērōciō, -īřě, to be unruly, 398
 fervěō, -ěřě, to glow, 357
 fidō, -ěřě, to trust, confide, 373
 figō, -ěřě, to fix, 379
 findō, -ěřě, to split, cleave 374
 fingō, -ěřě, to fashion, 379
 fiō, fiērī, to become, 368, 411
 flāvěō, -ěřě, to be golden yellow,

flāvescō, -ěřě, to become yellow, 394
 flectō, -ěřě, to bend, 380
 flěō, -ěřě, to weep, 356
 flīgō, -ěřě, to strike, 378
 flōřěō, -ěřě, to blossom, 353
 fluctūō, -ārě, to wave, 365
 flūō, -ěřě, to flow, 367
 fōdīō, -ěřě, to dig, 332, 368
 fōřem, I should be, 418
 fōvēō, -ěřě, to cherish, 357
 frangō, -ěřě, to break, 385
 frēmō, -ěřě, to growl, 386
 frīcō, -ārě, to rub, 347
 frīgěō, -ěřě, to be cold, 359
 frūōr, -ī, to enjoy, 396
 fūgiō, -ěřě, to flee, 332, 368
 fulciō, -īřě, to support, 398
 fulgěō, -ěřě, to shine, 360
 fundō, -ěřě, to pour, 373
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 fūrō, -ěřě, to rage, 389

G.

gauděō, -ěřě, to rejoice, 363
 gěmō, -ěřě, to groan, 386
 gērō, -ěřě, to carry on, 389
 gignō, -ěřě, to beget, 386
 gliscō, -ěřě, to grow up, 393
 glūbō, -ěřě, to peel, 375
 grādīōr, -ī, to step, 396
 grandescō, -ěřě, to grow, 395
 grāvescō, -ěřě, to grow heavy, 395
 grūō or rūō? 366

H.

haerěō, -ěřě, to hang, 360
 hauriō, -īřě, to draw, 398
 hěběō, -ěřě, to be blunt, 354
 hěbescō, -ěřě, to grow dull, 394
 hiscō, -ěřě, to yawn, 394

horrĕō, -ĕrĕ, to shudder, 353
 horrescō, -ĕrĕ, to stand on end,
 394
 hūmĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be moist, 354

I.

icō, -ĕrĕ, to strike, 383
 illīnō, -ĕrĕ, to bedaub, 388
 illūcescō, -ĕrĕ, to grow light,
 394
 illūdō, -ĕrĕ, to mock, 371
 imbūō, -ĕrĕ, to dip, dye, 366
 immīnĕō, -ĕrĕ, to threaten, 354
 immīnūō, -ĕrĕ, to lessen, 366
 impendĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hang over,
 361
 implĕō, -ĕrĕ, to fill (up), 356
 implicō, -ārĕ, to involve, 347
 incessō, -ĕrĕ, to fall upon, 390
 incīdō, -ĕrĕ, to fall into, 371
 incīdō, -ĕrĕ, to engrave, 371
 incīpīō, -ĕrĕ, to begin, 368
 incōlō, -ĕrĕ, to inhabit, 386
 incrĕpō, -ārĕ, to scold, 347
 incūbō, -ārĕ, to lie upon, 347
 indicō, -ĕrĕ, to declare, 378
 indīgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be in want, 353
 indōlescō, -ĕrĕ, to feel pain, 394
 indulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to indulge, 359
 indūō, -ĕrĕ, to put on, 366
 īnĕō, -īrĕ, to go into, 407
 infĕrō, -rĕ, to carry into, 404
 ingĕmiscō, -ĕrĕ, to groan, 394
 ingrūō, -ĕrĕ, to rush, 366
 innōtescō, -ĕrĕ, to become known,
 395
 inquām, I say, 416
 inquirō, -ĕrĕ, to inquire, 389
 insĕrō, -ĕrĕ, to plant in, 388
 insĕrō, -ĕrĕ, to insert, 388
 insīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to sit upon, 361
 instrūō, -ĕrĕ, to instruct, 367

insūm, īnessĕ, to be in, 306
 intĕgrascō, -ĕrĕ, to begin anew,
 395
 intellĕgō, -ĕrĕ, to understand,
 383
 interĕō, -īrĕ, to perish, 407
 interfīcīō, -ĕrĕ, to kill, 368, 413
 intersūm, intĕressĕ, to be between,
 306
 intūmescō, -ĕrĕ, to swell, 394
 invĕnīō, -īrĕ, to find out, 398
 invĕtĕrascō, -ĕrĕ, to grow old,
 394
 invīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to envy, 361
 īrascōr, -ī, to grow angry, 396
 irrĕpō, -ĕrĕ, to creep into, 375

J.

jācīō, -ĕrĕ, to throw, 368
 jūbĕō, -ĕrĕ, to order, 360
 jungō, -ĕrĕ, to join, 378
 jūrō, -ārĕ, to swear, 278
 jūvenescō, -ĕrĕ, to grow young,
 395
 jūvō, -ārĕ, to assist, 348

L.

lābōr, -ī, to glide, roll on, 396
 lācessō, -ĕrĕ, to excite, 390
 lācīō, I entice, 368
 laedō, -ĕrĕ, to violate, hurt, 371
 lambō, -ĕrĕ, to lick, 376
 languĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be weary, 353
 lātĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be hid, 353
 lāvō, -ārĕ, to wash, 348
 lĕgō, -ĕrĕ, to read, 383
 lībĕt, it pleases, 420
 līcĕt, it is lawful, 420
 līnō, -ĕrĕ, to smear, 388
 līnquō, -ĕrĕ, to leave, 383
 līquĕfīcīō, -ĕrĕ, to liquefy, 413
 līquĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be fluid, 353

liquet, *it is clear*, 420

livĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be pale*, 354

lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*, 396

lūcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to shine*, 359

lūdō, -ĕrĕ, *to play*, 371

lūgĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to mourn*, 359

lŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to atone for*, 366

lŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to wash*, 366

M.

macrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow meager*,
395

mādĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be wet*, 353

maerĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to grieve*, 354

mālō, mallĕ, *to be more willing*,
405

mandō, -ĕrĕ, *to chew*, 373

mānĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to remain*, 360

mansuĕfāciō, -ĕrĕ, *to tame*, 413

mātūrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to ripen*, 395

mĕdĕōr, -ĕrī, *to cure*, 364

mĕmīnī, -issĕ, *to remember*, 415

mergō, -ĕrĕ, *to dip in*, 384

mĕtīōr, -īrī, *to measure*, 399

mĕtō, -ĕrĕ, *to reap*, 374

mĕtŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to fear*, 366

mīcō, -ārĕ, *to shine*, 347

mīniscōr, *I recollect*, 396

mīnŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to lessen*, 366

miscĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to mix*, 358

mīserĕōr, -ĕrī, *to have pity*, 364

miseret, *it excites pity*, 420

mītescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become mild*,
395

mittō, -ĕrĕ, *to send*, 374

mōlō, -ĕrĕ, *to grind*, 386

mordĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to bite*, 361

mōrīōr, -ī, *to die*, 396

mōvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to move*, 357

mulcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to soothe*, 360

mulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to milk*, 360

N.

nanciscōr, -ī, *to get*, 396

nascōr, -ī, *to be born*, 396

nectō, -ĕrĕ, *to tie*, 380

neglĕgō, -ĕrĕ, *to neglect*, 383

nĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to spin*, 356

nĕquĕō, -īrĕ, *not to be able*, 409

nīgrescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become black*,
395

ningō, -ĕrĕ, *to snow*, 381

nītĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to glitter*, 353

nītōr, -ī, *to stay one's self on*, 396

nōlō, nollĕ, *to be unwilling*, 405

noscō, -ĕrĕ, *to (learn to) know*,
393

nŭbō, -ĕrĕ, *to marry*, 375

nŭō, *I nod*, 366

O.

obdormiscō, -ĕrĕ, *to fall asleep*,
394

ōbĕō, -īrĕ, *to meet*, 407

objīciō, -ĕrĕ, *to throw to*, 368

oblīviscōr, -ī, *to forget*, 396

obmŭtescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow dumb*,
395

obrŭō, -ĕrĕ, *to cover*, 366

obsīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to besiege*, 361

obsistō, -ĕrĕ, *to oppose*, 374

obsōlĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to go out of use*,
356

obsōlescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become ob-*
solete, 394

obsŭm, ōbessĕ, *to be in the way*,
306

obtīnĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to occupy*, 358

obtundō, -ĕrĕ, *to stun*, 371

occīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to set*, 371

occīdō, -ĕrĕ, *to kill*, 371

occŭlō, -ĕrĕ, *to conceal*, 386

occurrō, -ĕrĕ, *to meet*, 387

ōdī, -issĕ, *to hate*, 415

offendō, -ěřě, to offend, 373
 ōlěō, -ěřě, to smell, 353
 ōlěō, I grow, 356
 oportet, it is needful, 420
 oppěriōr, -īrī, to await, 399
 oppōnō, -ěřě, to oppose, 386
 ordīōr, -īrī, to begin, 399
 ōrīōr, -īrī, to rise, 399
 ostendō, -ěřě, to show, 371

P.

pāciscōr, -ī, to strike a bargain, 396
 paenitēt, it causes sorrow, 420
 pallěō, -ěřě, to look pale, 353
 pallescō, -ěřě, to turn pale, 394
 pandō, -ěřě, to spread, 374
 pangō, -ěřě, to strike, drive, 382
 pangō, -ěřě, to bargain, 382
 parcō, -ěřě, to spare, 382
 pāriō, -ěřě, to bring forth, 368
 pascō, -ěřě, to graze, 393
 pascōr, -ī, to feed, 396
 pātěfāciō, -ěřě, to open, 332, 368
 pātěō, -ěřě, to stand open, 353
 pātiōr, -ī, to suffer, 396
 pāvěō, -ěřě, to fear, 357
 pectō, -ěřě, to comb, 380
 pellīciō, -ěřě, to allure, 368
 pellō, -ěřě, to drive (away), 387
 penděō, -ěřě, to hang, 361
 pendō, -ěřě, to weigh, 371
 pěrāgō, -ěřě, to accomplish, 383
 percellō, -ěřě, to beat down, 386
 percensěō, -ěřě, to survey, 358
 perdō, -ěřě, to ruin, 372
 pěrěō, -īřě, to perish, 408
 perfīciō, -ěřě, to finish, 368
 perfrūōr, -ī, to enjoy fully, 396
 pergo, see perrīgo

permittō, -ěřě, to permit, 374
 permulcěō, -ěřě, to appease, 360
 perpětīōr, -ī, to endure, 396
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ěřě, to go on, 378
 perrumpō, -ěřě, to breakthrough, 376
 persuāděō, -ěřě, to persuade, 360
 pertīněō, -ěřě, to pertain, 358
 pessumdō, -āřě, to ruin, 349
 pětō, -ěřě, to seek, 374
 piġet, it grieves, 420
 pingō, -ěřě, to paint, 379
 pinguescō, -ěřě, to grow fat, 395
 pinsō, -ěřě, to pound, 390
 plangō, -ěřě, to beat, lament, 378
 plaudō, -ěřě, to applaud, 371
 plectō, -ěřě, to beat, 380
 plectōr, 396
 plěō, I fill, 356
 plīciō, I fold, 347
 plūmescō, -ěřě, to get feathers, 395
 plūō, -ěřě, to rain, 366
 pollěō, -ěřě, to be powerful, 354
 pōnō, -ěřě, to place, 386
 poscō, -ěřě, to demand, 370, 393
 possīděō, -ěřě, to possess, 361
 possūm, possě, to be able, 401
 pōtō, -āřě, to drink, 278, 347
 praecellō, -ěřě, to excel, 386
 praecinō, -ěřě, to sing to one, 387
 praedicō, -ěřě, to predict, 378
 praefěrō, -řě, to prefer, 404
 praescribō, -ěřě, to prescribe, 375
 praesīděō, -ěřě, to preside, 361
 praestō, -āřě, to afford, 349
 praesūm, praessě, to be over, 306
 praetěrěō, -īřě, to pass by, 407
 pranděō, -ěřě, to breakfast, 361
 prěhendō, -ěřě, to seize, 373

prēmō, -ērě, to press, 389
 próficiscōr, -ī, to set out, start,
 396

prōfligō, -ārě, to strike down, 378

prōmittō, -ērě, to promise, 374

prōmō, -ērě, to take out, 385

prosternō, -ērě, to overthrow,
 388

prōsum, prōdessě, to be useful,
 306

prōtēgō, -ērě, to protect, 378

prōvidēō, -ērě, to provide, 361

psallō, -ērě, to play on the ci-
 thern, 389

pūdět, it shames, 420

pūřascō, -ērě, to become a
 child, 395

pungō, -ērě, to pierce, sting, 382

pūtrescō, -ērě, to rot, 394

Q.

quaerō, -ērě, to seek, desire, 389

quaeso, I beseech, 418

quātīō, -ērě, to shake, 332, 368

quēō, -īrě, to be able, 409

quērōr, -ī, to complain, 396

quiescō, -ērě, to rest, 393

R.

rādō, -ērě, to scrape, 371

rāpīō, -ērě, to seize, 332, 368

rēcensēō, -ērě, to review, 358

rēc rūdescō, -ērě, to break open
 afresh, 395

rēcurreō, -ērě, to run back, 387

rēdargūō, -ērě, to refute, 366

reddō, -ērě, to give back, 372

rēdēō, -īrě, to return, 407

rēdīmō, -ērě, to buy back, 389

rēfellō, -ērě, to refute, 387

rēfercīō, -īrě, to cram, 398

rēfērō, -rě, to bring back, 404

rēflūō, -ērě, to flow back, 367

rēgō, -ērě, to rule, govern, 378

rēlēgō, -ērě, to read over, 383

rēlinquō, -ērě, to leave (behind),
 383

rēmānēō, -ērě, to remain, 360

rēmīniscōr, -ī, to remember, 396

rēnīdēō, -ērě, to shine, 354

rēōr, -ērī, to think, 364

rēpellō, -ērě, to repel, 387

rēpērīō, -īrě, to find, 398

rēpētō, -ērě, to repeat, 374

rēplēō, -ērě, to fill (up), 356

rēpō, -ērě, to creep, crawl, 375

rēposcō, -ērě, to demand back,
 393

rēquiescō, -ērě, to rest, 393

rēsīdēō, -ērě, to remain behind,
 361

rēsīpiscō, -ērě, to come to one's
 self again, 394

rēsōnō, -ārě, to resound, 347

respīcīō, -ērě, to consider, 368

respondēō, -ērě, to answer, 361

restītūō, -ērě, to restore, 366

rēvertōr, -ī, to turn back, 396

rēvīviscō, -ērě, to revive, 394

rīdēō, -ērě, to laugh, 360

rīgēō, -ērě, to be stiff, 353

rōdō, -ērě, to gnaw, 371

rūbēō, -ērě, to be red, 353

rumpō, -ērě, to break, 376

rūō, -ērě, to rush forth, 366

S.

saepīō, -īrě, to hedge in, 398

sālīō, -īrě, to leap, 398

salvē, hail, 417

sancīō, -īrě, to sanction, 398

sāpīō, -ērě, to be wise, 368

sarcīō, -īrě, to mend, 398

sātisdō, -ārě, to give bail, 349

scábō, -ěřě, to scratch, 376
 scalpō, -ěřě, to carve, 375
 scandō, -ěřě, to climb, 373
 scátěō, -ěřě, to gush, 354
 scindō, -ěřě, to cut, 374
 sciō, -īřě, to know, 338
 sciscō, -ěřě, to decree, 394
 scribō, -ěřě, to write, 375
 sculpō, -ěřě, to chisel, 375
 sécō, -āřě, to cut, 347
 sěděō, -ěřě, to sit, 361
 sěnescō, -ěřě, to grow old, 394
 sentiō, -īřě, to feel, perceive, 398
 sěpěliō, -īřě, to bury, 398
 sěquōr, -ī, to follow, 396
 sěřō, -ěřě, to sow, 388
 sěřō, -ěřě, to join, 388
 serpō, -ěřě, to creep, 375
 sidō, -ěřě, to sit down, 374
 silěō, -ěřě, to be silent, 353
 sīnō, -ěřě, to let, 388
 sistō, -ěřě, to stop, 374
 sōlēō, -ěřě, to be wont, 363
 solvō, -ěřě, to loose, 366
 sōnō, -āřě, to sound, 347
 sorběō, -ěřě, to sip, 353
 sorděō, -ěřě, to be dirty, 353
 spargō, -ěřě, to scatter, 384
 spēciō, I see, 368
 spernō, -ěřě, to despise, 388
 splenděō, -ěřě, to gleam, 353
 sponděō, -ěřě, to pledge, 361
 spūō, -ěřě, to spit, 366
 squālěō, -ěřě, to be filthy, 354
 stātūō, -ěřě, to set, place, 366
 sternō, -ěřě, to strew, 388
 sternūō, -ěřě, to sneeze, 366
 stertō, -ěřě, to snore, 373
 stingūō, I put out, 378
 stō, stāřě, to stand, 349, 370
 strěpō, -ěřě, to make a noise, 376
 strěděō, -ěřě, to whiz, creak, 361

stringō, -ěřě, to bind, 379
 strūō, -ěřě, to build, 367
 stūděō, -ěřě, to be zealous, 353
 stūpěō, -ěřě, to be amazed, 353
 suāděō, -ěřě, to advise, 360
 sūběō, -īřě, to come under, 407
 sūbigō, -ěřě, to subdue, 383
 subjicīō, -ěřě, to subject, 368
 subsūm, subessě, to be under, 306
 succensěō, -ěřě, to be angry, 353
 succurrō, -ěřě, to succor, 387
 suescō, -ěřě, to become used, 393
 sūgō, -ěřě, to suck, 378
 sum, essě, to be, 303
 sūmō, -ěřě, to take, 385
 sūō, -ěřě, to sew, 366
 sūperbīō, -īřě, to be proud, 398
 sūpersěděō, -ěřě, to forbear, 361
 sūpersum, sūpěressě, to remain
 over, 306
 supprīmō, -ěřě, to keep back, 389
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ěřě, to rise, 378
 suspendō, -ěřě, to hang, 371

T.

taedet, it wearies, 420
 tangō, -ěřě, to touch, 382
 těgō, -ěřě, to cover, 378
 temnō, I despise, 385
 tendō, -ěřě, to spread, 371
 těněō, -ěřě, to hold, 358
 těněrescō, -ěřě, to grow tender,
 395
 tergěō, -ěřě } to wipe, 360, 384
 tergō, -ěřě }
 těrō, -ěřě, to rub, wear out, 388
 texō, -ěřě, to weave, 390
 tíměō, -ěřě, to fear, 353
 tingō (tingūō), -ěřě, to stain, 378
 tollō, -ěřě, to lift, take away, 389
 tonděō, -ěřě, to shear, 361
 tōnō, -āřě, to thunder, 347

torpěō, -ērě, *to be numb*, 353
 torquēō, -ērě, *to torture*, 359
 torrěō, -ērě, *to roast*, 358
 trādō, -ěrě, *to deliver*, 372
 tráhō, -ěrě, *to draw*, 378
 transěō, -īřě, *to pass over*, 407
 trěmō, -ěrě, *to tremble*, 386
 tribūō, -ěrě, *to confer on*, 366
 trūdō, -ěrě, *to thrust*, 371
 tůměō, -ērě, *to swell*, 353
 tundō, -ěrě, *to thump*, 371
 turgěō, -ērě, *to swell*, 360

U.

ulciscōr, -ī, *to avenge*, 396
 ungō (ungūō), -ěrě, *to anoint*, 378
 urgěō, -ērě, *to urge*, 360
 ūrō, -ěrě, *to burn*, 389
 ūtōr, -ī, *to use*, 396

V.

vādō, -ěrě, *to go*, 371
 vālě, *farewell*, 417

věhō, -ěrě, *to carry*, 378
 vellō, -ěrě, *to pluck, pull*, 389
 vendō, -ěrě, *to sell*, 372
 vĕněō, -īřě, *to be for sale*, 408
 vĕnīō, -īřě, *to come*, 398
 vĕnumdō, -ārě, *to sell*, 349
 vergō, -ěrě, *to verge*, 384
 verrō, -ěrě, *to sweep*, 389
 vertō, -ěrě, *to turn*, 373
 vescōr, -ī, *to feed upon, eat*, 396
 vĕtō, -ārě, *to forbid*, 347
 vĕdĕō, -ērě, *to see*, 361
 vĕgĕō, -ērě, *to be vigorous*, 353
 vĕlescō, -ěrě, *to become vile*, 395
 vĕncĕō, -īřě, *to bind*, 398
 vĕncō, -ěrě, *to conquer*, 383
 vĕřĕō, -ērě, *to be green*, 353
 vĕsō, -ěrě, *to visit*, 390
 vĕvō, -ěrě, *to live*, 367
 vĕlō, vĕllĕ, *to be willing*, 405
 volvō, -ěrě, *to roll, turn*, 366
 vĕmō, -ěrě, *to vomit*, 386
 vĕvĕō, -ērě, *to vow*, 357

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

The references are to paragraphs.

A.

-a, Nouns in, of 1st decl., 56; of 3d decl., 83; acc. sing. 3d decl., 153; changed in compounds, 517

ā, ab, abs, 655; with abl. of separation, 620; of agent, 603; in compounds, 519; with negative force, 531. 2

Abbreviations, 944

abesse — non multum abest quin, nihil abest quin, 766; tantum abest ut. . ut, 760

abhine, denoting *time*, 674

abhorrere, with abl., 620, 621

ABLATIVE, 49; sing. of 3d decl., 140, 144; SYNTAX, 603-628; abl. of agent, 603; of cause, 603, 604; of comparison, 609-612; of difference, 612; of limitation, 608; of manner, 613, 614; with opus est, 624; of means or instrument, 605-607; of plenty and want, 622, 623; of price, 617-619; of quality, 615, 616; of separation, 620, 621; in special constructions, 625; of time, 672; with prepositions, 445, 446, 655-671; of place, 687, 688; with names of towns, 683-686; of distance how far, 681

Ablative absolute, 836, 837

absolvere, with gen., 570

absque, 656

abstinere, with abl., 620

Abstract substantives, 37; for concretes, 691, 693; in the plur., 694, 695; derivation, 488, 493

abundare, with abl., 622

-ābūs for -īs, 1st decl., 59

abūti, with abl., 626

ac, atque, 849

Acatalectic verses, 907

Accent, rules of, 29-31

acceptus, with dat., 598

accidit, with ut, 759

accipere, with dat. of purpose, 595; with acc. & infin., 812; with gerundive, 841

accusare, with gen., 570

ACCUSATIVE, 49; sing. 3d decl., 143; plur., 148; in -ās, 157; SYNTAX, 574-586; with active transitive verbs, 574; with intransitive verbs, 575, 576; with compound verbs, 577; with verbs of naming, 578; with verbs of teaching and asking, 579-582; with impersonal verbs, 583, 584; in exclamations, 585; used adverbially, 586; with prepositions, 629-654; with names of towns, 683; to denote space, 679, 680; time how long, 674; how old, 678

Accusative with Infin., 810-820; as subject, 811; as object, 812; after verbs of wishing, &c.,

- 814, 815; *tenses*, 818, 819; in *indirect* discourse, 825; how to *translate*, 816
- Active voice, 272; its participles, 829
- ād**, 629; *assimilated* in composition, 520; in compounds with *dat.*, 592; with *gerund*, 845; with *interest*, 573; with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable*, 599
- adducere, with *ut*, 758
- ādēs**, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 487
- adipisci, with *ut*, 758
- ADJECTIVES, 32, 198-227; of *1st* and *2d* decl., 72-77; of *3d* decl., 137-142; of three terminations, 199; of two terminations, 200; of one termination, 141, 201; defective, 203, 204; indeclinable, 205; indefinite, 268; pronominal, 269; comparison, 207-227; used as *substantives*, 701, 702; used instead of *adverbs*, 550; used instead of *possessives*, 703; denoting a *part* of a thing, 704; *appositive*, 550; *attributive*, 546; *predicative*, 536, 544; in *relative* clauses, 554; with *gen.*, 567; with *dat.*, 598-600; with *abl.*, 623, 625; position, 559, 561; derivation, 496-511; special uses, 701-709; in *abl. absol.*, 836
- Adjuncts of the predicate, 558; of the subject, 558
- adjuvare, with *acc.*, 589
- admonere, with *gen.*, 568; with *ut*, 758; with *acc. & inf.*, 814
- Adonic verse, 925. 1
- adspargere, with *dat. & acc.*, 593
- adulescens for in *adulescentia*, 691; in *adulescentia*, 673
- Advantage, *dative* of, 587
- advenire, with *in & acc.*, 690
- adventu, *abl. of time*, 673
- Adverbial accusative, 586; phrases, 431
- ADVERBS, 32, 424-446; derivation of, 425-434; from adjectives of the *1st & 2d* decl., 425; of the *3d* decl., 426; of *time*, 437; of *manner*, 438; of *order*, 242; *numerical*, 241; of *place*, 436; used as *prepositions*, 436; comparison, 440-442; with *gen.*, 566. 6; correlative, 439; position, 562
- Adversative conjunctions, 451, 853
- adversus, adversum, 632
- ae**, changed in compounds, 517
- aedes & templum omitted, 566. 9
- aeger, with *abl.*, 604
- aequalis, w. *gen.*, 598
- aequare, w. *acc.* 589
- aeque ac, 849
- aestimare, w. *gen.*, 569; w. *abl.*, 617
- aetate, *abl. of time*, 673
- aeus**, *suffix*, 508
- affatim, w. *gen.*, 566. 6
- afferre, w. *dat.*, 592
- afficere, w. *abl.*, 607
- affirmare, with *acc. & infin.*, 812
- Agent, *abl. of*, with *ā* or *āb*, 603; *dat. of*, 596, 597; w. *opera*, per, 606
- agere, with *annus*, to express how *old*, 678; id agere, with *ut*, 758
- agnomen, 194
- Agreement of predicate and subject, 536-539; of attribute and substantive, 546, 547; of apposition and substantive, 548-550; of pronoun & antecedent, 551-557
- ajo, conjugated, 416; its use, 823
- ai**, Nouns in, *3d* decl., 91

- Alcaic verses, 925.9.10; stanza, 927.1
 Alemanian stanza, 927. 9
ālī- in *ālīquis* rejected, 723; 762
alienāre, with **ā** and **abl.**, 621
aliēnus, with **abl.**, 925
alīquanto, with *comparatives*, 706
aliquantum, w. **gen.**, 566. 6
alīquid, with **gen.**, 566. 5; used *adverbially*, 586
ālīquis, 266; its use, 722; after *si emphatic*, 723
-ālīs, *suffix*, 501
alīter atque, 849
alius, 202, 728; *alius. . alius*, *alī. . alī*, 729; quantity in **gen.**, 861
 Alphabet, 3; vowels and diphthongs, 4, 5; consonants, 6, 7
alter, 202, 728; *alter. . alter*, 729
 Alternative questions, 798
altēro tanto, 612
alterūter, 202
amans, w. **gen.**, 567. 2
amīcus, w. **dat.** & **gen.**, 598
amplius, without *quam*, 610
an, *interrog.*, 797, 798; *annon*, 798
Anacrūsis, 925. 10
anceps syllāba, 908
animadvertēre, w. **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 Animals, Names of, 47
anīmo, **abl.** of *manner*, 613; *anīmo aequo*, without **cum**, 613
 Answer, Form of, 799
ante, 631; in composition, 521; in compounds with **dat.** 592; to denote distance of *time*, 675; with *quam*, 675; *ante diem*, 931
 Antecedent of relative, 553; incorporated in the relative clause, 719; agreement, 551-557
antepenult, 25
antēquam, 779, 780
-ānus, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507
anxius, with **abl.**, 604
Apocōpe, 894
Apodōsis, 787
apparēre, with **two nom.**, 540
appāret, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
appellāre, with **two acc.**, 578
appellāri, with **two nom.**, 540
 Appendix to 3d conjugation, 331
 Apposition, 548; in relative clause, 554; **gen.** of *specification* in its stead, 566. 7; expressing *time*, 549; with names of *towns*, 684, 685; agreement, 548-550
aptus, with **dat.**, 598; with **gerund.** & **gerundive**, 844; with **qui** & **subjunct.**, 793
apud, 630
-ār, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94, 95
arbitrāri, with **two acc.**, 578; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
arcessēre, with **gen.**, 570
 Archilochian verse, 925. 11; stanzas, 927. 10-13
arguēre, with **gen.**, 570
-ārīs, *suffix*, 501
 Aristophanic verse, 925. 2
-ārīūm, *suffix*, 482
-ārīūs, *suffix*, 501
 Arsis, 900
 Article, not in Latin, 57
ās, Unit of *value*, 937
-ās, Nouns in, 1st decl., 60; 3d decl., 105-107; **-ās**, Greek **acc. pl.** 3d decl., 157; *suffix*, 507
 Asclepiadean verses, 925. 7. 8; stanzas, 827. 4-8
-asco, Verbs in, 472
assēqui, with **ut**, 758
 Assimilation of prepositions, 518
assuescēre, with **inf.**, 809
Asyndeton, 850
at, 853

atque, 849; atque is, 715
 atqui, 853
 Attraction of mood, 826
 Attribute, its agreement, 546, 547
 Attributive adjective, 546
 -ātūs, *suffix*, 503
 au, changed in compounds, 517
 audēre, with *inf.*, 809
 audire, with *acc. & inf.*, 812; with
 pres. participle, 813, 835
 auditu, 848
 aurēus, *the coin*, 938
 -aus, Nouns in, 3d decl., 123
 aut, 852
 autem, 853; its place, 564
 AUTHORS, LATIN, 945
 Auxiliary esse, 303
 -ax, Nouns in, 3d decl., 132; *suffix*,
 498

B.

b changed to p, 375
 belli, in connection with domi,
 686; bello Antiōchi, 673; bello
 Persico, 673; in bello, 673
 bene, compared 441; with emēre
 & vendēre, 619
 benedicēre, with *dat.*, 589
 -bēr, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96
 -bīlīs, *suffix*, 498
 bini, instead of duo, 238
 bis die, *abl. of time*, 673
 blandiri, with *dat.*, 589
 -bs, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126
 -būlūm, *suffix*, 494
 -bundūs, *suffix*, 496

C.

-c, Nouns in, 3d decl., 89
 caelum, *decl.*, 191
 Caesūra, 909-911; of the hexa-
 mēter, 915; of the trimēter, 924

Calendar, Roman, 929-936
 Calends, 929
 capīo, -ēre, conjugated, 331
 Capital initial letters, 3
 capitis et capite damnāre, 570
 caput, 129
 Cardinal numerals, 228-233
 carēre, with *abl.*, 622
 carus, with *dat.*, 598
 CASE-ENDINGS of the 5 declen-
 sions, 54
 Cases, 35, 49; dependent, 50; in-
 dependent, 50; of adjectives &
 nouns used adverbially, 430;
 construction of, 566-690
 casu, *abl. of manner*, 614
 casus obliqui, 50; recti, 50
 Catalectic verses, 907
 causa, w. *gen. & mea, tua &c.*, 566. 8,
 604; w. *gerund & gerundive*, 843
 Causal clauses, w. *subjunctive*, 782
 Causal conjunctions, 452, 456;
 their uses, 781-786, 851
 cave, cave ne, *in prohibitions*, 806
 cavēre, with *dat. & acc.*, 591
 -cē, -cīnē, appended to hic, 254
 celāre, with *two acc.*, 579
 celer, special forms of, 138, 140
 -ceps, Compounds in, 3d decl., 126
 cernēre, with *acc. & inf.*, 812; with
 pres. part., 813
 cernēres, *potential subjunct.*, 750
 certe, certo, 430
 certum est, w. *acc. & inf.*, 811
 cetēri, *defective*, 204, 728
 Characteristic of stem; 52
 circa, circum, 634; in composi-
 tion, 522; compounds of, w. *acc.*,
 577
 circiter, 635
 circuīre, 522
 circumdāre, w. *acc.*, 593

cis, citra, 633

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS, 346-399

coarguere, w. **gen.**, 570

cogere, with **in & acc.**, 690

cogitare, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

cognomen, 194; with **dat.**, 594

cognoscere, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

Collective noun, 38; with plural verb, 543

collocare, *to let*, w. **abl.**, 617; with **in & abl.**, 689

cōm = **cum**, in composition, 523; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

Common gender, 45; common noun, 38; common quantity, 27, 863

commonere, commonefacere, with **gen.**, 568

communis, w. **gen.**, 567. 3; w. **dat.**, 598

Comparative, how formed, 209; how declined, 139; wanting, 224; with **abl.**, 609; with the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, 705; used in reference to *only two* objects, 709; its force increased, 706; with **-cūlus**, 510; followed by *quam ut, quam qui* w. **sub-junct.**, 795

Comparative conjunctions, 461, 772; comparative value with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, 619

Comparison of adjectives, 207-227; irregular and defective, 220-227; of participles, 227; of adverbs, 227, 440-442; of two qualities of the *same* object, 708

comperire, with **acc. & inf.**, 812

complere, with **abl.**, 622

complures, **decl.**, 221

compos, with **gen.**, 567. 1

COMPOSITION OF WORDS, 465, 512-531

Compound adjectives, 531; **comp.** forms of the verb, 303-315; **comp.** numerals, 231, 232; **comp.** substantives, 530; declined, 192; **comp.** tenses of the passive, 309; **comp.** verbs, 513-529; **comp.** verses, 903, 925

Compounds, *Quantity*, 883; *syllabification*, 24; of *dare*, 572; of *essē*, 306; of *facere*, 413; of *ire*, 407; of *prepositions* with **dat.**, 592; of *prepositions* with **acc.**, 577

con see **com**

concedere, with **ut**, 758

Concessive conjunctions, 458; uses, 767-771

Concessive subjunctive, 753

Concrete substantives, 37; used for abstracts, 691

condemnare, with **gen.**, 570

Conditional conjunctions, 457; use, 787-790; conditional sentences, 787-788; conditional wishes w. **dūm, mōdō**, 790

conducere, *to hire*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841

conducit, with **acc. & inf.**, 811

confidere, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 628

congregari, with **in & acc.**, 690

CONJUGATION, 35, 270, 295; *First*, 316, 317, 327, 346-350; *Second*, 318, 319, 328, 351-364; *Third*, 320, 321, 329, 365-396; appendix to *Third*, verbs in **Ū**, 331, 332; *Fourth*, 322, 323, 330, 397, 398; of deponents, 324-330; *periphrastic*, 311-314; *special* forms in **conjug.**, 333-338; of *irregular* verbs, 400-413; of *defective*

verbs, 414-418; of *impersonal verbs*, 419-423

CONJUNCTIONS, 32, 447-462; co-ordinating, 448-453; use of, 849-857; subordinating, 454-462; use of, 749-790; place of, 564

Conjunctive clauses, 755 ff.

Consecutive conjunctions, 460; use of, 756-766

consēqui, with *ut*, 758

considēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

consilīo, *abl.* of *manner*, 613

Consonants, Classification of, 6

Consonant-stems, 3d *decl.*, 79, 81; of *verbs*, 339, 345

constāre, *to cost*, with *abl.*, 617

constat, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

constituēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES, 566-690

consul, used for *consulātus*, 692

consulēre, its construction, 591; with *ut*, 758

contendēre, with *ut*, 758

contentus, with *abl.*, 625

Continental pronunciation, 15

continēre; *vix me continēo quin*, 766

contingit, with *ut*, 759

contra, 636

Contracted syllables, *Quantity of*, 860; contracted vowels in *conjugation*, 344

convenīre, with *in* & *acc.*, 690

convēnit, *w. acc.* & *inf.* 811

convincēre, with *gen.*, 570

Co-ordinating conjunctions, 448-453; use of, 849-857

Copulative conjunctions, 449; use of, 849-851

coram, 658

Correlatives, 269, 439

Corresponsive conjunctions, 858

Countries, Gender of names of, 42

creāre, with *two acc.*, 578

creāri, with *two nom.*, 540

credēre, with *dat.*, 589; with *two acc.*, 578; in the *pass. w. two nom.*, 540; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

credēres, potential subjunct., 750

credibile est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

crime or charge, *gen.* of, 570

crimīne or nomīne, with *gen.*, 570

-crūm, *suffix*, 495

cujas, *patrial* *adject.*, 264

-cūlūm, *suffix*, 494

-cūlūs, *suffix*, 480, 510

cum, *prep.*, 659; with *abl.* of *manner*, 613; in composition, 523

cum, *conjunction*; *cum temporal*, 774; *cum whenever*, 740; *cum causal*, 786; *cum concessive*, 769; *cum historical*, 774; *cum primum*, 773; *cum quis*, 723, 762

cum-tum, 857

cunctus, Nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687

-cundūs, *suffix*, 496

-cunque, appended to pronouns, 258; followed by *indic.*, 748

cupēre, *w. inf.* or *w. acc.* & *inf.*, 814

cupīdus, with *gen.*, 567. 1

cura, *ut*, *imperat.* phrase, 806

curāre, *w. ut*, 758; *w. gerundive*, 841

D.

Dactylic Hexamēter, 914 ff.

damnāre, with *gen.*, 570. 1

dāre, 349; with *two acc.*, 578; with *two dat.*, 595; with *gerundive*, 841

Dates, Roman, 931; of year, 935; how to turn into English, 934

DATIVE, 49; *pl. 3d decl.*, 149; *4th decl.*, 172; SYNTAX, 587-602; *indirect* object, *advantage*, 587; with

- intransitive* verbs, 589; with *transitive* verbs, 588; with *compounds* of *ad*, *ante*, &c., 592; with verbs of *twofold* construction, 593; of *purpose*, with verbs of *giving* and *receiving*, 595; *ethical*, 602; of *agency*, with *gerundive*, 596, 741, 840; with *passives*, 590, 597; of *possession*, 594; with *adjectives*, 598–600; with *substantives*, 601
- de**, 657; with *accusare*, 570; negative meaning in compounds, 531. 2
- dea, deus, **decl.**, 59, 67
- debere, with **inf.**, 809; with the force of the *potential*, 747
- decedere, with **abl.**, 620
- decet, dedecet, with **acc.**, 583
- declarare, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
- DECLENSION, 35, 51; general rules, 55; *First*, 56–62; *Second*, 63–71; *Third*, 78–170; *Fourth*, 171–175; *Fifth*, 176–180; of *adjectives*, 72–77, 137–142; of *compounds*, 192. *Case-endings* of the 5 declensions, 54
- Defective substantives, in *case*, 182–185; in *number*, 186–188; defective adjectives, 203, 204; defective comparison, 224, 225; of adverbs, 442; defective verbs, 414–418
- deficere, with **acc.**, 589
- defigere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689
- Degree of difference, in the **abl.**, 612
- delectari, with **abl.**, 604
- demergere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689
- demonstrare, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
- Demonstrative pronouns, 252–254; position, 561; agreement, 551, 552; where not used, 716
- Denominative inceptives, 391 395; denominative verbs, 475–479
- depellere, with **abl.**, 620
- Dependent cases, 50
- Dependent clause, 742; in *indirect* discourse, 825; dependent uses of the *subjunctive*, 755 ff
- Deponents, 276; conjugation of, 324–330; of the *first* conj., 350; of the *second*, 364; of the *third*, 396; of the *fourth*, 399; principles, 831
- DERIVATION OF WORDS, 465, 467–511; of adjectives, 496–511; of verbs, 470–479; of substantives, 480–495; of adverbs, 425–434
- Desiderative verbs, 473
- designare, with **two acc.**, 578
- desinere, with **inf.**, 809
- Determinative pronouns, 255
- deterere, with **abl.**, 620; with *ne* or *quominus*, 764
- deus, **decl.**, 59, 67
- Diaeresis, in pronunciation, 13; in prosody, 892, 909
- Diastole, 895
- dicere, with **two acc.**, 578; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
- dici, with **two nom.**, 540; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 821
- dictu, 848
- dicus**, Adjectives in, 216; quantity, 886
- dies, 180; in *diem*, 670; *ante diem*, 931
- differre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
- difficilis, 215; **adverb.**, 429; with **dat.**, 598; with *gerund.* or *supine*, 848
- diffidere, with **dat.**, 589, 628
- dignari, with **abl.**, 625

dignus, with **abl.**, 625; dignus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. c
 diligens, with **gen.**, 567. 2
 Dimēter, 904
 Diminutive substantives, 480, 481; adjectives, 510; verbs, 474
 Diphthongs, 5
 Dipody, 906
 Direct discourse, 823; dir. object, in the **acc.**, 574-577; direct questions, 796-800
dis-, inseparable **prep.**, 516; compounds of, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 discēre, with **inf.**, 809; with **ā**, for docēri, 579
 discernēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 discessu, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 discrepāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 450; use of, 852
 dispar, with **dat.**, 598
 displicēre, with **dat.**, 589
 displicet, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 dissentīre, with **ā** and **abl.**, 621
 dissimilis, 215; with **dat.**, 598
 Distance *how far* in the **acc.** or **abl.**, 681; of *time* how long before or after, 675
 distāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Distich, 926; Elegiac D., 919
 distinguēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Distributive numerals, 237, 238
 docēre, with **two acc.**, 579
 dolēre, with **acc.**, 575; with **abl.**, 604; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 783
 dolo, fraude, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 domi bellique, 686; domus, 173; used like name of *town*, 686
 donāre, with *twofold* construction, 593
 donec = quamdiū, 776, 777

Double questions, 798
 Dubitative subjunctive, 754
 dubīto & non dubīto quin, 766
 dubium non est quin, 766
 ducēre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; with **gen.**, 569
 dulcis, with **dat.**, 589
 dum, *while*, with **pres.**, 734, 776; *until*, 777; *if only*, 790
 dummodo, 790

E.

e, Quantity of, in **-ei**, 5th decl., 178, 861; changed to **-i**, 517
-ē, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60
-ē, Nouns in, 3d decl., 84; **abl. sing.**, 3d decl., 144
ē, **ex**, 660; in composition, 524; with *negative* power, 531. 2
 edicēre, with **ut**, 758
 edocēre, with **two acc.**, 579
 efficēre, with **two acc.**, 578; with **ut**, 758
 egēnus, *compar.*, 217
 egēre, with **abl.** or **gen.**, 622
-ēis, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 484
 ejicēre, with **abl.**, 620
 ejus, eōrum, eārum, as *possesives*, 247, 711
 ejusmodi, w. **ut** or **qui** & **subjunct.**, 793. a
-ēiā, *suffix*, 489
 Elegiac Distich, 919; E. Pentameter, 918
 eligēre, with **two acc.**, 578
 Elision, 887-889
-ēiūs, *suffix*, 481, 510
 emēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619
 Emotion, verbs of, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 785
 Emphasis, as affected by the *order* of words, 565

-en, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 93
 Enclitics, control accent, 31; quantity, 880
 Endings in declension, 54; in comparison, 209; in conjugation, 294
-endūs, -undūs, endings of *gerundive*, 337
 English method of pronunciation, 16-20
 enim & nam, 854; position, 564
 Ennehemimēres, 912
-ensīs, *suffix*, 501, 507
-entūōr, -entissīmūs, 216
-entūs, *suffix*, 502
 Epenthēsis, 896
 Epicene nouns, 47
 Epistolary tenses, 740
 eques, in *collective* sense, 698
 Equivalentents of supine, 848
-ēr, Nouns in, **2d decl.**, 64, 65
-ēr, -ēr, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 96-98
-ēr, -ā, -ūm, Adject. in, 74-76
-ēr, -īs, -ē, Adjectives in, 138; superl., 213
-ērē for **-ērūnt** (Perf. Ind.), 334
erga, 637
 ergo, 855; with **gen.**, 566. s
 erudīre, w. **abl.**, 607
 erumpēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 620
-ēs, Greek nouns in, **1st decl.**, 60;
 -ēs, -ēs, nouns in, **3d decl.**, 108-110; -ēs, **nom. plur.**, Greek nouns, 157; proper names in -ēs, 151
-escō, verbs in, 472
 essē, conjugated, 303; with **abl.**, 617; with **gen.** as *predicate*, 571; with **gen.** of *value*, 569; with **gen. & abl.** of *quality*, 556. s., 615; with **dat.** of *possessor*, 594; with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; the **inf.** esse as *subject*, 808; as *object*, 809

est, qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b.
 ēt, 849; used after multi, 850; et is, et is non, 715
 etēnim, 854
 Ethical Dative, 602
 etiam, 849; with *compar.*, 706
 etiamsi, w. **indic. & subjunct.**, 770
 etsi, 771
-ētūm, *suffix*, 482
 ETYMOLOGY, 1, 32-464
eu, 11; vocative-ending, 69
-eus, Greek nouns in, **2d decl.**, 69
-ēūs, *suffix*, 500; **-ēūs**, *suffix*, 506
 evadēre, with **two nom.**, 540
 evēnit, with ut, 759
-ex, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 133
 Exclamations, in **acc.**, 585
 Existence, General expressions of, w. **subjunct.**, 793. b
 existimāre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass. w. two nom.**, 540
 expēdit, with **acc. & inf.**, 811
 expers, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 explēre, with **abl.**, 622
 existēre, with **two nom.**, 540
 existunt qui, with **subjunct.**, 793
 exspectatiōne, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
 External qualities in the **abl.**, 616
extra, 638
 extrēmus, with **subst.** to denote *part* thereof, 704

F.

faba, in a *collective* sense, 698
 fac, with ut or **subjunct.**, 806
 facēre, with **two acc.**, 578; with **gen.**, 569; with ut, 758; with **pres. partic.**, 835; facere non possum quin, 766
 facilis, 215; **adv.**, 429; w. **dat.** 598; w. **ad & gerund** or w. **supine**, 848

factu, 848
 fallit, with **acc.**, 583
 fama est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 familiāris, with **gen.** or **dat.**, 598
 familiās, old **gen.**, 58
 fas est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811; with **supine**, 847
 fatēri, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 favēre, with **dat.**, 589
 Feet, metrical, 898
 Feminine, Rule of gender, 42, 43
 fertur, with **nom.** & **inf.**, 821
 -**ficus**, Adjectives in, *compared*, 216
 fidēre, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 589, 628
 fiēri, with **two nom.**, 540; with **gen.**, 571; with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; *quantity*, 412, 861
 fiēri non potest quin, 766
 Fifth Declension, 176-178
 Figures of prosody, 887-897
 filiā, filiūs, 59, 67
 Final conjunctions, 459; *use of*, 756-766
 Final syllables, *Quantity*, 877-879
 Finite verb, 285
 First Conjugation, *Active*, 316; *Passive*, 317; *Deponent*, 327; *Verbs of*, 346-350
 First Declension, 56-62
 fit, with **ut**, 759
 flagitāre, with **two acc.**, 580; with **ut**, 758
 flocci, **gen.** of *value*, 569
 for, corresponding to **dat.**, 588
 fore ut, to express **fut. inf.**, 819
 Formation of the *Genitive*, **3d decl.**, 82-136; of the *Principal Parts*, 339-399; of the *Tenses*, 298-302
 the former, hic, ille, 713
 Fourth Conjugation, *Active*, 322;

Passive, 323; *Deponent*, 330; *Verbs of*, 347-399
 Fourth Declension, 171-175
 Fractions, denoted by ordinals, 236; of weight, 942
 fraude, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 Frequentative verbs, 471
 fretus, w. **abl.**, 625
 frugi, **indecl.**, 205; **compar.**, 222
 frui, with **abl.**, 626
 fugit, with **acc.**, 583
 fungi, with **abl.**, 626
 Future I & II, 280; how formed, 298, 300; *wanting* in the *subjunct.*, 302, 746; **Fut. Inf.**, 819; **Fut. Inf. Pass.**, 315, 847; **Fut. Inf.** of *deponents*, 325; **Fut. Participle**, 301; *syntax*, 736-739
 futūrum esse, **ut for fut. inf.**, 819

G.

gallīna, in a *collective* sense, 698
 gaudēre, with **abl.**, 604; with **quod**, 783; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815
 GENDER, 35; natural or grammatical, 39, 48; of adjectives, 48; in **1st decl.**, 61, 62; in **2d decl.**, 70, 71; in **3d decl.**, 158-170; in **4th decl.**, 174, 175; in **5th decl.**, 179, 180; of the *predicate*, 544
 General relatives, 258, 259; followed by the **indic.**, 748
 General value, expressed by the **abl.**, 618
 GENITIVE, 49; endings of, 51; formation in **3d decl.**, 82; **gen. pl.** in -**ūm** for -**ōrūm**, **2d decl.**, 68; of **3d decl.** in -**īūm**, 146, 147; in -**ōn**, 156; in -**īūs**, 77; SYNTAX, 566-573; with substantives, 566; *subjective*, 566. 1. 4; in *predicate* 571; *objective*, 566. 2; of personal

pronouns, 566. 3; partitive, 566. 6; of quality, 566. 5; answering the question *how old?* 678; of specification, 566. 7; with adjectives, 567; with verbs of *valuing*, 569; with verbs of *remembering*, 568; with verbs of *accusing*, 570; with *esse* & *fieri*, 571; with *impersonals*, 572, 584; of *gerund*, 843

GERUND & GERUNDIVE, 288, 289, 298; uses, 839–846; with *est*, 840; gerund changed into gerundive, 842; *gen.*, 843; *dat.*, 844; *acc.*, 845; *abl.*, 846; gerundive with verbs of *giving*, *taking*, *sending* &c., 841

gloriāri, w. *abl.*, 604; w. *quod*, 783

Glyconic verse, 925. 4

gracilis, *superlat.*, 215

gratīa, with *gen.*, 566. 8; with *gerund* & *gerundive*, 843

gratīam agēre, with *quod*, 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815

gratus, with *dat.*, 598

gravis, with *dat.*, 598

Greek nouns of 1st decl., 60; of 2d decl., 69; of 3d decl., 83, 88, 117, 122, 150–157

H.

habēre, with two *acc.*, 578; *pass.* with two *nom.*, 540; with *gen.*, 569; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; habēo quod, with *subjunct.*, 793. b

Hepthemimēres, 912

Heroic verse, 914

Heteroclitēs, 190

Heterogeneous nouns, 191

Hexamēter, 904; Dactylic Hexamēter, 914–917

hiātus, 888

hic, 252; its use 712; hic, ille, *the latter*, *the former*, 713; hicine, hiccē, 254

Historical Infinitive, 809; Historical Perfect, 737; Historical Present, 732; Historical tenses, 743

hora nona, *abl.* of *time*, 673

Horace, *Metres* of, 926–928

horrēre, with *acc.*, 575

hortāri, with *ut*, 758

Hortatory subjunctive, 752

hostis, in a *collective* sense, 698 *how old?* 678

humi, like name of *town*, 686

humilis, *superl.*, 215

Hypothetical sentences, 787, 788

I.

i & j, but one character, 2, 891

ī, *gen.* ending of the 2d decl., 63; for -ī from nouns in -īūs, -īūm, 63; *voc.* ending, 2d decl., 67; *dat.* ending, 2d decl., 77; stems in i, 3d decl., 79, 80; Greek nouns in ī, 3d decl., 88; *voc.* ending of 3d decl., 154; *abl.* ending of the same, 140, 142, 144; i, *connecting* vowel in compound subst., 530

-īa, *neut. pl. 3d decl.*, 140, 142, 145

-īā, *suffix*, 488

-īādēs, *suffix*, 487

Iambic Strophe, 927. 15

Iambic Trimēter, 922–924

-īānūs, *suffix*, 505

-īās, *suffix*, 487

-īciūs, *suffix*, 501

Ictus, 900

-īcūs, *suffix*, 501, 506, 509

id, *adverbially*, 586

id agēre, with *ut* & *subjunct.*, 758

id quod = quod, 581

idem, 255, 533; used *adverbially*, 717

Ides of the Calendar, 929

-*idēs*, -*īdēs*, *suffixes*, 487

idonēus, with *ād*, 599; idonēus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c; with *gerund & gerundive*, 844

-*īdūs*, *suffix*, 497

igītur, 855; its place, 564

ignārus, with *gen.*, 567

-*īlē*, *suffix*, 484

-*īlis*, -*īlis*, *suffixes*, 498, 501; *superl.* of adjectives in -*īlis*, 215

Illative conjunctions, 453, 855

ille, 255; its use, 712, 713

-*illimūs*, *superl.* ending, 215

-*illūs*, *suffix*, 481

-*īm*, *acc.* ending, *3d decl.*, 143; adverbs in, 432, 433

immēmor, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imminēre, with *dat.*, 589

immo, in *answers*, 800

Imparisyllabic nouns, *3d decl.*, 81

impatiens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

impedire, w. quomīnus or ne, 764

impellere, with *ut*, 758

imperare, with *dat.*, 589; with *ut*, 758

Imperative, 283; personal endings, 294; of dicere, ducere, &c., 336; of scire, 338; uses, 804-806; supplied by cura ut, fac ut, 806; by the subjunctive, 752, 805

Imperative phrases, 806

Imperative sentence in *indirect discourse*, 825

Imperfect, 280, 298, 299; its use, 735; in letters, 740; *Imperf. Subjunct.* in conditional sentences, 788. III

Impersonal verbs, 419-423; their

conjugation, 421; with *acc.* 583; with *acc. & gen.*, 584

impetrare, with *ut*, 758

implere, with *abl.*, 622

imponere, with *dat.*, 592

impos, impotens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imprimere, with *in & abl.*, 689

imus, to denote a *part*, 704

in, with the *acc.*, 670; with verbs of *assembling*, 690; to denote *time for how long*, 677; with the *abl.*, 671; to denote *time when*, 673; with verbs of *placing*, 689; to denote *place*, 682; in composition, 525; with negative power, 531. 2; in compounds with *dat.*, 592

-*inā*, *suffix*, 485

inānis, with *abl.*, 625

Inceptive (Inchoative) verbs, 392-395, 472

incipere, with *inf.*, 809

incitare, with *ut*, 758

incusare, with *gen.*, 570

Indeclinable nouns, 181; gender of, 44; adjectives, 205, 226

Indefinite adjectives, 268; Indefinite pronouns, 265-267; use, 721

Independent cases, 50

Independent uses of the *Subjunctive*, 749-754

INDEX OF VERBS, *pag.* 274; Index to the metres of Horace, 928

Indicative, 282; use of, 747, 748

indigere, with *abl.* or *gen.*, 622

indignus, with *abl.*, 625; indignus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c

Indirect discourse, 824-829

Indirect object, 587

Indirect questions, 801-803

inducere, with *pres. partic.*, 835

- induĕre, construction of, 593
 indulĝĕre, with **dat.**, 589
 ab infante, 691
 infĭmus, to denote a *part*, 704
 INFINITIVE, 287; its use, 807–809;
 as object, 809; as subject, 808;
 its tenses, 818; historical inf.,
 809; fut. inf. with fore, 819
 Inflection, 34, 35
infra, 641
 ingrĕtus, with **dat.**, 598
 inimĭcus, with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598
 initĭo, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 injucundus, with **dat.**, 598
 injurĭa, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 inquam, 416; its use, 823
 inscĭus, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 inscribĕre, with **in** & **abl.**, 689
 Inseparable prepositions, 516
 insimulĕre, with **gen.**, 570
 institĕre, with **abl.**, 607
 intellegĕre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
inter, 640; in compounds with
 dat., 592; inter se, for *reciprocal*
 action, 711
 interdicĕre, constr., 621
 interesse, with **dat.**, 592
 interest, with **gen.**, 572; degree of
 importance, 573; with reference
 to *which*, 573
 INTERJECTIONS, 32, 463–464
 intermittĕre nihil quin, 766
 interrogĕre, with **two acc.**, 580
 Interrogative adverbs, 796; con-
 junctions, 462, 797; pronouns,
 260–264, 796; place thereof, 562;
 use of Interrogatives, 796–803
 Interrogative sentences, 796 ff.,
 in *indirect* questions, 825
intra, 639
 Intransitive verbs, 273; *imper-*
 sonal passive, 590; with **dat.**,
 589; w. **acc.** of *kindred* mean-
 ing, 576; becoming *transitive*
 by composition, 577
 –**ĭnĭs**, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507
 inutilĭs, with **dat.**, 598, 599; with
 gerund, 844
 invidĕre, with **dat.**, 589
 –**ĭo**, Verbs in, of **3d** *conjug.*, 331
 Ionic rhythm, 927. 19
 ipse, 255; use, with reflexive, 718
 –**ĭr**, Nouns in, **2d** *decl.*, 64, 66
 irasci, with **dat.**, 589
 Irregular adjectives, 77; irreg.
 comparison, 220–223; of ad-
 verbs, 441; irreg. conjugation,
 400; irreg. nouns, 181–192
 is, 247; use, 553, 714; is qui, with
 subjunct. 793. a
 –**ĭs**, –**ĭs**, Nouns in, **3d** *decl.*, 111–
 114; –**ĭs**, **acc. pl.** ending, **3d** *decl.*,
 148; Greek nouns in, **3d** *decl.*,
 154; –**ĭs**, *suffix* in *patronymics*,
 487
 –**ĭs**, –**ĕ**, Adjectives in, 139, 140
 –**iscō**, Verbs in, 391
 Islands, *Gender* of names of, 42;
 constr. like names of *towns*, 683
 isque, 715
 –**issĭmĭs**, in *superl.*, 211
 iste, 252; use of, 712
 ita ut, 759; ita est, *yes*, 799
 itaque, 855
 –**ĭtĕrĕ**, Frequentatives in, 471
 –**ĭtĕs**, –**ĭtĭĕs**, –**ĭtĭĕs**, –**ĭtĭdō**, *suf-*
 fixes, 488
 –**ĭtĭs**, *suffix*, 503; adverbs in, 434
 –**ĭm**, **gen. pl.** **3d** *decl.*, 98, 140, 146
 –**ĭm**, **gen.** of nouns in, 63; *suffix*,
 486
 –**ĭs**, **gen. sing.** **2d** *decl.*, 77
 –**ĭs**, **gen.** of nouns in, 63; proper
 nouns in, 67; *suffix*, 501, 508, 509

-**ivūs**, *suffix*, 501
 -**ix**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 134

J.

j & i, 2; affecting the quantity of the syllable, 864
 jubēre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc. & inf.**, 814; with **nom. & inf.**, 822
 jucundus, with **dat.**, 598; with **gerund** or **supine**, 848
 judicāre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** w. **two nom.**, 540
 jugum, its quantity, 864
 Juppīter, 97
 jurātus, *active*, 278
 jure, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 jussu, **abl.** of *cause*, 604
 justum est, with **acc. & inf.**, 811
 juvāre, with **acc.**, 589
 Juvenālis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 4
 juvēnis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 3; **gen. pl.**, 146. 2; how compared, 224. III
juxta, 642

L.

-**l**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 90-92; *adjectives* in, 141
 laborāre, w. **abl.**, 604; w. **ut**, 758
 laetāri, with **abl.**, 604
 laetus, with **abl.**, 604
 Latin Authors, 945
 Latin Grammar, 1
the latter, hic, ille, 713
 Lesser Ionics, 927. 19
 Letters, 3-7; names of, 3; gender of, 181
 liber, with **abl.**, 623
 liberāre, with **abl.**, 620
 libet, with **dat.**, 421
 libra, *weight*, 942
 licēre, *to be for sale*, with **abl.**, 617
 licet, w. **dat.**, 421; **conjunction**, 768

Like cases in substantives, 55
 liquet, with **dat.**, 421
 locāre, *to let*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841
 Locative case, 683
 loco, locis, 687
 Logaoedic verse, 925
 Long vowels, 10, 859
 longe, with **superl.**, 707
 longius, without *quam*, 610
 longum est, 747
 longus, with **acc.**, 679
 -**ls**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 127
 ludis, **abl.** of *time*, 673

M.

maerēre, with **abl.**, 604
 magis, maxīme, in *adverbial comparison*, 218, 708
 magni, parvi, **gen.** of *value*, 569
 magno, parvo, **abl.** of *value*, 618
 major, minor natu, 608, 678
 male emēre, vendēre, 619
 maledicēre, with **dat.**, 598
 malle, with **acc. & inf.**, 814
 mandāre, with **ut**, 758
 manēre, with **two nom.**, 540
 Masculine caesūra, 911
 Masculine gender, 40, 41
 Materials, Names of, 38
 matūrus, compared, 214
 maxīmam partem, *adverbially*, 586
 maxīme, in forming **superl.**, 218
 Means or instrument, **abl.** of, 605-607
 Measure in prosody, 905, 906; Roman measures, 937-943; of length how expressed, 680
 medēri, with **dat.**, 589
 mediūs, to denote a *part*, 704
 memīni, with **gen.** or **acc.**, 568

memor, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 -**mĕn**, *suffix*, 494
 mente, **abl.** of manner, 613
 -**mentŭm**, *suffix*, 494
 mercāri, with **gen.** & **abl.**, 617
 -**mĕt**, appended to pronouns, 251
 Metres of Horace, 926, 927
 Metrical Feet, 898
 metuĕre, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591;
 with **ut** & **ne**, 761
 metus est, with **ut** & **ne**, 761
 meum est, 571
 Middle syllables, Quantity, 866-
 876
 miles, in collective sense, 698
 mille, 230
 mināri, with **dat.**, 589
 minĭmi, **gen.** of value, 569
 minĭmo, **abl.** of value, 618
 minor natu, 608, 678
 minōris, **gen.** of value, 569
 misĕret, with **acc.** & **gen.**, 584
 mittĕre, w. **dat.** of purpose, 595;
 with **gerundive**, 841
 Mobilĭa substantĭva, 46
 moderāri, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591
 Modification in compounds, 512
 modo, **abl.** of manner, 613
 modo, *if only*, w. **subjunct.**, 790
 molestus, with **dat.**, 598
 monĕre, with **ut**, 758
 Money, Roman, 937
 -**mōniā**, *suffix*, 488
 Monomĕter, 904
 Monosyllabic nouns, defective,
 184, 185
 Monosyllables, Quantity of, 880-
 882
 Months, Gender of, 40; in Ro-
 man calendar, 929
 Moods of the verb, 35, 281-285;
 attraction of, 826

mora, 899
 more, **abl.** of manner, 613
 mori, w. **two nom.**, 540
 mos est, with **ut**, 759
 movĕre, with **ut**, 758
 -**ms**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126
 multāre, with **abl.**, 570
 multi et., 850
 Multiplicative numerals, 239
 multo, degree of *difference*, 612;
abl. of price, 618; with **compar.**
 & **superl.**, 706, 707
 muta cum liquida, *in prosody*, 863

N.

nam, appended to *interrogatives*,
 263; nam, namque, 854
 Names of men and women, 193-
 196
 Names of towns, Construction of,
 683-686
 Names of verses, 904
 narrāre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 nasci, w. **two nom.**, 540
 natus, with **acc.**, 678; natu, with
 grandis, 608
 navĭbus, **abl.** of manner, 614
 nĕ, *that not*, 756, 762; after verbs
 of *hindering*, 764; after verbs
 of *fearing*, 761; in *prohibi-*
tions, 805; ne quis, 723, 762; with
optative subjunct., 751; with
concessive subjunct., 753, 769
 nĕ, interrogative particle, 797;
 ne..an, 798; ne..quidem, 564
 nec..nec, 857
 necessariŭs, with **gen.** or **dat.**, 598
 necesse est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 necne, *or not*, 798, 803
 necŭbi, 762
 nefas, 181; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811;
 with *supine*, 847

negāre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 Negative *Conditions* (nisi, si non), 789; negative *Imperative*, with **ne**, 752, 805; negative of *Optative* subjunct., **ne**, 751; negative of *Potential* subjunct., non, 750; negative of *Concessive* subjunct., **ne**, 753; negative of *Dubitative* subjunct., non, 754; negative with **partic.**, 834
 nemo, 182; equivalent to nullus, 700; nemo est qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b
 nequam, **indecl.**, 205, 222
 neque, *and not*, neque quisquam, neque ullus, etc., 851; neque. . neque, 857
 neque is, 715; neque enim, &c., 856
 nescius, w. **gen.**, 567. 1
 Neuter adjectives or pronouns used *adverbially*, 429, 586
 Neuter gender, 44; like cases, 55
 Neutral passives, 279
 neve, with **subjunct.**, 757
 nihil, 181; its oblique cases, 700; used *adverbially*, 586; nihil abest quin, 766; nihil antiquus habere quam, w. **ut**, 758; nihil est quod, w. **subjunct.**, 793. b; nihil praetermitto, intermitto quin, 766
 nihili, **gen.** of *value*, 569
 nihilo, **abl.** of *value*, 618
 nimis, with **gen.**, 566. 6
 nisi & si non, 787, 789; nisi quis, 723, 762
 niti, with **abl.**, 627; with **ut**, 758
 no, 799
 nobilitas, used for nobiles, 693
 nocere, with **dat.**, 589
 noli, with **inf.** in *prohibitions*, 806

nolle, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814
 nomen, 194; nomen est, w. **dat.**, 594
 nominare, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** with **two nom.**, 540
 NOMINATIVE, 49; plur. in -īā, 3d decl., 140, 142, 145; in -ēs, 157; case of *subject*, 534; of the *predicate*, 540
 Nominative with **Infin.**, 821, 822
 non quin, with **subjunct.**, 785
 non quo, non quod, w. **subjunct.**, 785
 Nones, in the Roman month, 929
 nonne, *interrog. particle*, 797
 nostras, *patrial* adjective, 250
 nostri, nostrum, 566. 3
 Noun, see Substantive
 Nouns substantive & adjective, 33
 -ns, Nouns in, 3d decl., 127, 128
 nubere, with **dat.**, 589
 nudare, with **abl.**, 622
 nudus, with **abl.**, 623
 num, 797; num quis, 723, 762
 Number, 35, 49; of the *predicate*, 541, 542
 Numbers & persons of verbs, 293
 NUMERALS, 228-242; numeral adjectives, 228-233; num. adverbs, 241; position, 561
 nuntiare, with **in** & **acc.**, 690; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 -nūs, *suffix*, 501
 nusquam, with **gen.**, 566. 6

O.

-ō, Nouns in, 3d decl., 85-87; -ō, Greek nouns in, 152
 o, with **acc.** in exclamations, 585
 ob, 643; in composition, 526; in compounds with **dat.**, 592
 Object, *direct*, 574; *indirect*, 587; of transitive verbs becomes *subject* in **pass.**, 574

Objective genitive, 566. 2
 oblivisci, with **gen.**, 568
 oboedire, with **dat.**, 589
 obsecrāre, with **ut**, 758
 obsistere, obstāre, with **ne**, **quo-**
mīnus, 764
 obtrectāre, with **dat.**, 589
 odiōsus, with **dat.**, 598
 Official titles to indicate *time*, 692
 -ōlūs, *suffix*, 481, 510
 omnes, 726
 -ōn, for -ūm, *Greek ending*, 2d
 decl., 69; -ōn, **gen. pl.**, 3d decl., 156
 onustus, with **abl.**, 623
 opēra alicūjus, to denote the
agent, 606
 opēram dare, with **ut**, 758
 opinio est, with **acc. & inf.**, 811
 opiniōne, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
 oportet, w. **acc. & inf.**, 811
 oppīdum, in apposition with na-
 mes of *towns*, 684, 685
 optāre, with **ut**, 758
 Optative subjunctive, 751
 opus, with **supine**, 847; opus est,
 with **abl.**, 624; with **acc. & infin.**,
 811
 -ōr, Nouns in, 3d decl., 99-101;
suffix, 489
 -ōr, -ūs, Adjectives in, 139, 209,
 210
 orāre, with **two acc.**, 580; with **ut**,
 758
 oratiō obliqua, 824; or. recta, 823
 orbāre, with **abl.**, 622
 orbus, with **abl.**, 623
 Order of words, 558-565
 Ordinal numerals, 234-236
 ordīne, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 Origin, expressed by **abl.**, 604
 Orpheus, 154
 -ōs, for -ūs, *Greek ending*, 2d decl.,

69; -ōs, *Latin nouns*, 3d decl.,
 115-117; *Greek nouns*, 3d decl.,
 153; -os, **gen. 3d decl.**, 153; **nom.**
3d decl., 155
 -ōsūs, *suffix*, 502
 -ox, Nouns in, 3d decl., 135

P.

in pace, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 paenitet, with **acc. & gen.**, 584
 par, with **dat.**, 598; with **acc. &**
inf., 811; par est, *it would be*
fair, 747
 PARADIGM CHARTS, 54, 302
 parcēre, with **dat.**, 589
 Parisyllabic nouns, 3d decl., 80
 particeps, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 Participial adjectives with **gen.**,
 567. 2
 PARTICIPLE, 290, 291; of depo-
 nents, 325; how declined, 198;
 comparison, 227; use of, 829-
 835; used appositively, 833; at-
 tributively, 832; with negative,
 834; in compound **infin.**, 817
 Particles, 36
 Partitive genitive, 566. 6
 Parts of the body in the **plur.**, 696
 Parts of speech, 32
 parvi, parvo, **gen. & abl.** of *value*,
 569, 618
 a parvūlo, 691
 Passive voice, 271, 276; **pass.**
 tenses how formed, 302, 309;
pass. participles, 830; passive
 used *impersonally*, 423; of in-
 transitives, 590; followed by
dat., 597
 paterfamīlias, 58
 pati, with **acc. & inf.**, 814
 patiens, with **gen.**, 567. 2
 Patrial adjectives, 250, 264, 507

Patronymics, 487
 pauci, *defective*, 204
 pedes, in *collective* sense, 698
 pedibus, *abl.* of manner, 614
 pendēre, with *gen.*, 569
penes, 644; quantity, 879. 2
 Pentamēter, 904; Elegiac, 918–921
 Penthemimēres, 912
 penult, 25
per, 645, 674; in composition, 527;
 in compounds with *acc.*, 577; to
 denote the *agent*, 606
PERFECT, 280; its formation, 344;
 tenses formed upon it, 300;
Perf. Ind. special terminations,
 294; special forms, 333; **Perfect**
Infin., 300; **Perf. Part.**, 301; **Perf.**
Subjunct., 300; its uses, 737;
Perf. definite, 737; its *sequence*
 of tenses, 744; in letters, 740
 perficēre, with *ut*, 758
 perfrūi, with *abl.*, 626
 perfungi, with *abl.*, 626
 pergēre, with *infin.*, 809
 pericūlum est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 Periphrastic conjugation, 311–
 315; uses, 741; **Indic.**, 747
 perīre, *pass.* to perdēre, 408
 perītus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 permittēre, with *ut*, 758; with *ge-*
rundive, 841
 Personal endings of the verb, 294
 Personal pronouns, 244–247; not
 expressed, 710; expressed in
acc. with *infin.*, 820
 Persons, 35, 243, 293; names of,
 193–196; with different termi-
 nations, 46
 persuadēre, w. *dat.*, 589; w. *ut*, 758
 petēre, w. *two acc.*, 580; with *ut*, 758
 Pherecratean verse, 925. 3
 Phonetic pronunciation, 9–14

PHONOLOGY, 1, 2–31
 piget, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584
 Place, Relations of, 682–690
 placēre, with *dat.*, 589
 placet, with *acc.* & *infin.*, 811
 plenus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 plerīque, *defective*, 204
 Pluperfect, 280, 300; use, 738
 Plural, 49; with change of mean-
 ing, 189; wanting, 187; plural
 expressions to be noted, 697;
 of proper names, 699
 Pluralia tantum, 188
 plurīmi, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 plurīmo, *abl.* of *value*, 618
 plūris, *gen.* of *value*, 569, 619
 plus, 221; without *quam*, 618
POETICAL FORMS, 858–927.
 Polysyndēton, 850
 ponēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
 porcus, in a *collective* sense, 698
 poscēre, with *two acc.*, 580
 Position, in prosody, 862
 Positive, 208; wanting, 224
 Possessive pronoun, 249; not ex-
 pressed, 710; as subjective *gen.*,
 566. 4
 Possessor, *dat.* of, 594
 possum, potēram, *I might, I*
could, 747; with *infin.*, 809
post, 646; to denote distance of
time, 675; in compounds with
dat., 592
 posteritas, used for postēri, 693
 postquam (posteaquam) w. *perf.*,
 737, 773
 postulāre, w. *two acc.*, 580; with
ut, 758
 Potential subjunctive, 750
 potiri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 626
 potis, pote, 308
 potus & pransus, *active*, 278

prae, 662; in composition, *very*, 531. 3; in compounds with **dat.**, 592

praebere **se**, with **acc.**, 578

praecipere, with **ut**, 758

praeditus, with **abl.**, 623

praenomen, 194

Praenomens abbreviated, 197

praestare **se**, with **acc.**, 578

praeter, 647; in compounds with **acc.**, 577

praetërit, with **acc.**, 583

praetermittere nihil quin, 766

praetor, for in praetura, 692

precari, with **ut**, 758

PREDICATE, 534; its place, 558; its number, 541-543; its gender, 544; with different persons, 545; predicate adjective & substantive in **acc.** & **inf.**, 817; predicate **gen.**, 571; pred. **abl.**, 616

PREPOSITIONS, 32; List of, 443-446; uses, 629-671; with the **acc.**, 629-654; with the **abl.**, 655-664; with the **acc.** & **abl.**, 665-671; place, 563; in composition, 516; assimilation of, 518

PRESENT Indicative, 280; tenses formed upon it, 298; Pres. Subjunct., 298; Pres. Imperat., 299; Pres. Infinitive, tenses formed upon it, 299; Pres. Partic., 298; Present, its uses, 731-734; to express a past action, 733; for the historical perfect, 732; with **dum**, 734

Price, **abl.** of, 617

pridie, with **acc.**, 930

prima pueritia, 673

Primitive adverbs, 424; primitive verbs, 470; primitive and derivative words, 466

primus, to denote a *part*, 704

Principal clause, 742, in *indirect* discourse, 825

Principal parts of verb, 296; their formation, 339-399

Principal tenses, 743

Principal term of compounds, 512

principio, **abl.** of *time*, 673

prior & primus instead of *adverbs*, 550

priusquam, 779, 780

privare, with **abl.**, 622

pro, 661; its *quantity* in compounds, 884

prodesse, with **dat.**, 589

prodest, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811

prohibere, with quominus, 764

Prohibitions, 805

proinde, 855; proinde ac si, 772

Pronominal adjectives, 269

PRONOUNS, 32, 243-269; special uses, 710-729; personal, 244; reflexive, 248; demonstrative, 252; determinative, 255; relative, 265; interrogative, 260; indefinite, 256; their agreement, 551-557

Pronunciation of Latin, 8

prope, 648

Proper names, 38, 193-197; in **plur.**, 699

propior, propius, with **acc.**, 600

Proportional numerals, 240

proprius, *own*, 567. 3

propter, 649

Prosody, 858-897; figures of, 887-897

prospicere, with **ut**, 758

Protasis, 787

providere, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591; with **ut**, 758

providus, compared, 217

proximus, proxime, with **acc.**, 600
 -ps, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126
 -pte, appended to pronouns, 251
 pudet, with **gen. & acc.**, 584
 puer, instead of in pueritia, 691
 in pueritia, prima pueritia, 673
 Punishment, **abl.** of, 570
 Purpose, subjunctive of, with ut,
 ne, 758; quo, 763; with relative,
 792; expressed by **ad** with ge-
 rund, 845
 putare, with **gen.**, 569; with two
acc., 578; **pass.** with two **nom.**, 540
 putares, *potential* subjunctive,
 750
 Pythiambic strophe, 927. 16. 17

Q.

quaerere, with two **acc.**, 580
 Quality, **gen.** of, 566. 5; **abl.** of, 615
 quam, with comparatives, 609;
 regularly *omitted* in relative
 sentences, 610; *omitted* after
 plus, amplius, longius, 610; with
 posse & **superl.**, 707; quam quis-
 quam, ullus, 724; quam qui,
 quam ut, w. **subjunct.**, 795, 759
 quamquam, 771
 quamvis, 768
 quandoquidem, 781
 quanti, **gen.** of value, 659, 619
 QUANTITY, 859-896; general rules,
 28; in compounds, 883; of the
 radical syllable, 865; of middle
 syllables, 866-876; of final syl-
 lables, 877-879; of monosyllab-
 les, 880-882; marks of, 10
 quantumvis, 768
 quantus potuit, with **superl.**, 707
 quasi, 772
 que, 849
 quemadmodum, with **indic.**, 772

Question, 532; direct, 796, 797;
 alternative, 798; question and
 answer, 799; indirect, 801, 802;
 indirect disjunctive, 803; in in-
 direct discourse, 825
 qui, 256; its agreement, 551; =
 cum ego, &c. with **subjunct.** 792;
 = ut ego, &c. with **subjunct.**, 792;
 qui? 720; qui dicitur, 555
 quia, 781
 quidam, 725
 quidem, its place, 564
 quilibet, 726
 quin = qui non in clause of re-
 sult, 765; after verbs of *hinder-*
ing, 764; after *negative* clau-
 ses, 765

quippe qui, with **subjunct.**, 791
 quis = quibus, 257
 quis, 720, 723
 quisquam, 724
 quisque, 727
 quisquis, with **indic.**, 748
 quivis, 726
 quo = ut eo, with **subjunct.**, 763
 quoad, w. **indic. & subjunct.**, 776-778
 quod, in *explanatory* clauses,
 784; quod, quia, *because*, 781;
 quod, *as to*, 785

quodsi, 787
 quominus = ut eo minus, 764
 quoniam, *since*, 781
 quoque, 849; its place, 564
 quotiens, with **perf. & pluperf.**, 740
 quotquot, with **indic.**, 748
 -quus, adjectives in, 219

R.

-r, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94-103; ad-
 jectives, 141
 Radical syllables, quantity of, 865
 ratione, **abl.** of *manner*, 613

-rĕ, for -rĭs in the *pass.*, 335
 rĕ-, rĕd-, *inseparable prep.*, 516
 READING-CHARTS, 8
 Reciprocal, how expressed, 640
 recordāri, with *gen.*, 568
 recusāre, w. *ne* & *quomīnus*, 764
 reddĕre, with *two acc.*, 578
 redimĕre, with *abl.*, 617
 Reduplicated perfects, 349, 361,
 370; quantity of, 867
 Reduplication in compounds, 349,
 361
 refert, with *gen.*, 572
 refertus, with *abl.*, 623
 Reflexive pronouns, 248, 711; in
 indirect discourse, 828
 Reflexive verb, 275
 Relative pronoun, 256-259; agree-
 ment, 551, 552; relative for de-
 monstr. at the *beginning* of
 sentence, 556; in *abl.* of *compari-*
son, 610; *never* omitted, 557;
 place, 562; general relatives w.
indic., 748; relative clauses with
subjunct., 791-795
 relinquĕre, with *two acc.*, 578; with
dat. of *purpose*, 595; with *ger-*
rundive, 841
 reliquus, to denote a *part*, 704;
 reliquum est, *ut*, 759
 reminisci, with *gen.*, 568
 reperiuntur qui, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b
 replĕre, with *abl.*, 622
 resistĕre, with *dat.*, 589
 respondĕre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 Responsives, 799
 restat, with *ut*, 759
 Result, *subjunct.* of, with *conjunc-*
tions, 759, 760
 retinĕri non possum quin, 766
 reum facĕre, with *gen.*, 570
 Rhythm, 900; Ionic, 927. 19

Rhythmical feet, 902
 ridĕre, with *acc.*, 575
 -rĭmĭs, *superl. ending*, 213
 ritu, *abl.* of *manner*, 613
 Rivers, *gender* of names of, 40
 rogāre, with *two acc.*, 580; with
ut, 758
 rogātu, *abl.* of *cause*, 604
 Roman method of pronunciation,
 9-14
 Root, 467, 468
 -rs, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 127
 rus, like name of *town*, 686

S.

-s, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 103-128; ad-
 jectives in, 141
 salutāris, with *dat.*, 598
 Sapphic stanza, 927. 2. 3; *verse*,
 925. 5. 6
 satiāre, with *abl.*, 622
 satis, with *gen.*, 566. 6
 Scanning, 913
 scire, w. *inf.*, 809; scito for *sci*,
 338
 -scō, *Inceptives* in, 391
 scribĕre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 se-, sed-, *inseparable prep.*, 516;
 compounds of *se* with *ā* & *abl.*,
 621
 secernĕre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Second Conjugation; *Active*, 318;
Passive, 319; *Deponent*, 328:
Verbs of, 351-364
 Second Declension, 63-77
 secundum, 650
 secus ac, 849
 sed, 853
 sejungĕre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Semi-deponents, 277, 278; 2d con-
 jug., 363; 3d conjug., 373
 in senectūte, 673

senex, instead of in senectūte, 691; compared, 224
 Sentence, 532, 533; of result, sequence of tenses, 745
 sententiā mea, 608
 sentīre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
 separāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Separation, **abl.** of, 620
 Sequence of tenses, 742–746; in sentences of result, 745; in sentences of comparison, 772
 sequitur, with **ut**, 759
 sescenti, *indefinitely*, 233
 sestertius, sestertium, 938, 939
 Short vowels, 10, 861
 si, with **indic.** & **subjunct.**, 787; si quis, 723, 762
 si modo, 790
 si non & nisi, 787, 789
 sic ut, 759
 sicut, with **indic.**, 772
 silentio, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 similis, **superl.** 215; with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598, 600
 Simple feet, 902; simple forms of verb, 298–302; simple verse, 903
 simulac, simulatque, 773; with **perf.**, 737, 740
 sin, 787
 sine, 664; sine, w. quisquam, ullus, 724
 sinere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
 Singular, 49; used for the plural, 698; wanting, 188
 Singularia tantum, 187
 singuli, *defective*, 204
 siquidem, *since*, 781
 sitire, with **acc.**, 575
 sive, 852; sive. . sive, w. **indic.**, 748
 Small islands, Names of, 683
 so-called, qui dicitur, 555

solito, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
 solus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a
 -sōr, *suffix*, 489
 Space, Relation of, 679–681
 spe, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
 Special Forms in conjugation, 333–338
 Specification, **gen.** of, 566. 7
 id spectare, with **ut**, 758
 spes est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 spoliare, with **abl.**, 622
 Spondaic Hexameter, 914
 Stanza, 926; stanzas of Horace, 927
 stare, *cost*, with **abl.**, 617
 statuere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689; with **inf.**, 809
 STEM, 52, 468; in the 5 declensions, 53; 1st decl., 56; 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 79; 4th decl., 171; 5th decl., 176; in the 4 conjugations, 295; in **a**, 340; in **e**, 341; in **i**, 342; in **u** (**v**), 343, 365–367; in consonants, 365–396; in **d**, **t**, 369–374; in **b**, **p**, 375, 376; in **c**, **g**, **q**, **h**, **ct**, 377–384; in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, 385–389; in **s**, **x**, (**cs**), 390; in **sc**, 391–395
 Stem-words, 466
 Strophe, *see* Stanza
 studere, with **dat.**, 589
 studiosus, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 suadere, w. **dat.**, 589; w. **ut**, 758
sub, 666–667; in composition, 528; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592
 SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, 534, 535; place, 558; adjuncts, 558
 Subjective genitive, 566. 1; as predicate, 571
 SUBJUNCTIVE, 283; of the future tenses wanting, 746; uses, 749–803; with conjunctions, 755–790; with relatives, 791–795; in

indirect questions, 801–803; to express the thought of some other person, 794, 827; in causal clauses, 782

Subordinating conjunctions, 454–462; uses, 755–790

Subordination of sentences, 742

Substantīva mobilīa, 46

SUBSTANTIVES, 32, 37, 38; gender, 39–48; number, 49; declensions, 51–192; indeclinable, 181; defective, 182–186; heteroclitics, 190; heterogeneous, 191; derived from adjectives, 488; derived from substantives, 480–487; derived from verbs, 489–495; used as adjectives, 206; substantive predicate, 536; with **dat.**, 601; special uses, 691–700; in **abl. absol.**, 836

subter, 669

Suffixes, 469

sui, sibi, se, 711; w. quisque, 727

sumēre, with **two acc.**, 578

summus, *top of*, 704

sunt qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b

super, 668; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

superbus, with **abl.**, 604

superlative, 211; its declension, 212; with the force of *very*, 705; strengthened, 707; wanting, 224; requires more than two objects, 709

SUPINE, 292, 344; tenses formed upon it, 301; its uses, 847; its equivalents, 848; not changed in **acc. & inf.**, 817

supplicāre, with **dat.**, 589

supra, 651

–**sūrā**, *suffix*, 494

–**sūs & –tūs**, Nouns in, 4th decl., 183; *suffixes*, 493

suus, its use, 711

Syllables, 21–25; long & short, 860, 861, 899; long by position, 862; common, 863; middle, 866–876; final, 877–879; syllāba anceps, 908

Synaerēsis, 890, 891

Syncōpe, 893

SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSIONS, 54

SYNOPSIS OF TENSES, 298–302

SYNTAX, 1, 532–857

Systōle, 895

T.

–**t**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 129

taedet, with **acc. & gen.**, 584

talis, 269; talis qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; talis ut, with **subjunct.**, 759

tam w. **adject. & qui**, 793. a

tam w. **adject. & ut**, 759

tamen, 853

tametsi, 771

tamquam, 772

tanti, tantīdem, *gen. of value*, 569, 619

tantum abest, ut. . ut, 760

tantus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; tantus ut, with **subjunct.**, 759

–**tē**, appended to pronouns, 251

temperāre, with various cases, 591; temperāre mihi non possum quin, 766

templum, *omitted*, 566. 9

Temporal conjunctions, 455; uses, 773–780

in tempōre, temporībus, 673

TENSES, 35, 280; formation of, 298–302; *principal* and *historical*, 743; uses, 730–741; sequence of tenses, 742–746; tenses of the **inf.**, 818, 819; tenses in letters, 741

tenuis, 663

-tēr, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96, 97
 terra marique, 688
 Tetramēter, 904
 Tetrastich, 926
that & those, not expressed in Latin, 716
 Thesis, 900
 Third Conjugation, *Active*, 320; *Passive*, 321; *Deponent*, 329; in **-iō** (appendix), 331, 332; *Verbs* of, 365-396
 Third Declension, 78-170
 Time, Relation of, 672-678; for how long, 677; how long, 674; how long *before*, 675; how long *since*, 674; when, 672, 673; within which, 676
 timēre, with *ut*, *ne*, 761
-tīō, *suffix*, 493
 Tmesis, 897
-tōr, *suffix*, 490, 491
 totus, 202; nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687
 Towns, Names of, Gender, 42; construction of, 683
trans, 652; in composition, 529; in compounds with *acc.*, 577
 Transitive verbs, 271; transitive & intransitive, 575
 Trees, Gender of names of, 42
 Trimēter, 904; Iambic, 922-924
 trini, for *terni*, 238
 Tristich, 926
 Trithemimēres, 912
-trix, *suffix*, 492
 Trochaic strophe, 927. 18
-trūm, *suffix*, 495
-tūrā, *suffix*, 493
 turpis, with *dat.*, 598
-tūs, *suffix*, 493

U.

u & v, but *one* character, 2, 891
u, Stems, 3d decl., 79; 3d conjug., 343
-ū, Nouns in, 4th decl., 171
 ubi, with *gen.*, 566. c; *when*, 773; ubi, ubi primum, with *perf.*, 737
-ūbūs, *dat. & abl. pl.*, 4th decl., 172
 ullus, 202; its use, 724
 ultima, 25
 ultimus, to denote a *part*, 704
 ultor, ultrix, *adject.*, 206
ultra, 654
-ūlūm, *suffix*, 494
-ūlūs, *suffix*, 480, 499, 510
-ūm, *suffix*, 489
-ūm, for **-ārūm**, **-ōrūm**, 1st & 2d decl., 68; **-ūm**, *gen. pl.* of *adject.*, 3d decl., 147
-undī, **-undūs**, for **-endi**, **-endus**, 337
 Unit of measure, 899
 unus, 202; in the plur., 229; instead of *singūli*, 238; unus omnium, with *superl.*, 707; unus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. a
 unusquisque, 267; its use, 726
-ūō, Verbs in, 1st conjug., 365
-ūr, Nouns in, 2d decl., 66; 3d decl., 102, 103
 urbs, in *apposition* with names of towns, 684, 685
-ūrīō, Verbs in, 473
-us, Nouns in, 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 118-122; 4th decl., 171
-ūs, **-ā**, **-ūm**, Adjectives in, 72
ut, *comparat.*, 772; *final & consecutive*, 756-761; *concessive*, 769; *temporal*, 773; *as soon as*, 737
ut primum, 773; with *perf.*, 737
ut si, w. *subjunct.*, 772
uti, with *abl.*, 626

utīlis, with **dat.** or **ad & acc.**, 598;
with **gerund & gerundive**, 844; uti-
lius fuit, 747
utīnam, with **subjunct.**, 751
utpōte qui, with **subjunct.**, 792. II
utrum, 797; utrum..an, 798
-ūtūs, *suffix*, 503
-ux, Nouns in, 3d decl., 136

V.

vacāre, with **abl.**, 622
vacuus, with **abl.**, 623
Value, in the **gen.**, 569, 619; in the
abl., 618
vapulāre, **neutral pass.**, 279
ve, 852
vel, 852; with **superl.**, 707
velle, with **inf.** or **acc. & inf.**, 809,
814
velut si, with **subjunct.**, 772
vendēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619
venēo, **pass.** to vendēre, 408
venīre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595
Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 812
Verbal nouns & adjectives, 286-
292
Verbal inceptives, 392-394
Verbal predicate, 536
VERBS, 32, 270-423; voices, 271;
tenses, 280; moods, 281; finite
verb, 285; persons, 293; conju-
gations, 295; formation of the
tenses, 298; verb-stem, 295; for-
mation of the principal parts,
339; of the 1st conjug., 346-349;
of the 2d conjug., 351-364; of the
3d conjug., 365-396; of the 4th
conjug., 397-399; in -ŷō, 3d con-
jug., 331, 368; compounded
with *prepositions*, 516; derived
from *verbs*, 471-474; derived
from *subst. & adj.*, 475-479;

place, 558; SYNTAX, 730-848;
Verbs of *reminding, remem-
bering, forgetting* with **gen.**,
568; of *accusing, convicting,
condemning, acquitting*, with
gen., 570; of *valuing*, with **gen.**,
569; of *naming, making, tak-
ing, choosing*, with **two accus.**,
578; of *asking, demanding,
requesting, inquiring*, with
two acc., 580; of *benefitting,
pleasing, obeying, command-
ing &c.*, with **dat.**, 589; of *giving
& putting*, with **dat.**, 593; of *buy-
ing & selling*, with **abl.**, 617; of
removing, abstaining, with
abl., 620; of *plenty & want, fl-
ling and depriving*, with **abl.**,
622; of *placing*, with **in & abl.**,
689; of *assembling*, with **in &
acc.**, 690; of *willing, wishing,
warning, beseeching, urging,
demanding, resolving, endea-
voring, forcing, permitting*,
with **ut & ne**, 758; of *wishing,
desiring*, with **acc. & inf.**, 814; of
fearing, with **ut, ne**, 761; of *hin-
derring*, with **quomīnus**, 764; of
emotion, joy, grief, with **quod**,
783; with **acc. & inf.**, 815; verbs
signifying *to be able, must, dare,
begin, continue, cease, be accu-
stomed, learn, wish, desire,
resolve*, with **inf.**, 809; verbs
of *perceiving*, with **pres. part.**,
813, 835; of *perceiving and de-
clarating*, with **acc. & inf.**, 812;
with **nom. & inf.**, 821
verēri, with **ut & ne**, 761
vero, verum, 853, 564; place, 564
Verses, 898; names of, 904; com-
pound, 903; simple, 903

VERSIFICATION, 898 ff.
 VERSUS, 653.
 vertĕre, with **dat.** of purpose, 595
 verum, vero, 564, 853
 verum est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 vesci, with **abl.**, 626
 vestis, in a *collective* sense, 698
 vestras, *patrial* **adject.**, 250
 vestrum & vestri, 566. 3
 vetĕre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
 vetus, **superl.**, 240
 vi, vi et armis, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 via, *without prep.*, 688
 via et ratiōne, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 vicinĭtas = vicĭni, 693
 vicĭnus, with **dat.** & **gen.**, 598
 victor, victrix, *adjectives*, 206
 vidĕre, with **ut**, 758; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812; with **pres. part.**, 813, 835
 vidĕres, *potential* **subjunct.**, 750
 vidĕri, with **two nom.**, 540; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
 vis, 114; per vim, 645
 visu, 848
 vix, with **quisquam**, **ullus**, 724
 vocĕre, with **two acc.**, 578; vocĕri, with **two nom.**, 540

Vocative, 49; of nouns in **-iūs**, **2d decl.**, 67; in **3d decl.**, 154
 Voices, 35, 271-279
 voluntĕte, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
-vōlūs, **Adjectives** in, 216
 Vowel-changes in **compound verbs**, 517
 Vowels, 4
 Vowel-stems, in **decl.**, 79, 80; in **conjug.**, 339, 344
 vox, with **gen.**, 566. 7

W.

w, not in Latin, 2
 Way by which, **abl.**, 688
 Week, Days of the, 936
 Weights, Roman, 942
 Winds, Gender of names of, 40
without, with **partic.** 834
 Women, Names of, 196
 Word-formation, 1, 465-531

X.

-x, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 130, 131, 141

Y.

-y, Nouns in, of Greek origin, 88
 Year, Date of, 935
 yes, 799
 -ys, Nouns in, 154



14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

'5 Sep 57KL

REC'D LD

DEC 28 1957

LD 21-100m-6,'56
(B9311s10)476

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 00227

926545 760

A284

lu

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

